
PeopleSoft Enterprise Financials/Supply Chain Management 8.4x to 9.0 MP5 Upgrade

March 2008

PeopleSoft Enterprise Financials/Supply Chain Management 8.4x to 9.0 MP5
Upgrade
SKU ufscm_mp5_032708_ufscm84xto90mp5
Copyright © 2008, Oracle. All rights reserved.

The Programs (which include both the software and documentation) contain proprietary information; they are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are also protected by copyright, patent, and other intellectual and industrial property laws. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of the Programs, except to the extent required to obtain interoperability with other independently created software or as specified by law, is prohibited.

The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice. If you find any problems in the documentation, please report them to us in writing. This document is not warranted to be error-free. Except as may be expressly permitted in your license agreement for these Programs, no part of these Programs may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose.

If the Programs are delivered to the United States Government or anyone licensing or using the Programs on behalf of the United States Government, the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT RIGHTS

Programs, software, databases, and related documentation and technical data delivered to U.S. Government customers are “commercial computer software” or “commercial technical data” pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the Programs, including documentation and technical data, shall be subject to the licensing restrictions set forth in the applicable Oracle license agreement, and, to the extent applicable, the additional rights set forth in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software--Restricted Rights (June 1987). Oracle Corporation, 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood City, CA 94065.

The Programs are not intended for use in any nuclear, aviation, mass transit, medical, or other inherently dangerous applications. It shall be the licensee’s responsibility to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy and other measures to ensure the safe use of such applications if the Programs are used for such purposes, and we disclaim liability for any damages caused by such use of the Programs.

The Programs may provide links to Web sites and access to content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle is not responsible for the availability of, or any content provided on, third-party Web sites. You bear all risks associated with the use of such content. If you choose to purchase any products or services from a third party, the relationship is directly between you and the third party. Oracle is not responsible for: (a) the quality of third-party products or services; or (b) fulfilling any of the terms of the agreement with the third party, including delivery of products or services and warranty obligations related to purchased products or services. Oracle is not responsible for any loss or damage of any sort that you may incur from dealing with any third party.

Oracle is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Open Source Disclosure

Oracle takes no responsibility for its use or distribution of any open source or shareware software or documentation and disclaims any and all liability or damages resulting from use of said software or documentation. The following open source software may be used in Oracle’s PeopleSoft products and the following disclaimers are provided.

Apache Software Foundation

This product includes software developed by the Apache Software Foundation (<http://www.apache.org/>). Copyright © 2000-2003. The Apache Software Foundation. All rights reserved. Licensed under the Apache License, Version 2.0 (the “License”); you may not use this file except in compliance with the License. You may obtain a copy of the License at <http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0>.

Unless required by applicable law or agreed to in writing, software distributed under the License is distributed on an “AS IS” BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, either express or implied. See the License for the specific language governing permissions and limitations under the License.

OpenSSL

Copyright © 1998-2005 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.

This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit (<http://www.openssl.org/>).

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Helma Project

Copyright © 1999-2004 Helma Project. All rights reserved. THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE HELMA PROJECT OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Helma includes third party software released under different specific license terms. See the licenses directory in the Helma distribution for a list of these license.

Sarissa

Copyright © 2004 Manos Batsis.

This library is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU Lesser General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2.1 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This library is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU Lesser General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU Lesser General Public License along with this library; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA.

ICU

ICU License - ICU 1.8.1 and later COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE Copyright © 1995-2003 International Business Machines Corporation and others. All rights reserved.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, provided that the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear in all copies of the Software and that both the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation. THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS," WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR HOLDERS INCLUDED IN THIS NOTICE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, OR ANY SPECIAL INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE. Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

All trademarks and registered trademarks mentioned herein are the property of their respective owners.

Sun's JAXB Implementation – JSDK 1.5 relaxngDatatype.jar 1.0 License

Copyright © 2001, Thai Open Source Software Center Ltd, Sun Microsystems. All rights reserved.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

W3C IPR SOFTWARE NOTICE

Copyright © 2000 World Wide Web Consortium, (Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Institut National de Recherche en Informatique et en Automatique, Keio University). All Rights Reserved.

Note: The original version of the W3C Software Copyright Notice and License could be found at <http://www.w3.org/Consortium/Legal/copyright-software-19980720>.

THIS SOFTWARE AND DOCUMENTATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS," AND COPYRIGHT HOLDERS MAKE NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR THAT THE USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR DOCUMENTATION WILL NOT INFRINGE ANY THIRD PARTY PATENTS, COPYRIGHTS, TRADEMARKS OR OTHER RIGHTS. COPYRIGHT HOLDERS WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR DOCUMENTATION.

Contents

Preface

About This Documentation.....	xxxi
Understanding This Documentation.....	xxxi
Prerequisites.....	xxxi
Audience.....	xxxi
Organization.....	xxxi
Related Information.....	xxxii

Chapter 1

Prepare Your Database.....	1
Understanding Your Upgrade.....	2
Understanding PeopleSoft Upgrades.....	3
Verifying the Software Installation	3
Defining Upgrade Databases	3
Reviewing Upgrade Notes and Tips	4
Copying Your Production Database	5
Making a Copy of Production Database	5
Increasing Database Space	6
Applying Upgrade Planning Files	6
Understanding Applying Upgrade Planning Files.....	6
Applying the UPGOPT Project	6
Building the UPGOPT Project	7
Importing Upgrade Setup Data	8
Setting Up Upgrade Planning Security	8
Editing Upgrade Planning DB2 Scripts	9
Updating Statistics.....	9
Running Initial Audit Reports.....	10
Understanding Running Initial Audit Reports.....	10
Run the Initial DDDAUDIT Report.....	10
Run the Initial SYSAUDIT Report.....	11
Create the INITALTAUD Project.....	11
Run the Initial Alter Audit.....	12
Review the Initial Audits.....	12
Performing General Options Setup	13

Defining Cost Management Options	15
Defining Services Procurement Options	15
Reviewing Process Scheduler Processes	17
Reviewing Country Data	17
Reviewing ChartField Configuration	18
Preparing Commitment Control.....	18
Preparing Promotions	19
Running Promotions PreUpgrade Reports.....	19
Reviewing Promotions PreUpgrade Reports.....	20
Running the PreUpgrade Promotions Query.....	21
Reviewing the PreUpgrade Promotions Query.....	21
Updating Promotional Claims	22
Gathering Customer Data	23
Running Customer PreUpgrade Report	23
Reviewing the Customer PreUpgrade Report	23
Identifying Pricing ID Name Collisions	23
Completing Billing Tasks	24
Running Billing PreUpgrade Reports	24
Reviewing the Billing PreUpgrade Reports	25
Setting Up Receivables	26
Posting Receivables Transactions	26
Processing Credit Card Payments	27
Generating Customer Conversation Letters	27
Establishing Customer Conversation Currency	28
Reviewing Project Data in Receivables	28
Reviewing Rate Type Defaults	29
Reviewing ENTRY_USE_TBL Data	29
Reviewing Group Type Field Data	30
Verifying Grant Management Processes	31
Preparing Grants Defaults	31
Preparing Projects Defaults	32
Preparing Deduction Management	33
Understanding Deduction Management.....	33
Extracting Deductions	33
Posting Deduction Transactions	34
Setting Up Resolutions Entry Types	34
Setting Up Projects	35
Processing Accounts Payable Voucher	35
Processing Third Party Transactions	35
Setting Up Projects Integration	36

Understanding Projects Integration.....	36
Running Pending Assets into AM Integration	36
Finalizing Pending Funding Transactions	37
Preparing Asset Management	38
Running Asset Management Interface Programs.....	38
Preparing Expenses	39
Managing Expense Approvals	40
Defaulting Country for Expense Location	40
Mapping Contract Offerings	41
Understanding Contract Offerings.....	41
Mapping Contract Offerings to OM Products.....	41
Mapping Contract Offering Categories.....	42
Managing Limits	42
Understanding Limit Management.....	42
Reviewing Existing Limits	43
Managing Limits in the New Release	43
Processing Bill Plans	44
Understanding Processing Bill Plans	44
Running Summarized Bill Plans Query	44
Processing Ready Bill Plans.....	45
Processing Pending Bill Plans.....	45
Processing In Progress Bill Plans.....	46
Reviewing Burden Plans	47
Processing Pending Amendments	48
Understanding Pending Amendments.....	48
Running Outstanding Amendments Query	48
Cancelling an Amendment	48
Processing an Amendment to Complete.....	49
Executing Match Rules and Transactions	49
Documenting New Match Rules	50
Documenting New Receipt Aware Criteria	50
Customizing Pay Cycle Definition	51
Configuring Pay Cycle Definitions	51
Verifying Voucher Build and Edit	52
Closing Payables Pay Cycles	53
Posting Payables Transactions	54
Running Journal Generator Edit and Post	55
Running Federal Payment Schedule Query	55
Completing Manual Payments	56
Canceling Split Payment Terms	57

Flagging Bad Effective Dated Withholding Entities.....	57
Completing Batch Transactions	58
Preparing Inventory	58
Running the Inventory PreUpgrade Report	59
Reviewing PreUpgrade Inventory Report	59
Confirming Shipping and Depleting All Orders	59
Costing and Posting Inventory Transactions	60
Running Inventory Balances Report	60
Completing Supply Chain Planning	61
Completing Planning Processes	61
Completing Supply Planning Processes	62
Identifying Manufacturing Data	62
Preparing Strategic Sourcing	63
Running the PreUpgrade Sourcing Query	63
Reviewing the PreUpgrade Sourcing Query	63
Reviewing Event Status	64
Preparing Services Procurement	64
Running the PreUpgrade sPro Reports	64
Reviewing the PreUpgrade sPro Reports	65
Running the PreUpgrade sPro Queries	66
Reviewing the PreUpgrade sPro Queries	66
Completing Cost Collection	67
Preparing Outstanding Schedules	67
Completing Purchasing Tasks	68
Loading Change Requests	68
Updating VAT Transaction Information	68
Understanding Updated VAT Transaction Information.....	68
Reviewing Existing VAT Information	69
Updating VAT Transaction Table	69
Reviewing Current VAT Defaults	69
Setting Up Treasury	73
Understanding the Treasury Setup.....	73
Running Auto Position Process	73
Approving Settlements Before Upgrading	73
Deleting Duplicate Securities Data	74
Reporting Row Count for Tables.....	75
Preparing Your Database	75
Understanding Database Preparation.....	75
Verify Database Integrity.....	76
Clean the PSOBJCHNG Table.....	76

Drop PeopleTools Tables.....	76
Shrink Images.....	77
Purge Message Queues.....	78
Backing Up Demo Databases	78
Backing Up Copy of Current Demo	79
Backing Up New Release Demo	79
Renaming Records and Fields	79
Understanding Renaming Records and Fields.....	79
Running the RNEPUPJ14 Script	80
Running the RNEPSPJ01 Script	80
Running the RNEPGMJ01 Script.....	81
Retaining the Target Rename Log Files	81
Running RNEPUPJ14 Script on Copy of Current Demo.....	81
Running RNEPSPJ01 Script on Copy of Current Demo.....	82
Running RNEPGMJ01 Script on Copy of Current Demo.....	82
Comparing Customizations	82
Modifying Compare Report Options	83
Running Compare UPGCUST	84
Running UPGCUST Filter Script	85
Reviewing UPGCUST Compare Log	86
Restoring Copy of Current Demo	86
Identifying Customizations	86
Preparing for the Application Upgrade.....	88
Creating a Copy of PS_INSTALLATION Table	88
Creating a Copy of RecField Definitions	89
Creating a Copy of DbField Definitions	89
Deleting Old Pagelet Wizard Data	89
Exporting Upgrade Setup Data	90
Dropping Indexes	91
Editing the System Data Swap Script.....	91
Editing the PeopleTools Swap Script.....	91
Backing Up After Prepare Your Database	92

Chapter 2

Apply PeopleTools Changes.....	93
Understanding PeopleTools Changes.....	94
Verifying Upgrade User.....	94
Performing Script Modifications.....	94
Understanding Script Modifications.....	95

Update Configuration Manager Profile.....	95
Run a DBTSFIX Report.....	96
Edit the DBTSFIX Output Scripts.....	97
Edit the GRANT Script.....	98
Edit the PSLANGUAGES Script.....	98
Edit the TLSUPGNONCOMP Script.....	98
Edit the PTxxxTLS Scripts.....	98
Edit the DB2 Scripts.....	99
Edit Move to Production Import Scripts.....	100
Edit Move to Production Password.....	101
Edit the DDLDB2 Script.....	101
Edit the DDLDBX Script.....	102
Edit the DDLORA Script.....	102
Edit the DDLIFX Script.....	102
Edit the MSGTLSUPG Script.....	103
Edit the Integration Broker Script.....	103
Edit Multilingual Step Properties.....	103
Edit Data Type Steps.....	104
Updating PeopleTools System Tables	104
Understanding Updating PeopleTools System Tables.....	105
Clean Up Message Data.....	105
Update System Catalog Views.....	106
Update PeopleTools System Tables.....	106
Grant Privileges to the CONNECT ID.....	107
Update the Product License Code.....	107
Update PeopleTools Patch Information.....	108
Create Temporary Performance Indexes.....	109
Export PeopleTools System Tables.....	109
Import PeopleTools System Tables.....	109
Reset Database Options Flag.....	110
Rerun Update Statistics for DB2 zOS.....	110
Rerun RUNSTATS Report for DB2 UNIX NT.....	110
Rerun Update Statistics for DB2 UNIX NT.....	111
Rerun Update Statistics for Informix.....	111
Rerun Update Statistics for Oracle	111
Turning Off Change Control	112
Loading Model Definition Data.....	112
Understanding Model Definition Data Load Process.....	112
Load Model Definitions for DB2 zOS.....	112
Load Model Definitions for DB2 UNIX NT.....	113

Load Model Definitions for Oracle.....	113
Load Model Definitions for Informix.....	113
Load Model Definitions for Microsoft.....	113
Load Model Definitions for Sybase.....	114
Loading Message Data.....	114
Reviewing PeopleTools Objects	114
Exporting and Copying Projects	116
Understanding Exporting and Copying Projects.....	116
Export and Copy PPLTLS84CUR Project.....	116
Export and Copy PPLTLS84CURML Project.....	117
Export and Copy PPLTLSML Project.....	118
Export and Copy PPLTLS84CURDEL Project.....	119
Export and Copy PATCH84X Project.....	119
Export and Copy PATCH84XML Project.....	120
Populating Tablespace Data.....	120
Create Application Tablespaces.....	121
Populate Tablespace Data.....	121
Update Tablespace Names.....	122
Building Updated PeopleTools Project.....	123
Generate Updated PeopleTools Script.....	123
Edit the Updated PeopleTools Script.....	123
Run the Updated PeopleTools Script.....	124
Migrating Records to New Tablespaces.....	124
Understanding Migration of Records to New Tablespaces.....	124
Export and Copy the PT84TBLSPC Project.....	124
Build the Tablespace Alter Script.....	125
Edit the Tablespace Alter Script.....	125
Run the Tablespace Alter Script.....	125
Loading Base Data.....	126
Loading Language Data.....	126
Populate Languages.....	126
Load Language Data.....	127
Loading PeopleTools Data.....	127
Load NonComparable Objects.....	127
Load English Messages.....	128
Load English String Data.....	128
Load Stored Statements Data.....	128
Loading PeopleTools Definition Group	129
Converting PeopleTools Objects	129
Update REN Server Configuration	129

Populate MCF Data	130
Convert Portal Objects	130
Convert Query Prompt Headings	131
Encrypt Connector Passwords	131
Load Conversion Data	131
Report Conversion Details	132
Run Data Conversion	132
Creating PeopleTools Views.....	132
Create Updated PeopleTools Views.....	132
Converting Integration Broker	133
Understanding Converting Integration Broker.....	133
Updating Integration Broker Defaults	133
Creating Integration Broker Objects	134
Saving Application Messaging Objects	134
Exporting Node Transactions	134
Preparing Integration Broker Deletes	134
Deleting Application Messaging Objects	135
Deleting Node Transactions	135
Setting Object Version Numbers.....	135
Converting Database Data Types	136
Understanding Converting Database Data Types.....	137
Backing Up Before Platform Changes	137
Running Long Data Audit	138
Validating Microsoft Database	138
Reviewing Microsoft Settings	138
Creating Microsoft Conversion Project	139
Generating Microsoft Conversion Script	139
Running Microsoft Conversion Script	139
Granting Permissions to the CONNECT ID	140
Running Microsoft Conversion Report	140
Validating Oracle Database	140
Creating Oracle Audit Tables	141
Auditing Duplicate Length Constraints	141
Auditing Disabled Constraints	141
Reviewing Oracle Settings	141
Generating Oracle Conversion Scripts	142
Running Long to LOB Script 1	144
Running Long to LOB Script 2	144
Running Long to LOB Script 3	144
Running Long to LOB Script 4	144

Running Long to LOB Script 5	145
Running Long to LOB Script 6	145
Running Long to LOB Script 7	145
Running Long to LOB Script 8	145
Auditing Long to LOB Conversion	146
Running Character Length Script 1	146
Running Character Length Script 2	146
Running Character Length Script 3	146
Running Character Length Script 4	147
Running Character Length Script 5	147
Running Character Length Script 6	147
Running Character Length Script 7	147
Running Character Length Script 8	148
Auditing Character Length Semantics	148
Reviewing Conversion Reports	148
Updating Database Options	149
Backing Up After PeopleTools Upgrade.....	149

Chapter 3

Run and Review Compare Reports.....	151
Understanding Compare Reports.....	151
Preparing for Application Changes	151
Exporting Project Definitions	151
Importing Project Definitions	152
Dropping Tables for Informix	152
Dropping Tables and Views	152
Renaming Tables	153
Understanding Renamed Tables.....	154
Running the RNEPUPJ01MSS Script.....	154
Running the RNEPUPJ01DB2 Script.....	154
Running the RNEPUPJ02DB2 Script.....	155
Running the RNEPUPJ01DBX Script.....	155
Running the RNEPUPJ02DBX Script.....	155
Running the RNEPUPJ01IFX Script	155
Running the RNEPUPJ01ORA Script	156
Running the RNEPUPJ01SYB Script	156
Running the RNEPSPJ01MSS Script.....	156
Running the RNEPSPJ01ORA Script.....	157
Running the RNEPSPJ01DB2 Script.....	157

Running the RNEPSPJ02DB2 Script.....	158
Running the RNEPSPJ01DBX Script.....	159
Running the RNEPSPJ02DBX Script.....	160
Running the RNEPSPJ01IFX Script.....	160
Running the RNEPSPJ01SYB Script.....	161
Running the RNEPPLJ01MSS Script.....	162
Running the RNEPPLJ01DB2 Script.....	162
Running the RNEPPLJ01DBX Script.....	163
Running the RNEPPLJ01ORA Script.....	164
Running the RNEPPLJ01IFX Script.....	165
Running the RNEPPLJ01SYB Script.....	166
Copying Select Tables	166
Understanding the Copy Select Tables Process.....	167
Running the DLCGGLU20E Script	167
Running the DLCGGLU20I Script	167
Running New Release Compare Reports	167
Understanding the New Release Compare.....	168
Preserving Local Message Node	168
Modifying New Release Compare Options	168
Running New Release UPGCUST Compare	170
Running New Release UPGCUSTIB Compare	170
Resetting Take Action Flags in UPGCUST	170
Running UPGCUSTIB Filter Script	171
Resetting Flags for ChartField Objects	171
Reviewing New Release Compare Reports	171
Reviewing New Release Changes	171
Reviewing NonComparable Objects	172

Chapter 4

Apply Application Changes.....	173
Understanding Application Changes.....	174
Customizing the New Release	174
Understanding New Release Customizations.....	174
Copying the UPGCUST Project	174
Reviewing Copy Results	174
Running New Release Upgrade Copy	175
Exporting Selected PeopleTools Tables	175
Importing Selected PeopleTools Tables	176
Copying the UPGCUSTIB Project	176

Swapping PeopleTools Tables	176
Creating the UPGIBCOPY Project	177
Copying the UPGIBCOPY Project	178
Updating Target Values	178
Copying the UPGNONCOMP Project	178
Reviewing Project Copy Results	179
Exporting New Release Objects	179
Importing New Release Objects	179
Resetting Object Version Numbers	179
Backing Up New Release Demo Again	180
Updating Database Overrides.....	180
Understanding Database Overrides.....	180
Set Index Parameters After Copy	181
Set Tablespace Names After Copy.....	181
Set Record Parameters After Copy.....	181
Create New Tablespaces.....	182
Backing Up After the Upgrade Copy.....	184
Configuring ChartFields	184
Understanding ChartFields	185
Updating Inactive ChartFields	185
Copying UPG CF CONFIG Project Definition	185
Building the UPG CF CONFIG Script	186
Running the UPG CF CONFIG Script	186
Copying UPG CF RENAME Project Definition	186
Building the UPG CF RENAME Script	186
Running the UPG CF RENAME Script	187
Exporting Configuration Defaults	187
Importing Configuration Defaults	187
Running Configuration by Project Process	187
Updating Asset Management ChartField SQC	188
Exporting ChartField Configuration	188
Importing ChartField Configuration	188
Modifying the Database Structure.....	188
Understanding Modifying the Database Structure.....	189
Backing Up for DB2.....	190
Building the Upgrade Tables Script.....	190
ReCreating Upgrade Tables.....	190
Creating the ALLTEMPTABS Project.....	190
Building the Create Temp Tables Script.....	191
Creating the ALLTABS Project.....	191

Building the Create and Alter Scripts.....	191
Editing the Create and Alter Scripts.....	192
Creating Temporary Tables.....	193
Creating Tables.....	193
Altering Tables.....	193
Creating Indexes.....	194
ReCreating Triggers.....	194
Reviewing the Create Indexes Log.....	194
Dropping Indexes for Data Conversion.....	195
Creating Indexes for Data Conversion.....	195
Creating Upgrade Views	199
Setting Index Parameters.....	199
Setting Temp Table Tablespace Names.....	200
Setting Tablespace Names.....	200
Setting Record Parameters.....	200
Generating a DB2 UNIX RUNSTATS Script	201
Updating Statistics for DB2 UNIX.....	201
Updating Statistics for DB2 zOS.....	201
Updating Statistics for Informix.....	201
Updating Statistics for Oracle.....	202
Loading Data for Data Conversion.....	202
Swapping Languages on System Data.....	203
Exporting Application Messages.....	203
Importing Application Messages.....	203
Exporting Record Groups.....	204
Importing Record Groups.....	204
Exporting the System Setup Data	205
Importing the System Setup Data.....	205
Exporting the PW Pagelet Data.....	206
Importing the PW Pagelet Data.....	206
Exporting the Pagelet Wizard Data.....	206
Importing the Pagelet Wizard Data.....	206
Exporting Upgrade Defaults.....	207
Importing Upgrade Defaults.....	207
Exporting Application Data	207
Importing Application Data.....	208
Exporting Data Conversion Driver Data.....	208
Importing Data Conversion Driver Data.....	208
Restoring New Release Demo	209
Applying Updates Before Data Conversion.....	209

Configuring Scheduler and Server	210
Backing Up Before Data Conversion.....	210
Running Data Conversion	211
Reviewing Data Conversion Tips.....	211
Running Data Conversion for Group 1.....	213
Running Data Conversion for Group 2.....	214
Running Data Conversion for Group 3.....	214
Running Data Conversion for Group 4.....	214
Running Data Conversion for Group 5.....	214
Running Data Conversion for Group 11.....	215
Backing Up After Data Conversion.....	215
Finalizing the Database Structure.....	215
Understanding Final Database Structure.....	216
Building the UPG SPL SYNCH Script.....	216
Running the UPG SPL SYNCH Script.....	216
Building the Alter with Deletes Scripts.....	216
Altering Tables with Deletes.....	217
Creating Indexes Again.....	217
Creating Triggers.....	217
Running the AE SYNCIDGEN Process.....	217
Creating All Views.....	218
Running Maintenance Pack Scripts.....	218
Understanding Running Maintenance Pack Scripts.....	218
Running the Accounts Payable Script.....	219
Running the Accounts Receivable Script.....	219
Running the Contract Management Script.....	219
Running the General Ledger Script.....	219
Running the Order Management Script.....	220
Running the Purchasing Script.....	220
Running the Work Order Script.....	220
Running the Strategic Sourcing Script.....	221
Updating the Maintenance Log Table.....	221
Loading Data to Complete System Setup.....	221
Exporting Strings.....	222
Importing Strings.....	222
Exporting EDI Statements.....	223
Importing EDI Statements.....	223
Exporting Mass Change Data.....	223
Importing Mass Change Data.....	224
Exporting XML Service Information.....	224

Importing XML Service Information.....	224
Exporting Related Language System Data.....	224
Importing Related Language System Data.....	225
Exporting Application System Data.....	225
Importing Application System Data.....	225
Exporting Converted Application Base Data.....	226
Importing Converted Application Base Data.....	226
Exporting Notification Template Table.....	226
Importing Notification Template Table.....	227
Exporting Approval Framework System Data.....	227
Importing Approval Framework System Data.....	227
Exporting Common Portal System Options.....	228
Importing Common Portal System Options.....	228
Exporting Setup Data.....	228
Importing Setup Data.....	228
Loading Stored Statements.....	229
Running the STORECP Script.....	229
Running the STOREFP Script.....	229
Running the STOREGL Script.....	230
Running the STOREIN Script.....	230
Running the STORELC Script.....	230
Running the STOREMG Script.....	230
Running the STOREPO Script.....	230
Updating Language Data.....	231
Understanding Updating Language Data.....	231
Run the TSRECPOP Script.....	231
Completing PeopleTools Conversion	231
Updating Object Version Numbers.....	232
Completing the Service Operation Upgrade.....	232
Running the Final Audit Reports.....	232
Run the Final DDDAUDIT Report.....	233
Run the Final SYSAUDIT Report.....	233
Create the FNLALTAUD Project.....	233
Run the Final Alter Audit.....	233
Review the Final Audits.....	234
Run a Final SETINDEX Report.....	235
Run a Final SETTABLE Report.....	235

Chapter 5

Complete Database Changes.....	237
Understanding Database Changes.....	238
Configuring the Upgrade Environment.....	238
Configure Application Server.....	238
Configure Portal.....	239
Reapplying Customizations.....	240
Understanding the Reapplication.....	240
Performing Customized Object Adjustment.....	240
Registering Portal Navigation Objects.....	241
Setting Up Security.....	241
Understanding Security.....	241
Set Up Security.....	241
Synchronize CREF Permissions.....	244
Grant Access to Personalize Homepage.....	245
Completing Portal Data Conversion.....	246
Reviewing Pagelet and Collection Log.....	246
Enabling Pagelet Publishing.....	247
Backing Up Before Manual Changes	247
Completing ChartField Configuration	247
Running the Configuration Steps Report.....	248
Performing Manual Configuration Steps.....	248
Reviewing PeopleTools Functionality.....	248
Preparing the Content Provider Registry.....	250
Updating the Portal Options Data.....	250
Setting Country Codes	251
Understanding Country Codes.....	251
Adding New Country Codes	251
Modifying Existing Country Codes	252
Completing Credit Card Encryption	253
Understanding Credit Card Encryption.....	253
Reviewing Credit Card Encryption Status.....	253
Running Credit Card Encryption.....	253
Upgrading PeopleSoft Planning	254
Understanding PeopleSoft Demand Planning and Inventory Policy Planning Upgrade	254
Preparing PeopleSoft Planning Upgrade	255
Installing the Planning Upgrade Program	256
Running the Upgrade Extract Program	258
Importing Data into New Database	264
Updating Approval Transactions	265

Understanding Updating Transactions	265
Converting Approval Transactions	266
Reviewing Approval Conversion.....	266
Rebuilding Verity Search Indexes	267
Reconciling Notification Templates	267
Completing Manufacturing Setup	268
Completing Promotions	268
Updating Checkbook Definitions	268
Setting Up Default Prefixes	270
Updating Tree Statistics	271
Verifying Payment Authorization Data	272
Defining Auto Numbering for Price Rules	272
Completing Billing Setup	273
Understanding Billing Upgrade.....	274
Creating Recommended Manual Indexes	274
Processing Tax Information	274
Defining Payment Terms for Paid Invoices	274
Configuring VAT Default	275
Configuring Order Management	276
Repricing Orders with Product Kits	276
Adding Order Source Codes	276
Defining AutoNumbering for Reservation Backorder	278
Defining AutoNumbering for Alternate Sources of Supply	279
Defining Default Hold Reason Code.....	280
Defining Hold Code Security by Role.....	281
Updating Orders from Contracts	282
Identifying Renamed Pricing IDs	283
Configuring Attachments	283
Understanding Attachments.....	283
Configuring an Attachment Server	284
Converting Purchasing Attachments	284
Converting Order Management Attachments	286
Completing Customer Data	288
Understanding the Trading Partner Code.....	289
Running the Trading Partner Code Report	289
Updating the Trading Partner Code	289
Completing Strategic Sourcing Setup.....	290
Defining User Lists for Event and Plan Approvals.....	290
Defining Sourcing Approval Processes.....	291
Defining Auto Numbering for Sourcing Plan ID.....	292

Completing Services Procurement Setup	293
Understanding the sPro Upgrade.....	294
Running the PostUpgrade sPro Queries	294
Reviewing the PostUpgrade sPro Queries	294
Activating HCM Integration in sPro	296
Defining Service Type for Project Role	297
Defining Default Business Unit	297
Defining Requester Defaults	298
Defining Service Coordinator Defaults	298
Defining User List for Approvals	299
Defining Work Order Approval Process	300
Setting Up Bid Factors	303
Defining Bid Factor Mapping	303
Setting Auto Numbering for Timesheets	304
Setting Auto Numbering for Progress Logs	304
Reconciling sPro Notification Templates	305
Reviewing Time and Progress Log Templates	306
Configuring PayBill Management	308
Updating PayBill Management Product ID.....	308
Preparing Treasury Setup	309
Rerunning Auto Position Process	309
Updating Market Exchange Codes	309
Setting Up New Facilities	310
Setting Up Document Sequencing	310
Adding the Issue Date for Securities	311
Adding CUSIP for Security	311
Generating SQL for Fee Codes	311
Reviewing Electronic Layouts for Banks	312
Completing Setup for Projects	312
Setting Up Analysis Type and Analysis Group	313
Linking Project Status to Process Status	313
Setting Unit of Measure for Hours and Days	316
Setting Project Calendar	316
Running Summary Refresh	317
Calculating Team Member Duration	318
Setting Default Project Manager Role	319
Reviewing Rate Template Mapping	319
Setting Up Expenses	320
Setting Cash Advance Sources	320
Updating Country Code	321

Setting Sync IDs	321
Setting Resource Management	322
Upgrading Appointments	323
Updating Data for Resource Creation	323
Loading Holidays	324
Setting VAT Processing	324
Reviewing New VAT Functionality	325
Updating the VAT Entity	325
Reviewing VAT Accounting Information	325
Updating VAT Defaults	328
Updating VAT Entity Report Options	330
Performing Payables Setup	330
Setting Up Match Rules and Rule Control	331
Setting Up Document Association Rules	334
Running the Matching Process	337
Identifying Renamed Voucher Build Codes.....	337
Running Document Tolerance Checking	339
Setting Up Agency Location Codes	340
Configuring New Vendor Fields	341
Updating Open Liability	342
Updating Manual Drafts	342
Setting Up Pay Cycle Bank Replacement Rules	342
Specifying Reschedule Payment Data	344
Selecting Vendor Set Controls	345
Recreating Federal Payment Schedule	346
Setting Up Withholding	346
Setting Definitions Terms and Templates	349
Verifying Procurement Withholding ChartFields.....	350
Configuring OnDemand Processing.....	351
Completing Receivables Changes	351
Adding a Currency Code	351
Setting Up OnDemand Processing	352
Analyzing VAT Considerations	353
Updating AutoNumbering.....	355
Running Customer Follow Up Query	355
Adding a Cash Control Journal Generator Template.....	355
Updating Existing Conversations	356
Completing Deduction Management Setup	357
Running AR Update Process	357
Setting Up Algorithms	358

Setting Up Methods	359
Setting Up Default Options	359
Setting Up Default Specialists	360
Setting Up Reason WriteOff Tolerances	360
Setting Up User WriteOff Tolerances	360
Setting Up Audit Control	361
Reviewing Deduction Reasons	361
Updating eSettlements	362
Validating Role System Access	362
Validating Buyer Registration	363
Validating Agreement Registration	364
Setting Up Buyer Notifications	365
Setting Up Supplier Notification	366
Updating the General Ledger	367
Understanding the General Ledger.....	368
Modifying Accounting Entry Definitions	368
Updating Regulatory Ledger Reporting	369
Setting Up Adjustment Year	369
Setting Up Adjustment Period Default	370
Modifying Adjustment Period Defaults	371
Setting Up Adjustment Periods	372
Cleaning Up Adjustment Periods	374
Setting Up Commitment Control	375
Checking Funding Source Allocations.....	375
Setting Up Wait Time for Budget Check	376
Completing Asset Management Setup.....	376
Setting Up Asset Attributes.....	377
Running Asset Attributes.....	378
Setting Up Report Suffixes.....	379
Completing Contracts Setup	380
Understanding Completing Contracts Setup.....	380
Updating Limits Totals	380
Running the Limit Amount Report	381
Setting Up Billing Summarization	381
Reviewing Contracts Rate Plans	382
Stamping the Database	383
Reviewing Change Control.....	383
Backing Up Before Testing.....	384
Testing Your Copy of Production.....	385

Chapter 6

Apply Changes to Production Database.....	387
Understanding the Move to Production.....	387
Testing the Move to Production.....	387
Understanding the Move to Production Test.....	387
Understand Move to Production.....	388
Creating a New Change Assistant Job.....	389
Testing Once More.....	390
Performing the Move to Production.....	390
Completing the Upgrade Survey	390

Chapter 7

Appendices.....	393
Understanding Appendices.....	393

Appendix A

Applying Fixes Required for Upgrade.....	395
Preparing to Apply Fixes.....	395
Applying Fixes During Installation.....	396
Applying Fixes After Copying Project.....	396
Applying Fixes After Data Conversion.....	397
Applying Fixes Between Upgrade Passes.....	397
Applying Fixes in Move to Production.....	398

Appendix B

Changing the User Interface.....	399
Change the User Interface.....	399
Change the User Interface for Mobile.....	401

Appendix C

Improving Performance.....	403
Understanding Performance Improvement.....	403
Planning Your Upgrade for Performance.....	403
Performing the Upgrade.....	404
Verifying the Database Structure Task.....	404
Creating and Altering SQL Scripts.....	404

Performing Data Conversion.....	404
Improving Performance for Your Platform.....	404
Using Oracle.....	405
Using DB2.....	405
Consulting the Global Support Center.....	406

Appendix D

Planning for Upgrade Testing.....	407
Understanding Testing Techniques.....	407
Deciding When to Test.....	407
Evaluating Your Testing Requirements.....	408
Defining Your Testing Strategy.....	408
Understanding Your Testing Strategy.....	408
Evaluating Unit Testing	409
Evaluating System Testing.....	409
Evaluating Integration Testing.....	409
Evaluating Parallel Testing.....	410
Evaluating Performance Testing.....	410
Evaluating User Acceptance Testing.....	410
Evaluating Regression Testing.....	411
Determining the Testing Conditions.....	411
Developing Your Test Plan.....	411
Developing Test Scripts.....	412
Reviewing Tips and Techniques.....	413
Reducing the Time of Upgrade Process.....	413
Performing Security Testing.....	414
Performing Testing on Up to Date Data.....	414
Performing Test Move to Production.....	414
Tracking Issues.....	414
Reviewing Testing Tools.....	414
Discussing Change Control.....	415
Discussing Back Up Procedures.....	415
Evaluating Unexpected Results.....	415
Evaluating Reasons for Failure.....	415

Appendix E

Preserving Queries and Tree Objects.....	417
Understanding Preserve Queries and Trees.....	417

Preparing the Database.....	418
Creating a New Project.....	418
Comparing the New Project.....	419
Copying the Project.....	420
Testing the Project.....	420
ReExporting the PeopleTools Tables.....	420

Appendix F

Reviewing New VAT Functionality.....	423
Understanding New VAT Functionality.....	423
Reviewing New Flags on VAT Country.....	423
Reviewing Changes to Transaction Entry.....	424
Reviewing VAT Treatment on Transactions.....	425
Understanding VAT Treatment on Transactions.....	425
Reviewing New VAT Treatment Groups.....	425
Reviewing Expense / Treasury Treatments.....	427
Reviewing Self-Assess VAT Treatments.....	427
Reviewing Transactions.....	428
Validating VAT Default Setup.....	429
Restructuring Default Data.....	429
Reviewing VAT Driver Defaults.....	430
Understanding VAT Driver Defaults.....	430
Reviewing Existing VAT Defaults.....	430
Reviewing New VAT Defaults.....	431
Reviewing Defaults for New VAT Drivers.....	432
Reviewing VAT on Services Functionality.....	433
Reviewing Default VAT Codes.....	433
Reviewing Codes for Goods and Services.....	434
Reviewing Non-Zero Rate VAT Codes.....	434
Reviewing VAT Codes Labeled as Taxable.....	434
Reviewing General Ledger VAT Codes.....	434
Reviewing Zero-Rate VAT Codes.....	434
Reviewing Existing VAT Code Values.....	434
Reviewing New VAT Code Defaults.....	436
Reviewing Default VAT Transaction Types.....	437
Reviewing New Type Descriptions.....	437
Reviewing New Transaction Type Defaults.....	439
Reviewing New Types on the VAT Entity.....	440
Reviewing Additional VAT Changes.....	440

Understanding Additional VAT Changes.....	441
Defining Defaults by Country and State.....	441
Reviewing VAT SetID.....	442
Reviewing VAT Default State.....	443
Reviewing VAT Effective Dates.....	443
Reviewing VAT Applicability.....	444
Reviewing Treasury VAT Service Country.....	444
Reviewing Changes to Expenses.....	444
Reviewing Item Categories.....	444
Reviewing Contracts Offering ID's.....	445
Reviewing Required Fields.....	445
Reviewing VAT Tolerance Information.....	447
Revalidating VAT Default Setup.....	448

Appendix G

Reviewing Tablespaces.....	449
Understanding Tablespace Review.....	449
Reviewing Table Names.....	449
Reviewing 8.40 and 8.4 SP1 Table Names.....	449
Reviewing 8.4 SP2 Table Names.....	450

Appendix H

Upgrading the Content Provider Registry.....	453
Understanding the Content Provider Registry Upgrade.....	453
Copying Your Enterprise Portal Database.....	455
Upgrading Enterprise Portal PeopleTools.....	455
Updating Registry Permission Lists.....	455
Understanding Registry Permission Lists Updates.....	455
Updating Portal Registry.....	456
Deleting the Database Cache.....	456
Creating the Portal Project.....	456
Understanding Portal Project Creation.....	457
Creating the Target Enterprise Portal Project.....	457
Cleaning the Target Enterprise Portal Project.....	458
Deleting the Target Enterprise Portal Database Cache.....	458
Copying the Target Enterprise Portal Project Definition.....	459
Creating the Copy of Production Portal Project.....	459
Cleaning the Copy of Production Portal Project.....	462

Deleting the Copy of Production Database Cache.....	462
Comparing the Portal Project.....	462
Reviewing the Portal Project.....	463
Copying the Portal Project.....	463
Understanding Portal Project Copying.....	463
Copying the Portal Project.....	464
Deleting the Enterprise Portal Database Cache.....	464
Copying Portal Project to Production.....	464
Understanding Portal Project to Production Copying.....	465
Copying the Portal Project to File.....	465
Copying the Portal Project from File.....	465
Deleting the Enterprise Portal Database Cache Again.....	466
Deleting Obsolete Folders.....	466
Understanding Obsolete Folder Deletion.....	466
Deleting Obsolete Folders on Enterprise Portal 8.4.....	466
Deleting Obsolete Folders on Enterprise Portal 8.8.....	467
Updating Registry Folder Permissions.....	467
Understanding Registry Folder Permissions Updates.....	467
Updating the Enterprise Portal Registry Folder Permissions.....	467
Deleting the Enterprise Portal Cache.....	468

Appendix I

Using Data Conversion Utilities.....	469
Understanding Data Conversion Utilities.....	469
Using the Upgrade Driver Program.....	469
Using the Upgrade Drivers Page.....	469
Understanding Upgrade Drivers Page.....	469
Accessing the Upgrade Drivers Page.....	470
Adding New Upgrade Drivers Section Page.....	470
Inactivating Upgrade Drivers Section.....	471
Reviewing the Data Conversion Report.....	472

Appendix J

Using the Comparison Process	473
Understanding the Comparison Process.....	473
Reviewing Source and Target Columns.....	474
Reviewing the Action Column.....	475
Reviewing the Upgrade Column.....	475

Putting it All Together.....	476
Understanding Upgrade Compare Reports.....	476
Reviewing Report Columns.....	477
Using Reports.....	477
 Index	 481

About This Documentation

Understanding This Documentation

This documentation is designed to direct you through the process of upgrading to your new PeopleSoft release.

This section describes information you should know before you begin working with PeopleSoft products and documentation, including PeopleSoft-specific documentation conventions.

Prerequisites

You must complete the tasks in the document *Getting Started on Your PeopleSoft Upgrade* before beginning this upgrade. If you have not yet completed these tasks, do so now.

See PeopleSoft Customer Connection (Implement Optimize + Upgrade, Upgrade Guide, Upgrade Documentation and Software, Upgrade Documentation and Scripts).

Audience

This documentation assumes you have a basic understanding of the PeopleSoft system. One of the most important components of a successful upgrade of your PeopleSoft installation is your on-site experience.

You should be familiar with your operating hardware environment and have the necessary skills to support that environment. You should also have a working knowledge of:

- SQL and SQL command syntax.
- PeopleSoft system navigation.
- PeopleSoft windows, menus, and pages (and how to modify them).
- The World Wide Web.
- Microsoft Windows or Windows NT graphical user interface.

PeopleSoft recommends that you complete at least one PeopleSoft introductory training course before performing this upgrade.

See PeopleSoft Customer Connection (Oracle University).

Organization

This documentation is divided into chapters, each containing tasks that represent major milestones in the upgrade process:

- Prepare Your Database
- Apply PeopleTools Changes
- Run and Review Compare Reports
- Apply Application Changes
- Complete Database Changes
- Apply Changes to Production Database

This documentation may also contain appendices. When additional information is required to complete an upgrade task, you will be directed to the appropriate appendix.

Related Information

PeopleSoft provides additional information that may help with your upgrade. The following information (as well as updates to our upgrade) is available on PeopleSoft Customer Connection:

- *PeopleSoft Release Notes.* Before you begin your upgrade, read the PeopleTools and PeopleSoft application Release Notes to determine what has changed in the system and to familiarize yourself with the new features in this release. The Release Notes also indicate whether you need to upgrade other portions of your system, such as your RDBMS software or batch files.
- *Upgrades Database.* The Upgrade Documentation database on PeopleSoft Customer Connection contains information posted after shipment of this release that may not be included in these upgrade instructions. This information may include Updates & Fixes required at upgrade. Always check the Upgrade Documentation database for the most current documentation and information.
- *Getting Started on Your PeopleSoft Upgrade.* Before beginning a PeopleSoft upgrade, you must complete the tasks in the document *Getting Started on Your PeopleSoft Upgrade*. This document guides you through planning your upgrade as well as installing the software necessary to upgrade to the next PeopleSoft release. If you did not complete the tasks in this documentation, do so now.

Important! Before upgrading, it is imperative that you check the Upgrade Documentation database on PeopleSoft Customer Connection for updates to the upgrade instructions. We continually post updates as we refine the upgrade process.

See PeopleSoft Customer Connection (Implement Optimize + Upgrade, Upgrade Guide, Upgrade Documentation and Software).

CHAPTER 1

Prepare Your Database

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding Your Upgrade
- Copying Your Production Database
- Applying Upgrade Planning Files
- Editing Upgrade Planning DB2 Scripts
- Updating Statistics
- Running Initial Audit Reports
- Performing General Options Setup
- Defining Cost Management Options
- Defining Services Procurement Options
- Reviewing Process Scheduler Processes
- Reviewing Country Data
- Reviewing ChartField Configuration
- Preparing Commitment Control
- Preparing Promotions
- Gathering Customer Data
- Identifying Pricing ID Name Collisions
- Completing Billing Tasks
- Setting Up Receivables
- Verifying Grant Management Processes
- Preparing Grants Defaults
- Preparing Projects Defaults
- Preparing Deduction Management
- Setting Up Projects
- Setting Up Projects Integration
- Preparing Asset Management
- Preparing Expenses
- Managing Expense Approvals

- Defaulting Country for Expense Location
- Mapping Contract Offerings
- Managing Limits
- Processing Bill Plans
- Reviewing Burden Plans
- Processing Pending Amendments
- Executing Match Rules and Transactions
- Completing Batch Transactions
- Preparing Inventory
- Completing Supply Chain Planning
- Identifying Manufacturing Data
- Preparing Strategic Sourcing
- Preparing Services Procurement
- Preparing Outstanding Schedules
- Completing Purchasing Tasks
- Updating VAT Transaction Information
- Setting Up Treasury
- Reporting Row Count for Tables
- Preparing Your Database
- Backing Up Demo Databases
- Renaming Records and Fields
- Comparing Customizations
- Identifying Customizations
- Preparing for the Application Upgrade
- Backing Up After Prepare Your Database

Task 1-1: Understanding Your Upgrade

This section discusses:

- Understanding PeopleSoft Upgrades
- Verifying the Software Installation
- Defining Upgrade Databases
- Reviewing Upgrade Notes and Tips

Understanding PeopleSoft Upgrades

This task reviews information you need to know before you begin your upgrade. It explains the different types of databases that you will use and provides useful upgrade tips and information that you may need to apply before beginning your upgrade.

Task 1-1-1: Verifying the Software Installation

Before continuing with the upgrade, you must complete all of the tasks in *Getting Started on Your PeopleSoft Upgrade*, “Install the Software Release.” Verify that the following tasks are complete:

- Installing the new release.
- Applying PeopleTools patches.
- Applying updates required for upgrade.
- Installing the Change Assistant.
- Creating and configuring an upgrade job.
- Setting Configuration Manager profile.
- Reviewing upgrade step properties.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 1-1-2: Defining Upgrade Databases

The following databases will be used during your upgrade:

- The New Release Demo database always refers to the database delivered with your new PeopleSoft release.
It contains the new and changed database objects that you want to add. The New Release Demo database is also referred to as the Demo database later in the upgrade.
- The Copy of Production database refers to the copy of your production database, into which you will add the new and changed objects for this release from the New Release Demo database.

Note. You will create more than one Copy of Production database. Your second and subsequent copies are referred to as the New Copy of Production.

- The Copy of Current Demo refers to the copy of the demo database for the release that you are currently using.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 1-1-3: Reviewing Upgrade Notes and Tips

This section contains information that may apply to your upgrade product. Review the information in this section before beginning your upgrade.

- **Billing and Order Management**

For PeopleSoft Billing and Order Management Vertex and Taxware Customers: If you use third party tax applications (Vertex or Taxware) with your existing software release, you must upgrade your tax link to the release that is compatible with this PeopleSoft release.

- **Budget Cycle**

Upgrading in the middle of a budget cycle is not recommended, but it can be accomplished. If you want to upgrade in the middle of a budget cycle, you must take the following steps:

Recreate any run control records created prior to the upgrade for the Budgets Cube Import. This is due to the introduction of new ChartFields for ledger tables.

If the Position Budgeting feature is used, the position data will not be upgraded due to the extent of the architectural changes to the position tables. When the upgrade is complete, you will need to subscribe to the new position data (from HRMS or EPM/WFA) or if you do not have integration points, you will need to key in new position data via the Budgets product.

- **Time and Labor to Projects Interface Considerations**

This information applies if you are currently using the Time and Labor to Projects interface, and you intend to continue using this interface with the new PeopleSoft release. Because this interface takes records from Time and Labor in the HRMS database and loads them in the Projects tables in the Financial and Supply Chain Management database, you cannot use this interface until both databases are upgraded.

You can upgrade the two databases independently and in no particular order, but you will not be able to run this interface until both upgrades are complete.

- **Performance Recommendations**

Before beginning your upgrade, you should plan for performance issues.

See Appendix: “Improving Performance.”

- **Expenses**

PeopleSoft Expenses uses a new Approval and Workflow engine to manage expense transaction approvals. To prepare for upgrade, customers must ensure that all expense transactions are either in Pending status (unsubmitted) or in final approved status prior to the upgrade. Transactions that are in the approval process may not be recoverable for routing to approver queues after the upgrade. Once the upgrade is completed and the system is in production, transactions that are in Pending status may be submitted normally and transactions that are already approved may be staged for further processing as required.

- **Mobile Client**

No upgrade is provided for Mobile Client. The Client install for users on a prior version of the Mobile Travel & Expenses client would replace the existing database with a new one and will not be upgraded.

Warning! If there are unsubmitted Expense Reports or Time Reports in Mobile Client, they will be lost. It is recommended that all users submit their information to the server before the Expenses and Mobile Upgrade. If you upgrade Expenses before all users have a chance to submit their information, then that information can no longer be submitted.

- Microsoft SQL Server Column Statistics

As of Microsoft SQL Server 2000, user-defined statistics can be created on columns within a table. This feature is not supported by PeopleTools. If you added user-defined statistics to any columns in your PeopleSoft application, it may cause errors to occur during the upgrade steps that alter tables. PeopleSoft recommends that you drop all user-defined statistics on columns of PeopleSoft tables before proceeding with your upgrade.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-2: Copying Your Production Database

This section discusses:

- Making a Copy of Production Database
- Increasing Database Space

Task 1-2-1: Making a Copy of Production Database

Make a copy of your production database. You will upgrade this database, rather than performing the upgrade directly on your production database. Performing an upgrade on a copy of your production database enables you to test your upgrade in a controlled environment. Refer to the administration guide for your database platform for information on copying databases.

Note. Move to Production: This is a second Copy of Production sometimes referred to as the New Copy of Production. The first Copy of Production, or “old” Copy of Production, will now be the source database (it was the target database in the initial test pass). The second, or “new” Copy of Production, is now the target database.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-2-2: Increasing Database Space

To prepare for the upgrade, you may need to increase the space allocated to your Copy of Production database. Depending on your relational database management system (RDBMS), this may include allocating space to tablespaces or allocating database primary space and log files. Be aware that your new environment needs to accommodate both the existing data in your Copy of Production database as well as the new data, new data structures, and new database objects. Every site and configuration is different, so Oracle cannot offer a guaranteed estimate of your database sizing needs.

As part of the initial upgrade pass, you may need to revisit your initial space allocation settings more than once as you progress through the upgrade. At the end of the initial pass, the final space allocation settings will closely reflect the space you will need to complete any subsequent Move to Production passes. Work with your DBA to ensure that your environment is set up appropriately for both the initial and Move to Production passes.

See the PeopleSoft installation documentation for your product line and release.

Note. Oracle RDBMS customers also need to alter the tablespace for PSIMAGE and increase it to 200 MB; autoextend on next 10 MB; maxsize unlimited.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-3: Applying Upgrade Planning Files

This section discusses:

- Understanding Applying Upgrade Planning Files
- Applying the UPGOPT Project
- Building the UPGOPT Project
- Importing Upgrade Setup Data
- Setting Up Upgrade Planning Security

Understanding Applying Upgrade Planning Files

In this task, you apply the upgrade planning files that you downloaded from the Upgrade database on Customer Connection to your current codeline. These files may include Structured Query Report (SQR) programs and scripts that you will execute in later tasks, and a project that you will apply to your Copy of Production database. This project may include records, fields, pages, menus, queries, and process definitions that allow functional users to define conversion information needed for later upgrade tasks.

Task 1-3-1: Applying the UPGOPT Project

In this step, apply the UPGOPT project to your Copy of Production database using the Copy Project from File process.

To apply the UPGOPT project:

1. Using your current codeline, launch Application Designer and sign in to your Copy of Production database.
2. Select Tools, Copy Project, From File.
3. From the dialog box, select the import directory PS_HOME\PROJECTS\ (current codeline).
4. Click UPGOPT in the Projects box, and then click Select.
5. Click Copy.

This copies the UPGOPT project onto your Copy of Production database.

6. Using your current codeline, launch Data Mover and sign on to your Copy of Production database.
7. Run the following script to load Access Groups and the Upgrade Query Tree:

```
\PS_HOME\SCRIPTS\UPGOPT_EP84.DMS
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-3-2: Building the UPGOPT Project

In this step you create and alter tables, and create views.

To build the UPGOPT project:

1. Using your current codeline, launch Application Designer and sign in to your Copy of Production database.
2. Select File, Open...
3. In the Definition drop-down list box, select *Project* and click Open to display the list of projects.
4. Select *UPGOPT* and click Open again.
5. Select Build, Project...
6. Under Build Options, select Create Tables, Create Views.
7. Click Settings...
8. On the Create tab, select Recreate View if it already exists and Recreate Table if it already exists.
9. On the Logging tab, select Fatal errors, warnings, and informational messages.
10. On the Scripts tab, select Output to separate files.
11. In the Script File Names box, give your scripts a unique name that reflects this task number and the object being created.
12. Click OK.
13. Under Build Execute Options, select Build script file.
14. Click Build.
15. Using the appropriate SQL query tool for your platform, run the scripts created in the step above.

Run the scripts in the following order: Create Tables, Create Views, Create Indexes.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-3-3: Importing Upgrade Setup Data

This script imports previously preserved upgrade setup data and mapping values into your New Copy of Production database during the Move to Production upgrade pass. You had set up these values earlier in your Copy of Production database throughout various tasks in the "Prepare your Database" chapter. You then exported this data during your Initial pass or a prior Move to Production pass.

The script name for your upgrade path is:

PUEP84IMP.DMS

Prior to running this script, please ensure that the corresponding DAT file you had exported in the Initial pass or a prior Move to Production pass exists in your current release PS_HOME directory.

The DAT file for your upgrade path is:

PUEP84EXP.DAT

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	MTP	All	All	All

Task 1-3-4: Setting Up Upgrade Planning Security

In this step you set up security on your Copy of Production database.

To set up security:

1. Select PeopleTools, Security, Permissions & Roles, Permission Lists.
2. Enter the permission list for the users who will be reviewing and setting up functional requirements for the upgrade, then click Search.
3. Select or insert the menu name UPG_DEFINE_DEFAULTS, and click Edit Components.
4. Select all items in the menu.
5. Click OK.
6. Click Save.
7. Select PeopleTools, Security, Permissions & Roles, Permission Lists.
8. Select the permission list for the users that review and set up functional requirements for the upgrade.
9. Navigate to the Query tab.
10. Select Access Group Permissions.

11. Add one row with the Tree Name UPG_QUERY_TREE_EP and the Access Group UPG_ACCESS_GROUP.
12. Select OK, Save.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-4: Editing Upgrade Planning DB2 Scripts

Perform this step only if your database platform is DB2 z/OS. DB2 z/OS scripts that create tables need a `set current sqlid` statement so that the tables are created with the correct owner ID. Open each script listed below, then uncomment and modify all of the DB2-specific statements to reflect your environment.

For SQL scripts, if the script does not contain DB2-specific statements, add the following line to the top of the script and edit it for your environment, inserting the appropriate owner ID in uppercase characters:

```
set current sqlid = 'OWNER_ID';
```

For Data Mover scripts (DMS), if the script does not contain DB2-specific statements, add the following line to the top of the script and edit it for your environment, inserting the appropriate owner ID in uppercase characters:

```
set execute_sql set current sqlid = 'OWNER_ID';
```

The following is a list of scripts that you need to edit:

```
PUUPX07.DMS
PUEPAU41.DMS
PUCGGLY31.DMS
PUEP84IMP.DMS
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 z/OS	All

Task 1-5: Updating Statistics

Run this task to improve performance of your compare and copy processes. Have your database administrator update statistics on your database before proceeding with your upgrade. Later in the upgrade, you will update your statistics again due to changes in the database structure.

See Appendix: “Improving Performance.”

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-6: Running Initial Audit Reports

This section discusses:

- Understanding Running Initial Audit Reports
- Run the Initial DDDAUDIT Report
- Run the Initial SYSAUDIT Report
- Create the INITALTAUD Project
- Run the Initial Alter Audit
- Review the Initial Audits

Understanding Running Initial Audit Reports

In this task, you run and review your initial DDDAUDIT, SYSAUDIT, and Alter Audit reports. Running these reports ensures that your database is as clean as possible for the remainder of the upgrade.

Task 1-6-1: Run the Initial DDDAUDIT Report

DDDAUDIT is an SQR script that compares your production SQL data tables with the PeopleSoft PeopleTools record definitions to identify inconsistencies.

In this step, DDDAUDIT is run using SQR from your current (old) PeopleSoft release against the Copy of Production to ensure that you are starting with a clean database.

You will review the output from the report in a later step.

See Review the Initial Audits.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: System and Server Administration for your current release.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-6-2: Run the Initial SYSAUDIT Report

SYSAUDIT is an SQL script used to identify “orphaned” PeopleSoft objects. For example, SYSAUDIT can identify a module of PeopleCode that exists but does not relate to any other objects in the system. SYSAUDIT also identifies other inconsistencies within your database.

In this step, SYSAUDIT is run using SQL from your current (old) release of PeopleSoft against the Copy of Production to ensure that you are starting with a clean database.

Note. If you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.40 and you do not have the Services Procurement bolt on, ignore the errors relating to missing Services Procurement record definitions, field definitions or components contained in the menu Item table. You may proceed with the upgrade if you encounter these messages.

You will review the output from the report in a later step.

See Review the Initial Audits.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: System and Server Administration for your current release.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-6-3: Create the INITALTAUD Project

This section discusses:

- Understanding Creating the INITALTAUD Project
- Running the Step Create the INITALTAUD Project Automatically
- Creating the INITALTAUD Project

Understanding Creating the INITALTAUD Project

In this step, you create the INITALTAUD project and use it to run your initial Alter Audit. Creating this new project now ensures that all of the records with type *Table* in your system are audited. This project also includes any custom records that you created in your system.

If your old PeopleSoft PeopleTools release is 8.44 or later, you can run this step automatically in Change Assistant. To run this step automatically, proceed to “Running the Step Create the INITALTAUD Project Automatically.” If your old PeopleSoft PeopleTools release is earlier than 8.44, proceed to “Creating the INITALTAUD Project.”

Running the Step Create the INITALTAUD Project Automatically

To run the step Create the INITALTAUD Project automatically:

1. In Change Assistant, open your upgrade job.
2. In the task Running Initial Audit Reports, right-click the step Create the INITALTAUD Project, and then select Step Properties.
3. In the Step Properties dialog box, change the value in the Type field from *ManualStop* to *CreateProject*.
4. Click OK.

5. Select Edit, Run.

Creating the INITIALAUD Project

To create the INITIALAUD project:

1. Launch PeopleSoft PeopleTools and sign in to the Target database.
2. From Application Designer, select File, New...
3. Select Project, and then click OK.
4. Select Insert, Definitions into Project...
5. Select *Records* from the Object Type drop-down list box.
6. Select *Table* from the Type drop-down list box.
7. Click Insert, and then click Select All.
8. Click Insert, and then click Close.
9. Select File, Save All.
10. Enter the project name *INITALTAUD*.

Warning! You must name the project *INITALTAUD* or the next step will fail.

11. Click OK.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-6-4: Run the Initial Alter Audit

To verify that the PeopleSoft PeopleTools definitions are synchronized with the underlying SQL data tables in your database, run the PeopleSoft PeopleTools alter record process on all records in your system. This process, called an Alter Audit, compares the data structures of your database tables with the PeopleSoft PeopleTools definitions to identify inconsistencies. The Alter Audit then creates SQL scripts with the data definition language (DDL) changes that are required to synchronize your database with the PeopleSoft PeopleTools definitions.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-6-5: Review the Initial Audits

In this step, you review the audits that you performed earlier in this task. Review the audits before proceeding with the upgrade.

Review the output from the SYSAUDIT and DDDAUDIT reports and correct any discrepancies. When application tables are deleted from the Application Designer, they are not automatically deleted from the system tables. Oracle takes this precaution in case you have customized information that you want to preserve. When you review your DDDAUDIT listing, these tables are listed as a discrepancy between the PeopleSoft application and the database.

Now you must decide whether to drop these tables or retain them. In most cases, you will want to drop the tables, using your SQL tool to drop the tables from the system catalogs. If you have customized information or processes that access these tables, you may want to retain them in the system tables even though they will no longer be accessed or updated by the PeopleSoft system. Drop any unnecessary deleted tables now so that your future DDDAUDIT reports will be as clean as possible.

The Alter Audit produces the scripts INITIALTAUD_ALTTLBL.SQL, INITIALTAUD_CRTIDX.SQL, and INITIALTAUD_CRTTRG.SQL. These scripts contain SQL that corrects any discrepancies between your PeopleSoft PeopleTools record definitions and the database system catalog table definitions. Review the Alter Audit output and correct any discrepancies.

Note. Triggers are always dropped and re-created during the alter process and will always show up in the generated Alter Audit script. You can ignore the generated script for triggers.

Note. For Microsoft SQL Server and DB2 UNIX/NT platforms, if your database has tables containing the MSSCONCATCOL or DBXCONCATCOL column, you will see SQL alter the tables and re-create their associated indexes, even though the underlying tables and indexes may not have changed.

Note. You will rerun the DDDAUDIT and SYSAUDIT SQR scripts later in the upgrade. If you want to preserve the log files generated by Change Assistant from this run, you will need to rename the files manually after completing this task.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: System and Server Administration for your current release.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-7: Performing General Options Setup

During this step, you perform a general options setup for all products.

To perform general options setup:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Define Upgrade Defaults.

The Define Upg Options page appears:

Define Upgrade Options page

2. Enter the release number of your target database in the Upgrade Appl Release field.

Some of the data conversions only run for specific target releases.

3. If document sequencing is enabled for the General Ledger business unit for the given Receivables business unit, populate the Default InterUnit Doc Type field.

Default InterUnit Doc Type is a new field added to the Receivables business unit. This field is required on the Receivables Definition page and is used as the default document type to be used on InterUnit accounting fields. Enter the desired automatic document type to be populated onto InterUnit accounting entries in the Default Upgrade Options page.

4. Enter a value in the Rate Type field.

Enter the type of exchange rate that you use within your Services Procurement system. Rate Type is used to derive currency conversion rates in Service Procurement for Work Orders, Time, Expenses, Progress Logs, and Invoicing.

5. Enter a value in the Days Unit of Measure field.

This is a new field used in Services Procurement to calculate the work order duration based on the unit of measure you enter here. For example, you may decide to calculate the duration based on hours (MHR), days (MDY), weeks (MWK), months (MMO) and so forth. This value is used to calculate duration during the upgrade, and the Services Procurement Installation table will be updated with this value as well.

6. Enter a value in the Currency Code field.

The Currency Code value will be used to populate all pricing breaks.

7. Enter a value in the Default Country For Expenses field.

Country is required in the new PeopleSoft release. During the upgrade, the value specified in the Default Country for Expenses field is used to populate the Country field in the Expenses Location Table. Specify the country in which most expenses are incurred. After the data conversion, you will need to go through your Expense Locations and verify that the country value is correct.

See Defaulting Country for Expense Location.

8. Indicate which Planning sourcing templates and demand priorities you want upgraded.

Sourcing templates and demand priorities have independent definitions in Enterprise and Production Planning. You must indicate which setup definitions you would like to use in Supply Planning. If the system was able to determine if you have either Enterprise Planning or Production Planning installed, or if you have neither, these radio buttons will be grayed out with the appropriate option selected. Otherwise, you must choose one.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 1-8: Defining Cost Management Options

In this task you define upgrade options used by Inventory. The cost element field is now a required field when adding items to an Inventory business unit. The material cost element provided here is used to populate that cost element field for all items without a cost element and belonging to the corresponding setID.

To perform Cost Management options setup:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Define Cost Management Options.
2. For every setID defined in your system, enter a default material cost element.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	Inventory	All	All

Task 1-9: Defining Services Procurement Options

To define PeopleSoft Services Procurement upgrade options:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Define sPro Options.

The following page appears:

Home | Worklist | MultiChannel Console | Add to Favorites | Sign out

New Window | Customize Page | http

sPro Upgrade Options

SetID: 🔍

Administrator Role: 🔍

Approver Role: 🔍

Save

sPro Upg Options page

- Enter the default setID for all of your competencies.
Competencies can be grouped by setID in the new release.
- Enter the role for your administrator and approver users in the corresponding fields.
The roles will be used to update the user information during the upgrade process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 1-10: Reviewing Process Scheduler Processes

You should verify that all processes submitted to the process scheduler server have been completed successfully or are cancelled before proceeding with the upgrade.

To view processes from the Process Monitor:

1. Select PeopleTools, Process Scheduler, Process Monitor.
2. Enter an appropriate time limit (such as the last hour, last day, or longer limit) and click Refresh.
3. Review any processes that did not end with a Run Status of *Success* or *Cancelled*.

Any outstanding processes that you want to complete before proceeding with the upgrade should be completed at this time.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-11: Reviewing Country Data

The PeopleSoft system provides the 239 ISO 3166 compatible country codes as part of system data. However, the PeopleSoft system also includes an interface through which you can customize the country codes (either add new ones or modify existing ones). Because the COUNTRY_TBL record is considered system data, it will be repopulated with the current countries as Oracle has defined them. As a result, any additional countries that you may have added and any other customizations that you may have made to this table will be deleted.

You can skip this task if you have never customized country codes. The output of this query will be used to help with the cleanup that you will complete after data conversion.

Note. Move To Production: You can skip this task if you have not customized country codes since your initial upgrade pass.

To run the Country Table query:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Viewer.
2. Run the following query report:

UPG_ECY01

Note. Keep the output of this report; you will need it later in the upgrade process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-12: Reviewing ChartField Configuration

In this task, you must carefully review your ChartField configuration actions in preparation for running the configuration process in chapter 4.

Note. If you have *not* added any new ChartFields, you can skip this task. If you have added new ChartFields, all the new objects, tables, views, pages, and so on that you created when you initially ran the ChartField Configuration process need to be identified and copied over when you review your customizations in chapter 3.

To review the ChartField Configuration actions:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Design ChartFields, Reports, Configuration Steps.
2. Enter the Configuration ID *INSTALL_PRODUCT* to generate the Configuration Steps Report.

Note. You should save the Configuration Steps Report so that you can refer to it when you review your customizations.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 1-13: Preparing Commitment Control

Duplicate commitment control data exists when there are multiple source header entries in the *KK_SOURCE_HDR* table for a document header (for example, Requisition, PO, Voucher, or Journal). Duplication can occur when budget checking is run concurrently for the same source transaction. Such errors are often difficult to diagnose and resolve and can result in data integrity problems.

The Commitment Control Cleanup Utility provides a convenient way to identify duplicate transactions in the commitment control tables and take corrective action. The cleanup utility is not posted as a delivered fix so you must contact the Global Support Center (GSC) to request the utility.

To request the cleanup utility, use the following table to find the appropriate resolution for your PeopleSoft FSCM release:

Release	Resolution
8.4 SP2	721540
8.8 SP1	705732
8.9	683317

The Commitment Control Cleanup Utility identifies and corrects individual source transactions that are duplicated in the Commitment Control (KK) tables. The utility performs the following steps to clean up the duplicate transactions:

1. Identifies duplicate transactions (Identify Process).
2. Reviews and selects duplicate transactions for deletion (Selection).
3. Deletes and unposts duplicate transactions (Delete Process).

The upgrade data conversion does not require all the commitment control duplicate data to be cleaned up. However, Oracle strongly recommends that you clean up the duplicates.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-14: Preparing Promotions

This section discusses:

- Running Promotions PreUpgrade Reports
- Reviewing Promotions PreUpgrade Reports
- Running the PreUpgrade Promotions Query
- Reviewing the PreUpgrade Promotions Query
- Updating Promotional Claims

Task 1-14-1: Running Promotions PreUpgrade Reports

In this task, you run reports that identify different data conditions that may exist within your PeopleSoft Promotions Management data. You will use these results and the suggested actions to adjust your data for the conversion. An explanation of the reports and directions for the output information follow these instructions.

To run the pre-upgrade reports:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Create Upgrade Reports.
2. Run the following reports:

Checkbook Column Use Report, PUEPJ153.SQR

Identify Orphan Promotions Rec, PUEPJ154.SQR
 Customer Specific Promotion Contact, PUEPP155.SQR

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Promotions Management	All	All

Task 1-14-2: Reviewing Promotions PreUpgrade Reports

This section discusses:

- Reviewing Report PUEPJ153
- Reviewing Report PUEPJ154
- Reviewing Report PUEPP155

Reviewing Report PUEPJ153

The “Actual Unit Handling” and “Actual Unit Value” columns have been removed from the new release. This report will identify all of the references to these columns on the checkbook definition and formula tables. The data conversion will automatically remove these references, which could potentially invalidate your checkbook and formula definitions. The assumption is that Unit Handling and Unit Value amounts would be paid to a customer or an alternate pay-to customer and the amounts would be included in another one of the “actual” columns such as “Actual Credit Amount” or “Actual Payment Amount.” You may choose to add another “actual” column to your checkbook or formula definition. Using the output from this report, you will update your checkbook and formula definitions after the data conversion.

Note. Keep the output of this report; you will need it later in the upgrade process.

Reviewing Report PUEPJ154

This report identifies potentially orphaned records in the Sales Calendar record structure. If any records appear in this report, you need to determine whether or not the record is valid, and then address changes that need to be made to the setIDs assigned to these records. In each case, the identified record has been moved from one record group to a new record group for the current release. This change may have some impact when prompting for values for the affected records. For example, if the record originally existed in a record group that was attached to one setID in your tableset sharing, and the record is being moved to a new record group that is attached to a different setID, then the setID value may need to be updated in the record so prompting returns the expected values.

Reviewing Report PUEPP155

The contact ID field has been designated as a required field in the new release. This report will identify all of the references to customer-specific promotions that do not have a contact ID associated with them. You will update the contact ID information for each customer-specific promotion listed in the report.

To update customer-specific promotions contact ID information:

1. Select Promotions, Manage Promotions, Create Customer-Specific Promo.
2. Select Find an Existing Value.

3. From the report results, enter the setID and Promotion Code.
4. On the Promotion Details page, add a contact ID for the customer listed in the report.
A default contact ID may be displayed when the page appears.
5. Click Save.

Note. Customer-specific promotions must have a promotion status of *Planned* in order for changes to be made.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Promotions Management	All	All

Task 1-14-3: Running the PreUpgrade Promotions Query

In this step, you run the Promotions Management pre-upgrade query.

To run the pre-upgrade query:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Viewer.
2. Run the following query:

```
Payment Authorization Updates, UPG_TDK156
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Promotions Management	All	All

Task 1-14-4: Reviewing the PreUpgrade Promotions Query

The merchandising type (or adjustment type, if maintaining a National Allowance) is a required field when creating payment authorizations in the new PeopleSoft release. During the upgrade process, the merchandising type field is automatically populated for payment authorizations and payment history entries based on a set of criteria. This query highlights which payment authorizations will be populated during data conversion. After data conversion is complete, use these results to review the changes and, if necessary, make adjustments to the entries as needed.

Note. Keep the output of this report; you will need it later in the upgrade process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Promotions Management	All	All

Task 1-14-5: Updating Promotional Claims

In this task, you will update all claims created in Promotions Management with an appropriate merchandising type. On the Update Promotional Claims page, the merchandising type field will be populated with the default merchandising type for each claim number.

Default merchandising types are populated using the following logic:

- For claims associated with a National Allowance, the merchandising type is populated with the adjustment type as defined in the Discounts area of the Promotions, Manage Promotions, Create National Allowance Products tab. If a bill back adjustment type exists for the National Allowance, the system populates the merchandising type with *AC* (bill back). If a bill back adjustment type does not exist for the National Allowance, the system populates the merchandising type with *OI* (off-invoice).
- For claims associated with a customer-specific promotion, the merchandising type is populated with the merchandising type defined on the Promotions, Manage Promotions, Create Customer-Specific Promo, Merchandising Activities tab. If a lump-sum merchandising activity exists for the customer promotion, the system populates the merchandising type with the value associated with the first lump sum merchandising activity for the promotion. Note that all consumption merchandising activities have an adjustment type of *LS* (lump sum). If a lump sum merchandising activity does not exist for the customer promotion and a bill back merchandising activity does exist, the system populates the merchandising type with the value associated with the first bill back merchandising activity for the promotion. If neither a lump sum nor a bill back merchandising activity exists for the customer promotion, the system populates the merchandising type with the value associated with the first off-invoice merchandising activity for the promotion.

To update promotional claims:

- Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Update Promotional Claims.
The Update Promotional Claims page appears. The merchandising type field is populated with a default merchandising type for each claim number, as explained above.
- Verify each claim to ensure that the proper merchandising type is assigned. If necessary, use the prompt on the merchandising type to select a different value for the related customer-specific promotion or National Allowance.
- Click Save.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Promotions Management	All	All

Task 1-15: Gathering Customer Data

This section discusses:

- Running Customer PreUpgrade Report
- Reviewing the Customer PreUpgrade Report

Note. If you have any products using Customer and/or Contact, you need to perform this task.

Task 1-15-1: Running Customer PreUpgrade Report

In this task, you run a report to gather information about the setup information for your current customers. This report shows you data conditions that you should address before the upgrade begins. An explanation of the report and directions for the output information follows these instructions.

To run the pre-upgrade report:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Create Upgrade Reports.
2. Run the following reports:

Customer Current Address Check, PUCGK103.SQR

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-15-2: Reviewing the Customer PreUpgrade Report

There has been a change in the processing of customer addresses. In previous PeopleSoft releases, the address with the most current, active effective date would be selected. In the new PeopleSoft release, the address with the most current effective date is selected, regardless of whether it is active or not. This may result in the address appearing incorrectly. The customer may appear to not have a current address. Follow the instructions in the report to update the address information for every customer.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-16: Identifying Pricing ID Name Collisions

In this task, you run a report to identify any name collisions for Exclusive Pricing IDs.

To run the Exclusive Pricing ID Name Collision Report:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Create Upgrade Reports.
2. Run the following report:

Exclusive Pricing ID Collision, PUEPK100.SQR

3. Review report PUEPK100.SQR.

This report is informational only. No action is required based on the results from this report. In the new release, both the Price Rule and Exclusive Pricing of previous releases have been merged into a single entity called an arbitration plan. It is possible that the Price Rule ID and Exclusive Pricing ID share the same name. This report will identify such name collisions. During data conversion, Exclusive Pricing IDs identified in this report will be renamed automatically. The converted arbitration plan for exclusive pricing will have a new name, the original name with a suffix added, and the affected transaction tables will be updated. After the data conversion is complete, you can review the post-upgrade report UVEPY100, Exclusive Pricing IDs Renamed, to identify the Exclusive Pricing IDs that were renamed and the arbitration plan those pricing IDs were merged to.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Order Management	All	All

Task 1-17: Completing Billing Tasks

This section discusses:

- Running Billing PreUpgrade Reports
- Reviewing the Billing PreUpgrade Reports

Task 1-17-1: Running Billing PreUpgrade Reports

These reports show you data conditions that you should address before the upgrade begins. An explanation of the reports and directions for the output information follow these instructions.

To run the pre-upgrade reports:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Create Upgrade Reports.
2. Run the following reports:

Bills in Process, PUCGY002.SQR

Billing Interface Process, PUCGY003.SQR

VAT Bill Lines Report, PUCGK005.SQR

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Billing	All	All

Task 1-17-2: Reviewing the Billing PreUpgrade Reports

This section discusses:

- Reviewing Report PUCGY002
- Reviewing Report PUCGY003
- Reviewing Report PUCGK005

Reviewing Report PUCGY002

This report lists bills in process. If a process aborts in the middle of processing, bills may be stuck in the *in process* state until the process is restarted. You must restart these processes and allow them to complete before proceeding with the upgrade.

To restart aborted bill processes:

1. Select PeopleTools, Process Scheduler, Process Monitor.
2. Enter the process instance from the report in the Instance field.
3. Click the Refresh button.
4. Click the Details link.
5. Select Restart Request.
6. Click OK.

Note. You may want to limit the restart ability to users with expertise to determine that an interface process has in fact terminated abnormally. Do not run the restart process unless you are absolutely sure that the original interface process has terminated.

Reviewing Report PUCGY003

This report displays Billing Interface processes that are considered *in process* and should be restarted. You must restart these processes and allow them to complete before proceeding with the upgrade.

To restart pending bill processes:

1. Select Billing, Interface Transactions, Process Billing Interface.
2. Enter values in the From Interface ID and the To Interface ID fields, based on the report results.
3. Click Run.
4. Select Billing Interface.
5. Click OK to submit the process.
6. Run the Interface & VAT Defaulting job.

Reviewing Report PUCGK005

This report shows bill lines that contain a VAT product group. The VAT product group might be the default VAT product group for the product on the line, or it may have been manually entered in order to retrieve VAT defaults from that particular group. The VAT product group will be removed from bill lines during the upgrade because the determination of VAT defaults has changed in the new release. You will use the report results to assist you in ensuring these lines will retrieve the appropriate VAT default information after data conversion has completed. For additional information on the new retrieval mechanism for VAT defaults, see the reference below.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise Global Options and Reports 9.0 PeopleBook*

Note. Keep the output of this report; you will use it later in the upgrade.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Billing	All	All

Task 1-18: Setting Up Receivables

This section discusses:

- Posting Receivables Transactions
- Processing Credit Card Payments
- Generating Customer Conversation Letters
- Establishing Customer Conversation Currency
- Reviewing Project Data in Receivables
- Reviewing Rate Type Defaults
- Reviewing ENTRY_USE_TBL Data
- Reviewing Group Type Field Data

Task 1-18-1: Posting Receivables Transactions

Before beginning the data conversion for PeopleSoft Receivables, all electronic payments (Lockbox, EDI) must be successfully processed by the AR Payment Interface. You must delete any unmatched Item or Customer remittance by selecting Accounts Receivable, Payments, Electronic Payments, Delete Remittance.

In this step, you need to successfully post all documents (worksheets, drafts, direct debits, payments, maintenance, transfers, finance charge groups, unpost groups, online pending items groups, direct journals, and so on) by running AR Receivable Update, where applicable.

To post receivables transactions:

1. Run the Receivable Update (ARUPDATE) by selecting Accounts Receivable, Update Receivables, Request Receivables Update.

2. Run Entry Event by selecting Accounts Receivable, Update Receivables, Request Entry Event Processor.
3. Run AR Revenue Estimate by selecting Accounts Receivable, Maintenance, Revenue Estimates, Create Transactions.
4. Run the Commitment Control module by selecting Accounts Receivable, Maintenance, Revenue Estimates, Budget Check Transactions.
5. Run the Journal Generator by selecting General Ledger, Journals, Subsystem Journals, Generate Journals.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Receivables	All	All

Task 1-18-2: Processing Credit Card Payments

In the new PeopleSoft FSCM release, credit card processing in PeopleSoft Receivables carries the deposit ID and payment sequence number on the history record. Therefore, all credit card payments that originate in PeopleSoft Receivables must be processed in PeopleSoft Receivables. Credit card transactions cannot be left in a denied state. All outstanding credit card payments must be resolved by either completing or deleting the payment, before the upgrade begins.

To process credit card payments:

1. Select Accounts Receivable, Payments, Apply Payments, Process Credit Card Payments.
2. Add a run control ID.
3. Add all business units that have items paid by credit card.
4. Ensure the Process Frequency is set to *Always Process* or *Process Once*.
5. Run the process AR_CRCARD.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Receivables	All	All

Task 1-18-3: Generating Customer Conversation Letters

All customer conversation letters that have not been created, must be generated before the upgrade.

Note. After the upgrade, customer conversation letters cannot be created from existing customer conversations.

See “Complete Database Changes,” Completing Receivables Changes.

To run customer follow-up letters:

1. Select Accounts Receivable, Customer Interactions, Customer Follow Up Letter.

2. Select the customer setID.
3. Select the customer ID.
4. Run PSJob FOLLOWUP.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	MTP	Receivables	All	All

Task 1-18-4: Establishing Customer Conversation Currency

In the new PeopleSoft FSCM release, each customer conversation allows for a currency code to be established. Because customers are not required to have a default currency code, you can set up a default currency code for all customers that have conversations.

To set the default currency code:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Define Conversation Currency.
The AR Customer Conversations page appears.
2. Select the currency code from the list of currencies.
3. Click Save.
4. Select the Upgrade Existing Currency Code on Existing Conversations check box to set up a default currency for all customer conversations.

Note. If you do not want to set up a default currency for existing customer conversations, do *not* select this box, and skip the rest of this task.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	Receivables	All	All

Task 1-18-5: Reviewing Project Data in Receivables

In the new PeopleSoft FSCM release, the following fields will be moved from PENDING_ITEM to PENDING_DST and from the ITEM table to the ITEM_DST record:

- BUSINESS_UNIT_PC
- PROJECT_ID
- ACTIVITY_ID

Any values in these fields on the ITEM table will not be carried forward into the new PeopleSoft FSCM release. However, if these values came from PeopleSoft Billing, you will still be able to view them using the PeopleSoft Billing inquiry. The query provided will list item lines from the ITEM table that contain values for these fields. After the upgrade, the item lines listed in the query will not have the field values populated.

To run the ITEM query:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager.
2. Run the following query:

UPG_ARP10

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Receivables	All	All

Task 1-18-6: Reviewing Rate Type Defaults

A new rate type defaulting hierarchy has been implemented in PeopleSoft Receivables in the new PeopleSoft FSCM release. The upgrade will not attempt to change existing rate types used in the creation of secondary ledger accounting entries. The new hierarchy will retrieve the rate type from the ledger group first. If that rate type does not exist, the rate type on the transaction will be used. If there is no rate type on the transaction, the default rate type on the ledger group will be used.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	Receivables	All	All

Task 1-18-7: Reviewing ENTRY_USE_TBL Data

In this step, you run the query report UPG_ARY01 for AR to gather information about non-zero automatically generated numbers in ENTRY_USE_TBL. Since the data in ENTRY_USE_TBL is considered to be system data, ENTRY_USE_TBL will be repopulated. As a result, all non-zero automatically generated numbers will be replaced with zero.

You should use the output of the query UPG_ARY01 to repopulate the non-zero automatically generated numbers (ENTRY_USE_TBL.NEXT_AUTO_NUMBER) after the data conversion. If the query returns zero rows, then you can skip this task.

To run the query report UPG_ARY01:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager.
2. Run the following query:

UPG_ARY01

Note. Keep the output of this report; you will need it later in the upgrade process

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	Receivables	All	All

Task 1-18-8: Reviewing Group Type Field Data

In the new PeopleSoft FSCM release, group type values *C* and *R* are reserved types. If the user-defined group types *C* or *R* exist, they will be replaced with the new value specified in the UPG_GROUP_TYPE_TBL page. After the upgrade, you can no longer use reserved group types *C* and *R* as user-defined group types.

To set the value for the group type:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Group Type Upgrade.

The Group Type Upgrade page appears:

Group Type Upgrade

*SetID	Current Group Type	New Group Type
1 SHARE	C	K
2 SHARE	R	L

Save Notify

Group Type Upgrade page

2. Enter a setID.
3. Select *C* from the Current Group Type drop-down list.
4. In the New Group Type field, enter the new user-defined group type value that you want to replace the current group type *C*.
5. Repeat steps 2 through 4 to replace the current group type *R* with a new group type value.
6. Click Save.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	Receivables	All	All

Task 1-19: Verifying Grant Management Processes

In this task, you verify the completion of grant management processes.

Before starting the upgrade, make sure that all of Facilities & Administration (FA) process instances have run successfully by verifying that no records are in the GM_PRJ_ERR table.

To verify the completion of grant management processes:

1. Select Grants, Awards, Facilities Admin Error Detail.
2. Run the Journal Generator process to generate journal entries for all accounting entries from the CA_ACCTG_LN_PC that have not been distributed.
3. Select General Ledger, Journals, Subsystem Journals, Generate Journals.
4. Use the GMDEFN Accounting Definition.
5. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager.
6. Run the following query:

```
UPG_GF02
```

7. Verify that no rows are returned.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Grant Management	All	All

Task 1-20: Preparing Grants Defaults

In the new PeopleSoft FSCM release, PeopleSoft Grants introduces new functionality that identifies, at the business unit level, the setup level of various components of the Pre Award. By setting these defaults prior to running the upgrade, the following fields are populated with the defaults:

- GM_BU_AWD_SETUP.GM_CERT_LVL
- GM_BU_AWD_SETUP.GM_COMP_LVL
- GM_BU_AWD_SETUP.GM_DEPT_CR_LVL
- GM_BU_AWD_SETUP.GM_PROF_CR_LVL

- GM_BU_AWD_SETUP.GM_RSRC_LVL
- GM_BU_AWD_SETUP.GM_VNDR_LVL

For proposals that are not generated, the values from the setup page will be used to populate the following fields on the GM_PROPOSAL record:

- GM_PROPOSAL.GM_CERT_LVL
- GM_PROPOSAL.GM_COMP_LVL
- GM_PROPOSAL.GM_DEPT_CR_LVL
- GM_PROPOSAL.GM_PROF_CR_LVL
- GM_PROPOSAL.GM_RSRC_LVL
- GM_PROPOSAL.GM_VNDR_LVL

To set up the PeopleSoft Grants defaults:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Define Grants Upgrade Defaults.
2. On the Search page, select the business unit and enter the page.
3. Click Search.
4. Select the PeopleSoft Grants defaults.
5. Click Save.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	Grants Management	All	All

Task 1-21: Preparing Projects Defaults

Projects budgeting tables have been modified in the new PeopleSoft release. In the previous PeopleSoft release, a calendar definition was stored in Projects for each budget defined within Projects. Calendar definitions are moving towards a central location using the common Budget Period Calendars. Follow the procedure below to assign a calendar ID to old budget definitions and to enter the proper Calendar ID for each existing budget plan. Note that only active plans will be displayed as finalized in the new PeopleSoft release. If you have inactive plans that have been finalized, they will not display a finalized amount in the new release. The budget rows will still exist in PROJ_RESOURCE but the budget plan page will not display a finalized amount.

Note. Skip this step if you do *not* use Projects budgeting.

To update projects defaults:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Calendars/Schedules, Budget Period Calendar.
2. Review all existing Projects budgets to see which calendar ID best fits that budget plan.
3. Select either an existing calendar ID or create a new calendar for each budget definition.

4. Ensure that the calendar selected or created for each budget has the proper number of periods defined to cover the length of the budget.
5. Assign a calendar ID to any old budget definitions on this page.
6. Review any existing Projects budgets to see which calendar ID best fits that budget plan.
7. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Define Projects Upgrade.
8. Enter the proper calendar ID for each existing budget plan.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Projects Costing	All	All

Task 1-22: Preparing Deduction Management

This section discusses:

- Understanding Deduction Management
- Extracting Deductions
- Posting Deduction Transactions
- Setting Up Resolutions Entry Types

Understanding Deduction Management

Complete this task only if you license Deduction Management. Prior to beginning the data conversion for Deduction Management, all documents must be successfully posted by AR Receivable Update. This step should have already been performed in the task, “Posting Receivables Transactions”.

Task 1-22-1: Extracting Deductions

All deductions must be successfully extracted from Accounts Receivable to Deduction Management.

To extract deductions:

1. Select Accounts Receivable, Deductions, Update Items, Extract Items from AR.
2. Run the Extract Deduction process.
3. Run the Receivable Update process by selecting Accounts Receivable, Update Receivables, Request Receivables Update.
4. This process must be performed to post the closing transactions created by the Extract Deductions process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Deduction Management	All	All

Task 1-22-2: Posting Deduction Transactions

All accounting distributions and workflow items must be successfully posted in Deduction Management.

To post deduction transactions:

1. Select General Ledger, Journals, Subsystem Journals, Generate Journals.
Run the Journal Generator.
2. Generate all Journals for Deduction Management and ensure that all distributions have been posted.
3. Select Accounts Receivable, Deductions, Create Assignments, Prepare Notifications.
Run the Extract DM Workflow Items process.
4. Select the Create Workflow Email Routing job on the Process Scheduler Request page so that email notification is performed as well. When the item actions are moved to AR during the conversion, the system assumes owners have been notified of all existing actions.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Deduction Management	All	All

Task 1-22-3: Setting Up Resolutions Entry Types

Complete this step to ensure that all Resolution Entry Types are validated. The entry types and entry reasons will be migrated from Deduction Management (DM) to Accounts Receivable (AR).

To set up Resolution Entry Types:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Deductions, Resolution Entry Types.
Set up the Resolution Entry types.
2. Make sure that the Resolutions Entry Types exist for all nine DM system functions. If any are missing, add them now.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Deduction Management	All	All

Task 1-23: Setting Up Projects

This section discusses:

- Processing Accounts Payable Voucher
- Processing Third Party Transactions

Task 1-23-1: Processing Accounts Payable Voucher

Due to changes to PeopleSoft Accounts Payable Voucher Accounting Line Table in the new PeopleSoft FSCM release, you need to process all vouchers that are ready to be distributed to Projects before you begin the upgrade process if you utilize the Accounts Payable to Projects Integration application engine (PC_AP_TO_PC).

To process accounts payable vouchers:

1. Select Projects, Collect Costs, Payables.
2. Run the AP to PC Interface process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Project Costing Payables	All	All

Task 1-23-2: Processing Third Party Transactions

This section discusses:

- Understanding Third-Party Transactions
- Processing Third-Party Transactions
- Processing Third-Party Projects and Activities

Understanding Third-Party Transactions

Due to changes to the Third-Party Staging Tables in the new PeopleSoft FSCM release, if you use the Third-Party Transaction Loader application engine (PC_INTFEDIT) or the Third-Party Project-Activity Loader application engine (PC_INTF_GEN), you need to process all third-party transactions, projects, and activities that are ready to be loaded before you begin the upgrade process.

Processing Third-Party Transactions

To process third-party transactions:

1. Select Projects, Third Party Integration, Load Resource Transactions.
2. Create a new run control.
3. Accept all default values on the run control page.
4. Run the Third-Party Transaction Loader process.

Processing Third-Party Projects and Activities

To load third-party projects and activities:

1. Select Projects, Third Party Integration, Load Projects and Activities.
2. Create a new run control.
3. Accept all default values on the run control page.
4. Run the Third-Party Projects and Activities Loader process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Project Costing	All	All

Task 1-24: Setting Up Projects Integration

This section discusses:

- Understanding Projects Integration
- Running Pending Assets into AM Integration
- Finalizing Pending Funding Transactions

Understanding Projects Integration

In this task, you complete all pending transactions in Asset Management Integration and finalize all Funding Transactions. Make sure that all pending transactions are processed before you continue with the upgrade.

Task 1-24-1: Running Pending Assets into AM Integration

Due to enhancements to the PeopleSoft Projects to PeopleSoft Asset Management (AM) integration processes, pending asset transactions cannot be upgraded. An example of pending asset transactions would be assets that have been summarized but have not yet been sent to PeopleSoft Asset Management.

Furthermore, there cannot be any transactions that are summarized by profile that have been assigned an asset ID using the Assign Resources to Assets functionality, but that have not yet been run through the Summarize by Asset process. You need to process these pending Summarized by Profile transactions, processing Summarize by Asset rows to completion as well.

Follow the procedure below to ensure that there are no asset transactions pending at this point in the upgrade.

To run pending assets into AM Integration:

1. Select Projects, Assets, Send to Asset Management to run all pending assets into Asset Management.

Note. You must run this process twice; once using the Type *Profile*, and a second time using the Type *Asset*.

2. Select Asset Management, Send/Receive Information, Load Transactions, Load Transactions into AM to run the Asset Management Transaction Loader.
3. Enter a request ID.
4. Set the process frequency to *Once*.
5. Click Search to display the list of pending transactions.
6. Set the Interface ID field to the first interface ID from the search list.
7. Set the To Interface ID field to the last interface ID from the search list.
8. Run the Transaction Loader process.
9. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager and run the following query to display any summarized assets that have not been distributed to PeopleSoft Asset Management:

UPG_PCY05

This query should return zero rows.

Note. The upgrade will not delete any offset rows with an analysis type of *CLS* or *PCL* from the database. These obsolete rows will remain, even though they will no longer be referenced by the system.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Project Costing Asset Management	All	All

Task 1-24-2: Finalizing Pending Funding Transactions

In the new PeopleSoft release, the funding functionality will reside within Projects Budgeting. The existing transactions will be copied into the Budgeting tables, but they will be used for historical purposes only. Therefore, you need to finalize all existing Funding transactions.

To finalize pending funding transactions:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager and run the following query to display all Projects with Funding transactions that are not finalized:

UPG_PCY02

2. Select Projects, Projects, Funding.
3. Complete the process for finalizing all transactions.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Project Costing	All	All

Task 1-25: Preparing Asset Management

This section discusses:

- Running Asset Management Interface Programs

Task 1-25-1: Running Asset Management Interface Programs

All pending interface transactions need to be loaded into PeopleSoft Asset Management before upgrading. You must run the following two AM interface programs:

- Retrieve Info from AP/PO
- Load Transactions into AM

To run the AM interface programs:

- Select Asset Management, Send/Receive Information, Retrieve Info from AP/PO.
- Add a new run control ID.

The Payables/Purchasing Interface page appears:

Payables/Purchasing Interface page

- Select Business Unit.
- Click the Run button to run the AMPS1000 program.
- Select Asset Management, Send/Receive Information, Load Transactions, Load Transactions into AM.
- Add a new Run Control ID.

The Run Transaction Loader page appears:

Run Transaction Loader page

7. Enter a request ID.
8. Set the process frequency to *Once*.
9. Set the Interface ID field to the first interface ID from the search list.
10. Set the To Interface ID field to the last interface ID from the search list.
11. Click the Run button to run the AMIF1000 program.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Asset Management	All	All

Task 1-26: Preparing Expenses

In the new PeopleSoft release, the default value for BUDGET_HDR_STATUS has changed from *N* to *V* and Post Liabilities will now only process transactions that have a BUDGET_HDR_STATUS value of *V*. The upgrade changes the value of BUDGET_HDR_STATUS in the Travel Authorization and Expense Report header tables from *N* to *V*.

If you use Commitment Control, the upgrade will affect the transactions in progress. Therefore, any transactions that require budget checking and have either not been budget checked or have not been budget checked successfully, need to be completed before continuing with the upgrade. All transactions will be set to *V* whether they have been budget checked or not. If you fail to complete all transactions at this time you will not be able to separate the outstanding transactions prior to the upgrade from the ones that were not eligible for budget checking, as they will all have the same status after the upgrade is complete.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Expenses	All	All

Task 1-27: Managing Expense Approvals

PeopleSoft Expenses uses an Approval and Workflow engine to manage expense transaction approvals. In preparation for the upgrade, you must ensure all expense transactions are either in Pending status (unsubmitted) or Paid status (for expense reports and cash advances) or final approved status (for travel authorizations and time reports). If you are using post-payment audit functionality, any outstanding transactions for post-pay review must be completed prior to the upgrade. Transactions that are in the approval process may not be recoverable for routing to approver queues after the upgrade. This applies to both pre- and post-payment approvals.

Once the upgrade is completed and the system is in production, transactions that are in Pending status may be submitted normally and transactions that are already approved may be staged for further processing, as required. If you use the post payment audit feature, the Post Payments process will generate worklist entries and notifications for the post-payment auditor. Pending Tools worklist entries that were inserted for the post-pay auditor prior to upgrade will not be removed by the upgrade process, so you must manually mark these entries as “worked.”

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Expenses	All	All

Task 1-28: Defaulting Country for Expense Location

Country code in Expenses Location is currently not a required field. In order for VAT defaulting and calculation to function properly, a default country must be defined. In the new PeopleSoft release, a country in the Expense Location definition is required.

During the upgrade, the Country field will be defaulted to the value set in the Define Upgrade Defaults page only if a country has not been defined in the Expense Location.

To assist in determining which Expense Locations will be altered by the upgrade, run the Expense Location Report as follows.

To run the Expense Location report:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Create Upgrade Reports.
2. Select Expense Location Report PUEPJ652.

This report provides you with the Expense Locations that originally did not have a country defined. After the upgrade review this report to determine if the defaults set for the Expense Locations are correct and if they are not, make the appropriate changes.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Expenses	All	All

Task 1-29: Mapping Contract Offerings

This section discusses:

- Understanding Contract Offerings
- Mapping Contract Offerings to OM Products
- Mapping Contract Offering Categories

Understanding Contract Offerings

In this task you map Contract offerings to Order Management (OM) products and map Contract offering categories to Order Management product groups.

Task 1-29-1: Mapping Contract Offerings to OM Products

Due to the Contracts/Order Management integration, the OM Product Table will be populated with Contract offerings. Contract offerings that are not in the product table will be upgraded under the same setID. However, if the offering already exists in the product table, the contract specific fields in the product tables will be updated. Since Offering ID is a 20-character field and Product ID is an 18-character field, you will have to resolve product ID values and make them no longer than 18 characters.

To verify Contract offerings to OM product mappings:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Define Contract Offerings.
2. No action is required for a row if Issue = None or Duplicate. The upgrade flag should already be set to Y and the Product ID field will be pre-populated, with the same value as the offering ID.
3. If Issue = Too Long for a row, the product ID field will be pre-populated but will be truncated to 18 characters. The upgrade flag will be set to N. Enter a valid value in the product ID field and set the upgrade flag to Y.
4. Save the page.

Note. You must save the page even if there is “No Action Required” on all the mappings . The mapping takes place *only* when the page is saved .

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Contracts	All	All

Task 1-29-2: Mapping Contract Offering Categories

The Contracts offering categories are replaced by OM product groups in the new PeopleSoft release. Contract offerings will be upgraded under the same setID, as Product Group Type of Contracts. Since Offering Category is a 20-character field and Product Group is a 10-character field, you will have to resolve product group values and make them less than or equal to 10 characters.

To verify Contract Offering Categories to OM Product Groups mapping:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Define Offering Categories.
2. No action is required for a row if Issue = None or Duplicate. The upgrade flag should already be set to Y and the Product Group field will be pre-populated with the same value as the offering category.
3. If Issue = Too Long for a row, the product group field will be pre-populated but will be truncated to 10 characters. The upgrade flag will be set to N. Enter a valid value in the product group field and set the upgrade flag to Y.
4. Save the page.

Note. You must save the page even if there is “No Action Required” on all the mappings . The mapping takes place *only* when the page is saved .

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Contracts	All	All

Task 1-30: Managing Limits

This section discusses:

- Understanding Limit Management
- Reviewing Existing Limits
- Managing Limits in the New Release

Understanding Limit Management

In this task, you review the limits that have been specified for contract lines and verify how the Limit Override option has been set. You will then use this information to plan how you need to update your limits in the new PeopleSoft FSCM release.

Note. In the new PeopleSoft FSCM release, the Limit Override option (INCLUDE_OLT) has been removed from the contract detail line (CA_DETAIL).

Task 1-30-1: Reviewing Existing Limits

In earlier PeopleSoft FSCM releases, the Limit Override option resided on the contract detail line. When this option was selected, the previously defined limit was deleted and all transactions associated with that contract line was then billed, regardless of whether they had previously been over the limit.

In the new PeopleSoft FSCM release this option has been removed, and instead you will be able to release individual transactions for billing and booking of revenue.

To review any existing contract lines for which a limit is specified:

1. Select Customer Contracts, Reports, Limit Amount.
2. Run the Limit Amount report to verify the limit amounts that have been defined for each contract line.
3. If the limit amount on the contract line is greater than zero, in which case the Limit Override option will be set to *N*, a row corresponding to the contract detail line will be inserted into the new Contracts Limit and Fee Detail table.

Note. To understand billing for transactions that are over the limit, read about the new Review and Manage Limits component and the manual release of specific excess transactions feature in *PeopleSoft Enterprise Contracts 9.0 PeopleBook*.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Contracts	All	All

Task 1-30-2: Managing Limits in the New Release

Create a plan for allowing transactions that are over the specified limit to be billed in the new release. You will use this plan after the conversion to perform the following:

- Determine whether there are any additional contract lines for which you want all applicable transactions to pass limit checking. If so, you should either set the limit amount sufficiently high to allow that, or set the limit amount to zero to indicate that there is no limit, since there will no longer be a way to simply release all excess transactions.
- For contract lines for which there are transactions that are over the limit, determine whether there are any specific transactions that should be released for billing.

Note. The option to write off over the limit (OLT) transactions is no longer needed. The OLT transactions will not have been billed to customers or recognized as revenue, so there is nothing to reverse as part of the write-off processing. This allows you to keep the OLT history. If the limit were increased, the excess transactions could then pass limit checking and be billed and recognized as revenue.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Contracts	All	All

Task 1-31: Processing Bill Plans

This section discusses:

- Understanding Processing Bill Plans
- Running Summarized Bill Plans Query
- Processing Ready Bill Plans
- Processing Pending Bill Plans
- Processing In Progress Bill Plans

Understanding Processing Bill Plans

For all bill plans with a status of *In Progress*, *Ready*, or *Pending* that have summarized bill plan lines and are attached to amount-based Contracts lines, you need to delete the summarized bill plan lines and replace them with individual bill plan lines.

Note. If you do not have any bill plans with summarized bill plan lines attached to amount-based Contract lines, you can skip this step.

You will need to complete the following tasks to process bill plans:

1. Run a query to find the bill plans from which you need to delete summarized Bill Plan lines.
2. Delete summarized bill plan lines from all bill plans with the status *Ready* that are attached to amount-based Contract lines and then create individual bill plan lines.
3. Delete summarized bill plan lines from all bill plans with the status *Pending* that are attached to amount-based Contract lines and then create individual bill plan lines.
4. For bill plans with the status *In Progress*, you can either fully process the bill plan to a status of *Complete*, or you can credit the bill in the Billing Application. For the bill plans that are credited, unassign the bill plans from the amount-based Contract lines. Then create new bill plans and assign them to the amount-based Contract lines.

Note. Keep track of all Contract lines that were assigned to summarized bill plan lines, because as part of the post-upgrade process, you will add summarization information to those attached bill plans.

Task 1-31-1: Running Summarized Bill Plans Query

To run the summarized bill plans query:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Viewer.

2. Search for the query UPG_CAP02 and click the Run to HTML link in the result set.
3. Save the results of the query. This is the list of bill plans from which you will need to delete summarized bill plan lines.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Contracts	All	All

Task 1-31-2: Processing Ready Bill Plans

For bill plans with the status *Ready* that have summarized bill plan lines and are attached to amount-based Contract lines, delete the summarized bill plan lines and replace them with individual bill plan lines.

To process bill plans with the status *Ready*:

1. Select Customer Contracts, Schedule and Process Billing, Define Bill Plan.
2. Enter values for Contract Number and Bill Plan ID from the results of the query UPG_CAP02 that you ran in the previous task .

Note. In the query results, bill plans that are *ready* have the billing status *RDY*.

3. Set the Billing Status to *Pending*.
4. Select the Billing Plan Lines tab.
5. Click the Delete Lines button.
6. Select all contract lines located in the Contract Lines Not Associated with Billing Plan Lines grid.
7. In the Billing Plan Line Creation Opt region, select the Create individual lines option.
8. Click the Create Lines button.
9. Click Save.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Contracts	All	All

Task 1-31-3: Processing Pending Bill Plans

For bill plans with the status *Pending* that have summarized bill plan lines and are attached to amount-based Contract lines, delete the summarized bill plan lines and replace them with individual bill plan lines.

To process bill plans with the status *Pending*:

1. Select Customer Contracts, Schedule and Process Billing, Define Bill Plan.
2. Enter values for the Contract Number and Bill Plan ID from the results of query UPG_CAP02.

Note. In the query results, bill plans that are *pending* have the billing status *PND*.

3. Select the Billing Plan Lines tab.
4. Click the Delete Lines button.
5. Select all Contract lines located in the Contract Lines Not Associated with Billing Plan Lines grid.
6. In the Billing Plan Line Creation Opt region, select the Create individual lines option.
7. Click the Create Lines button.
8. Click Save.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Contracts	All	All

Task 1-31-4: Processing In Progress Bill Plans

This section discusses:

- Understanding Processing In Progress Bill Plans
- Processing Bill Plans to Completion
- Crediting a Bill

Understanding Processing In Progress Bill Plans

In this step, you process bill plans with the status *In Progress* that have summarized bill plan lines and are attached to amount-based contract lines.

Note. In the UPG_CAP02 query results, bill plans that are *in progress* have the billing status *PRG*.

You can process bill plans with the status *In Progress* using either of the following options:

- Fully process the bill plan to a status of *Complete*.
- Credit the bill in the Billing application.

Processing Bill Plans to Completion

To process bill plans to a status of *Complete*:

1. Select Billing, Interface Transactions, Process Billing Interface, Billing Interface.
2. Make sure the Billing Interface program has been run so that all bill lines in the interface table are on invoices.
3. Select Billing, Generate Invoices, Non-Consolidated, Finalize and Print Invoices, Finalize and Print.
4. Run the Finalize and Print process for those bills.
5. Select Billing, Generate Invoices, Utilities, Update Contract/Projects Data.
6. Run the Projects/Contracts Intrfc program to update Contracts.

7. Select Customer Contracts, Schedule and Process Billing, Process Billing.
8. Run the Contracts/Billing Interface Process to update the Bill Plan and event statuses.

Crediting a Bill

To credit a bill in PeopleSoft Billing:

1. Select Billing, Maintain Bills, Adjust Entire Bill.
2. Run the process Credit Entire Bill for those bills needing credits.
3. After the bills have been fully credited, go to the Bill Plans to unassign and reassign them as follows:
 - a. Select Customer Contracts, Schedule and Process Billing, Assign Bill Plan.
 - b. To unassign the bill plans, select the contract lines associated with the bill plan you want to unassign and click the Unassign button.
If the bills have not been fully credited for the bill plan, you will receive an error message.
 - c. To reassign the contract lines to a new bill plan, select the contract lines and then click the Assign button.
 - d. In the bill plan, select the Billing Plan Lines tab.
 - e. Select all Contract lines located in the Contract Lines Not Associated with Billing Plan Lines grid.
 - f. In the Billing Plan Line Creation Opt region, select the Create individual lines option.
 - g. Click the Create Lines button.
 - h. Click Save.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Contracts	All	All

Task 1-32: Reviewing Burden Plans

In the new PeopleSoft release, all burden plans will be converted into rate plans. Additionally, if prior to upgrade there was a Contract Line level rate template and a burden plan at the activity, project, Contracts (CA) header, or Project Costing business unit level, then the rate template will be combined with the burden plan (selected from the most specific level defined) to create a new rate plan. This new rate plan, a product of the rate template and burden plan, will be used for pricing transactions after the upgrade.

However, the CA header burden plan will not be combined with the rate template to create a new rate plan when all of the following conditions exist concurrently:

- A burden plan has been defined at the CA header.
- Neither the activity nor the project has a burden plan.
- There is a rate template on the contract line.
- The business unit for the contract is not the same as the Projects business unit defined for the contract line.

To identify the contract lines:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager.
2. Run the following query:

UPG_CAP01

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Contracts	All	All

Task 1-33: Processing Pending Amendments

This section discusses:

- Understanding Pending Amendments
- Running Outstanding Amendments Query
- Cancelling an Amendment
- Processing an Amendment to Complete

Understanding Pending Amendments

All contract amendments with a status of *Ready* or *Pending* that have changes to the limit amount or the addition of a new contract line need to be processed to a status of *Complete* or *Cancelled*. You must first run a query to obtain a list of outstanding Amendments that need to be processed and then process them to a status of *Complete* or *Cancelled*.

Task 1-33-1: Running Outstanding Amendments Query

To run a query on outstanding amendments:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Viewer.
2. Search for the query UPG_CAP03 and click the Run to HTML link in the result set.
3. Save the results of the query. This is the list of outstanding amendments that need to be processed.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Contracts	All	All

Task 1-33-2: Cancelling an Amendment

To cancel an amendment:

1. Select Customer Contracts, Create and Amend, General Information.
2. Specify the contract you want to update.
3. Select the Contract Amendments tab.
4. In the Amendments grid, click the Detail link for an amendment with a status of *Ready* or *Pending*.
5. On the Amendment Detail page, set the Amend Status field to *Cancelled*.
6. Click Save.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Contracts	All	All

Task 1-33-3: Processing an Amendment to Complete

To process an amendment to a status of *Complete*:

1. Select Customer Contracts, Create and Amend, General Information.
2. Specify the contract you want to update.
3. Click the Contract Amendments tab.
4. In the Amendments grid, click the Detail link for an amendment with a status of *Ready* or *Pending*.
5. On the Amendment Detail page, set the Amend Status field to *Ready*.
When you change the status to Ready, the Process Amendment button appears above the Amend Status field.
6. Click the Process Amendment button to process the Amendment.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Contracts	All	All

Task 1-34: Executing Match Rules and Transactions

This section discusses:

- Documenting New Match Rules
- Documenting New Receipt Aware Criteria
- Customizing Pay Cycle Definition
- Configuring Pay Cycle Definitions
- Verifying Voucher Build and Edit

- Closing Payables Pay Cycles
- Posting Payables Transactions
- Running Journal Generator Edit and Post
- Running Federal Payment Schedule Query
- Completing Manual Payments
- Canceling Split Payment Terms
- Flagging Bad Effective Dated Withholding Entities

Note. Match Rule Exceptions must be resolved before running data conversions.

Task 1-34-1: Documenting New Match Rules

After you complete the upgrade, you will be instructed to add the new rules back into the system and reapply your customizations to the delivered rules. At the end of the upgrade, you will enter the documented rules to the specific match controls if they are still applicable to your business case. It is important that you document all the new match rules that you added and any delivered rules that you modified for input later in the upgrade.

See “Complete Database Changes,” Performing Payables Setup.

To document new match rules:

1. To determine which match rules you are using for each match control rule, select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Procurement Options, Vouchers, Match Rule Control.
2. To see the detail behind those rules, to determine which rules you have added or customized, select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Procurement Options, Vouchers, Match Rules.

If there are any vouchers with the match status *Reject*, you need to clean up those vouchers before upgrading. Otherwise, their status will be converted to *To Be Matched* and the new match process will pick up those vouchers to process them.

To find out which vouchers have the match status *Reject*, select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager and run the query UPG_APM02.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 1-34-2: Documenting New Receipt Aware Criteria

After you complete the upgrade, you will be instructed to add the new receipt aware criteria back into the system and reapply your customizations to the newly delivered document association rules. At the end of the upgrade, you will enter the documented receipt aware criteria to create a new document association, if they are still applicable to your business case. It is important that you document all the new receipt aware criteria that you added and any delivered receipt aware criteria (RECEIPT and STANDARD) that you modified, for input later in the upgrade.

To document new receipt aware criteria:

1. To determine which receipt aware criteria you might have added, select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Procurement Options, Vouchers, Receipt Aware Criteria.
2. Make a note of the new receipt aware criteria that you added or customized from this page.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 1-34-3: Customizing Pay Cycle Definition

Due to changes in Pay Cycle for this release, the upgrade process will overwrite any modifications that you have performed on the Payment Source, Mapping, Step, and Step tables. If you have customized the setup for any of these tables, make note of the changes. If you wish to reapply these customizations at the end of the upgrade, PeopleSoft strongly recommends that you complete the upgrade first and then make sure that Pay Cycle is running properly before attempting to reapply any customizations.

To determine what changes have been made to the Step Group Model, select Accounts Payable, Administration, Pay Cycle, Pay Cycle Step Table.

Note. Pay Cycle Mapping contains vital system data for Pay Cycle processing. Do not change mapping data on existing source transactions. If you need to customize Pay Cycle Mapping, PeopleSoft recommends that you add a new source transaction, then enter mapping data onto Pay Cycle Mapping for the new source transaction.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise Payables 9.0 PeopleBook

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 1-34-4: Configuring Pay Cycle Definitions

In this PeopleSoft release, Pay Cycle bank replacement has been enhanced, enabling several options for replacement rules including replacement by currency, bank, account, total cumulative amount, or single payment amount.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise Payables 9.0 PeopleBook*.

In previous PeopleSoft releases, Pay Cycle only allowed a single override rule. This rule was stored on the PYCYCL_BNK_OVR table. This table has been deleted in the new PeopleSoft release and has been replaced by a set of tables and fields. You need to complete the following steps to configure your Pay Cycle definitions in the new PeopleSoft release.

To configure Pay Cycle definitions:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager.
2. Run the following query:

UPG_APM_01

3. Review your current rules. Identify the rules that are active and that you want to use after the upgrade.
4. Amount overrides (from your old PeopleSoft release) need to be defined on Bank Information – External Accounts. These are all set to null as part of the upgrade for all existing bank accounts and will be ignored by Pay Cycle.
5. Attach the rule you have defined to the Pay Cycle setup definition by selecting Accounts Payable, Payments, Pay Cycle Processing.
6. For all existing and new data, PYMNT_VCHR_XREF.BANK_RPL_STATUS is set to *N* during the upgrade. Any new data entered will also be set to *N*. When the system replaces the bank (during Pay Cycle Selection or Payment) this field will be set to *Y*.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 1-34-5: Verifying Voucher Build and Edit

This section discusses:

- Updating Query Security
- Processing EDI Transactions
- Processing Payroll Vouchers
- Processing Invoice, Errors and Contract Vouchers

Updating Query Security

Update the query security as follows before you run the queries UPG_APG01, UPG_APG02 and UPG_APG03.

To update the query security:

1. Select PeopleTools, Security, Query Security, Query Access Manager to update the tree QUERY_TREE_AP.
2. Insert VCHR_HDR_EC, VCHR_HDR_STG, and VCHR_HDR_QV as child records update AP_ACCESS_GROUPS > VOUCHERS.

Processing EDI Transactions

All loaded EDI transactions must be processed successfully through Voucher Build and Voucher Edit prior to upgrade conversion.

To identify whether EDI transactions exist that need to be processed:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager.
2. Run the following query:

UPG_APG01

If the Count is not 0, then there are loaded EDI Transactions remaining to be processed before performing Data Conversion.

Processing Payroll Vouchers

All Payroll Vouchers (Publish/Subscribe) must be successfully processed by Voucher Build and Voucher Edit prior to upgrade conversion.

To identify whether Publish/Subscribe transactions exist:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager.
2. Run the following query:

UPG_APG02

If the Count is not 0, then there are existing Publish/Subscribe Transactions remaining to be processed before performing Data Conversion.

Processing Invoice, Errors and Contract Vouchers

All transactions in the Quick Invoice tables, New Quick Invoices, Voucher Build Errors, and Staged Contract Vouchers should be successfully processed by Voucher Build and Voucher Edit prior to upgrade conversion.

To identify whether any Quick Invoices, Voucher Build Errors, or Staged Vouchers exist:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager.
2. Run the following query:

UPG_APG03

If the Count is not 0, then there are existing Transactions remaining to be processed before performing Data Conversion.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 1-34-6: Closing Payables Pay Cycles

All pay cycles must either be completed or reset before starting the upgrade process. There are extensive changes in the pay cycle architecture, especially in the payment selection and payment creation processes. With pay cycles in process, the upgrade cannot handle the data conversion.

To find all pay cycles that need to be completed or reset:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager.
2. Run the following query:

UPG_APY01

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 1-34-7: Posting Payables Transactions

Before beginning your upgrade, you must post all your voucher, payment and withhold transactions and generate the corresponding accounting lines. In this new release, PeopleSoft designed a number of withholding, VAT, and other payable enhancements. Because of these changes, posting and creating accounting entries for all transactions prior to the upgrade is the only way to guarantee that all transactions will be posted to the accounts as you have previously defined them.

Run the voucher, payment, and the withholding posting processes before continuing with this upgrade.

This PeopleSoft release provides new functionality for 1099 processing, creating a need to modify the existing table structures to comply with the new data integrity. In the delivery of year-end withholding patches, PeopleSoft has made every effort to avoid making data model changes, to help limit the impact of their implementation. *If you have started the 1099 reporting process, you must complete it prior to beginning the upgrade.* The upgrade will move the data that has been previously sent to the IRS to history tables and will not upgrade the summary data that is currently being processed (the WTHD_TO_SND_XX tables). Because of this, the post upgrade system will not be able to accurately recreate original, correction or void transactions for 1099 processing. However, it will be able to generate original transmissions in the post-upgrade database. The data in the Copy B tables will also be moved to a history table. These history tables are provided as reference only and will not have pages or processes to support them.

- WTHD_SENT_DTL moved to WTHD_SENT_DHST
- WTHD_SENT_HDR moved to WTHD_SENT_HHST
- WTHD_1099_COPYB moved to WTHD_COPYB_HST

To post Payables transactions:

1. To voucher post, select Account Payables, Batch Processes, Vouchers, Voucher Posting.
2. To payment post, select Account Payables, Batch Processes, Payments, Payment Posting.

Note. You must post all vouchers and payments before performing the next step.

3. To withhold post, select Vendors, Withholdings, Post Withholdings.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 1-34-8: Running Journal Generator Edit and Post

Make sure that the Post Payables Transactions section above is completed before proceeding with this task.

Before starting your upgrade, you must run Journal Generator, Journal Edit, and Journal Posting for all Accounts Payables accounting entries that have been posted but not yet processed by Journal Generator. This is the only way to guarantee that all transactions will be posted to the accounts as you have previously defined them. Run the Journal Generator process for all General Ledger Business Unit/Ledger Group combinations before continuing with this upgrade.

To run journal generator, edit, and post:

1. To run Journal Generator, select General Ledger, Journals, Subsystem Journals, Generate Journals.
2. To run Journal Edit, select General Ledger, Journals, Process Journal, Edit Journals.
3. To run Journal Post, select General Ledger, Journal, Process Journal, Process Posting.

Properties

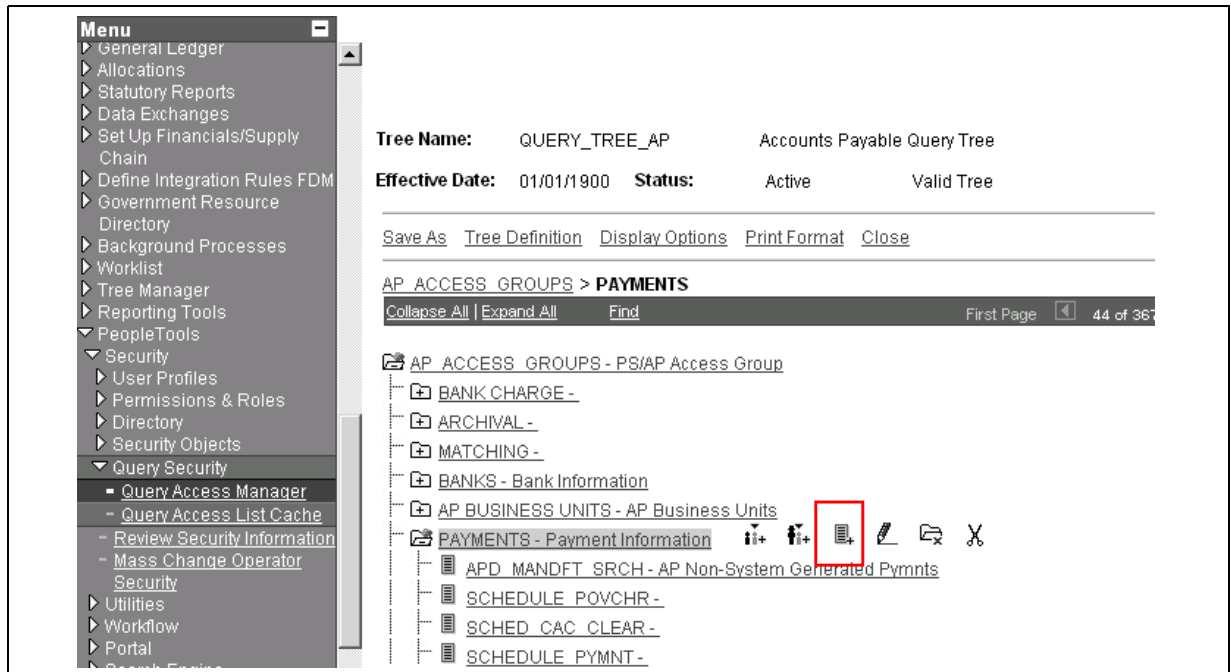
Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 1-34-9: Running Federal Payment Schedule Query

If you have Federal Payment Schedule in Structure Procurement Options set up, run the query below and print out a Payment Schedule listing. You need this information to recreate Payment Schedule data after the conversion.

To add the Schedule Payment Method table:

1. Select PeopleTools, Security, Query Security.
2. Start Query Access Manager.
3. Enter *QUERY_TREE_AP* as the Tree Name.
4. On the PAYMENTS – Payment Information page, select the Add icon to insert a child record.



Accounts Payable Query Tree page

5. Enter *SCHD_PYMNT_MTHD* in the Record (Table) Name field.
6. Click Add.
7. Click Save and exit.
8. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager.
9. Run the following query:

UPG_GFAPM01

Note. Save the results of this query. You will need them later in the upgrade.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 1-34-10: Completing Manual Payments

Prior to running the upgrade scripts, you must complete all manual payments and manual draft payments created. You can execute the following query to find all manual payments and manual draft payments that need to be completed.

To find all manual payments and draft payments that need to be completed:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager.
2. Run the following query report:

UPG_APK03

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 1-34-11: Canceling Split Payment Terms

In this step cancel split payment terms.

If you want to cancel any split payment terms you need to complete the cancellations before the upgrade begins.

To cancel any split payment terms:

1. Select Accounts Payable, Payments, Pay Cycle Exceptions, Cancel Split Payment Terms.
2. Enter a Run Control ID.
3. Select Search to proceed with the cancellation process.

Important! The Split Payment Terms process from the previous release has been renamed to Reschedule Payments in the new PeopleSoft release.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 1-34-12: Flagging Bad Effective Dated Withholding Entities

In this step you run a query to identify withholding entities with incorrect effective date information. Because of the new withholding enhancements, the withholding entity and class information on the Procurement Control ChartField page are driven by the information defined on the Withholding Entity Page. The effective date on the old page must be greater than or equal to the effective date on the new page, or the automatic data conversion will not work correctly. Use this report to make any necessary changes to your withholding entities.

To run the Withholding Entities report:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Viewer.
2. Run the following query:

UPG_APU30

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 1-35: Completing Batch Transactions

This task is required for any customer that does batch/data collection transaction processing. In this task, you complete or cancel any remaining batch transaction processes. You must confirm that any outstanding batch (BCT) transactions have been completely processed or cancelled before proceeding with the upgrade. The staging tables are not converted and you may lose data that resides in these tables.

To complete or cancel BCT transactions:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Create Upgrade Reports.
2. Run the report Outstanding Batch Transactions, PUCGY257, to retrieve business units with transactions that have not been closed or cancelled.
3. Select SCM Integrations, Transaction Error Handling, Maintain Transactions.
4. For every business unit listed in the report:
 - a. Click the Search button (flashlight).
 - b. For each entry that does not have the status *Complete*, click the EIP Control ID and either complete or cancel the transaction.
5. If any rows are returned, you must repeat the steps for every applicable business unit.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-36: Preparing Inventory

This section discusses:

- Running the Inventory PreUpgrade Report
- Reviewing PreUpgrade Inventory Report
- Confirming Shipping and Depleting All Orders
- Costing and Posting Inventory Transactions
- Running Inventory Balances Report

Task 1-36-1: Running the Inventory PreUpgrade Report

This report shows you data conditions that you should address before the upgrade begins. An explanation of the report and directions for the output information follows these instructions.

To run the pre-upgrade report:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Create Upgrade Reports.
2. Run the following reports:

Un-Invoiced Billing Line Count, PUCGY251.SQR

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Inventory	All	All

Task 1-36-2: Reviewing PreUpgrade Inventory Report

The PUCGY251 report identifies any billing lines by Business Unit in the shipping interface table (PS_SHIP_INF_INV) that have been run through the INS6300/OMBILL process but have not been run through the billing interface process BIIF0001. A total number of rows will be listed on the report. The rows must be processed through Billing so that they appear on an invoice prior to running the upgrade.

Note. If you do not process these outstanding billing lines, you will not be able to invoice these entries after the upgrade.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Inventory	All	All

Task 1-36-3: Confirming Shipping and Depleting All Orders

You must confirm, ship, and deplete all orders that have appeared on a pick plan before proceeding with the upgrade.

To confirm, ship, and deplete orders:

1. Make any picking feedback modifications by selecting Inventory, Fulfill Stock Orders, Picking, Material Picking Feedback.
2. When complete, mark all open pick lines as confirmed by selecting the Confirm check box for all lines or by clicking Confirm All.
3. Run picking confirmation for all open pick lines by selecting Inventory, Fulfill Stock Orders, Picking, Picking Confirmation.
4. If Auto-Ship was not selected for all pick lines, ship all lines by selecting Inventory, Fulfill Stock Orders, Shipping, Shipping/Issues.

- Run depletions for all shipped orders by selecting Inventory, Fulfill Stock Orders, Shipping, Deplete On Hand Quantity.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Inventory	All	All

Task 1-36-4: Costing and Posting Inventory Transactions

In this step, you cost all Inventory transactions and post them to the General Ledger.

Important! Prior to running the data conversion scripts, you must cost all Inventory transactions and post them to General Ledger.

To cost and post Inventory transactions:

- Run the transaction costing process by selecting Cost Accounting, Inventory and Mfg Accounting, Create Accounting Entries, Inventory Transaction Costing.
- Run accounting line creation by selecting Cost Accounting, Inventory and Mfg Accounting, Create Accounting Entries, Accounting Line Creation.
- Select Cost Accounting, Inventory and Mfg Accounting, Create Accounting Entries, Accounting Line Errors.
- Verify there are no errors for any Inventory Business unit.
- Run journal generator by selecting General Ledger, Journals, Subsystem Journals, Generate Journals.
- Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Create Upgrade Reports.
Run the report Verify Costing Transaction, PUCGY303 to ensure that all Inventory and, if applicable, Manufacturing transactions are posted to General Ledger.
This report verifies that all Inventory transactions have been costed and posted to the General Ledger.
- If any unprocessed transactions exist, you will not be able to reconcile costing after the upgrade. Repeat steps 1 through 5 until there are no unprocessed transactions on the report.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Inventory	All	All

Task 1-36-5: Running Inventory Balances Report

Run the Inventory Balances report to make it easier to reconcile the inventory quantities and values after data conversion.

To run the inventory balances report:

- Select Inventory, Manage Inventory, Reports, Inventory Balances.

2. If you encounter any discrepancy in the report, please call the Global Support Center for help in resolving the problem before continuing with the upgrade.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Inventory	All	All

Task 1-37: Completing Supply Chain Planning

This section discusses:

- Completing Planning Processes
- Completing Supply Planning Processes

Task 1-37-1: Completing Planning Processes

This task applies only if you have implemented Enterprise or Production Planning. Prior to data conversion, you must complete the entire Enterprise Planning process, which includes:

- Running the Enterprise Planning Datalink.
- Transferring Enterprise Planning schedules from the planning system.
- Receiving Enterprise Planning messages.
- Applying all Enterprise Planning messages in PeopleSoft Enterprise Production Management, PeopleSoft Enterprise Purchasing (if applicable), and PeopleSoft Enterprise Inventory (if applicable).

You must also complete the entire Production Planning process, which includes:

- Running the Planning DataLink.
- Transferring schedules from the planning system.
- Receiving planning messages.
- Applying all planning messages in PeopleSoft Enterprise Production Management, PeopleSoft Enterprise Purchasing (if applicable), and PeopleSoft Enterprise Inventory (if applicable).

In the new release, the Supply Planning product replaces Enterprise Planning and Production Planning. As a result, any data still existing in the planning messages related tables will be deleted during data conversion. By completing your Planning processes, there should not be any outstanding messages.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Production Planning Enterprise Planning	All	All

Task 1-37-2: Completing Supply Planning Processes

This task applies only if you have implemented EPM 8.8x Supply Planning.

Prior to data conversion, you must complete the entire Supply Planning process, which includes:

- Running Ascential to bring Planning Instance data back from EPM to SCM.
- Running the Supply Planning Post Application Engine.
- Applying all Supply Planning messages in PeopleSoft Enterprise Production Management, PeopleSoft Enterprise Purchasing (if applicable), and PeopleSoft Enterprise Inventory (if applicable).

Because of enhancements to the Supply Planning Messages functionality, any data still existing in the planning messages related tables will be obsolete. The data will be deleted during the data conversion. By completing your Planning processes, there should not be any outstanding messages.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Supply Planning	All	All

Task 1-38: Identifying Manufacturing Data

In this task, you run a report to identify data conditions within your Manufacturing data. An explanation of the report and directions for the output information follows these instructions.

To run the pre-upgrade report:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Create Upgrade Reports.
2. Run the following report:

MFG YIELD Report, PUEPK310.SQR

The manufacturing yield field on an item will no longer be used because of the introduction of “yield by operation” functionality. This report returns all items where the manufacturing yield value for Planning item attributes does not equal 100. You will use this information after data conversion to manually change your routing operations to account for this yield percentage.

Note. Keep the output of this report; you will need it later in the upgrade process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Manufacturing	All	All

Task 1-39: Preparing Strategic Sourcing

This section discusses:

- Running the PreUpgrade Sourcing Query
- Reviewing the PreUpgrade Sourcing Query
- Reviewing Event Status

Task 1-39-1: Running the PreUpgrade Sourcing Query

In this step, you run the Strategic Sourcing pre-upgrade query.

To run the pre-upgrade query:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Viewer.
2. Run the following query:

```
Strat Sourcing Weighting > 1, UPG_AUCJ210
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Strategic Sourcing	All	All

Task 1-39-2: Reviewing the PreUpgrade Sourcing Query

In your current version of Strategic Sourcing, the weighting bid factor should only be stored as a fraction of one (1.00). This query identifies any weightings that are currently greater than one. You must correct any weightings listed in the query results on the Bid Factor Setup page (Sourcing, Create Events, Bid Factor Setup). These weightings must be expressed as a percentage of the total weighting for that bid factor.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Strategic Sourcing	All	All

Task 1-39-3: Reviewing Event Status

In this step, you ensure all events are either closed for bidding or cancelled. You need to either close or cancel events that are open for bidding prior to starting data conversion.

To determine event status:

1. Select Sourcing, Maintain Events, Event Workbench.
2. Use the Event Status field to filter for any events in the posted status.
3. Cancel or award any posted events by either clicking on the Cancel icon or clicking on the Analyze Bid icon.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Strategic Sourcing	All	All

Task 1-40: Preparing Services Procurement

This section discusses:

- Running the PreUpgrade sPro Reports
- Reviewing the PreUpgrade sPro Reports
- Running the PreUpgrade sPro Queries
- Reviewing the PreUpgrade sPro Queries
- Completing Cost Collection

Task 1-40-1: Running the PreUpgrade sPro Reports

In this step, run the Services Procurement pre-upgrade reports.

To run the pre-upgrade reports:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Create Upgrade Reports.
2. Run the following reports:

```
Identify Orphan sPro Records, PUEPQ712.SQR
sPro Work Orders to be Released, PUEPQ705.SQR
sPro Defaulting Project Roles, PUEPK702.SQR
sPro Field Resizing, PUEPJ703.SQR
sPro Denied Timesheets, PUEPP704.SQR
```


Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 1-40-2: Reviewing the PreUpgrade sPro Reports

This section discusses:

- Reviewing Report PUEPQ712
- Reviewing Report PUEPQ705
- Reviewing Report PUEPK702
- Reviewing Report PUEPJ703
- Reviewing Report PUEPP704

Reviewing Report PUEPQ712

This report identifies potentially orphaned records in the Bid Factor Mapping and Region Markup record structures. If any records appear in this report, you need to determine whether or not the record is valid, and then address changes that need to be made to the setIDs assigned to these records. In each case, the identified record has been moved from one record group to a new record group for the current release. This change may have some impact when prompting for values for the affected records. For example, if the record originally existed in a record group that was attached to one setID in your tableset sharing, and the record is being moved to a new record group that is attached to a different setID, then the setID value may need to be updated in the record so prompting returns the expected values.

Reviewing Report PUEPQ705

If you do not have PeopleSoft Enterprise Purchasing installed, you may skip this step.

This report generates a list of approved work orders that must be released. If your system is integrated with PeopleSoft Purchasing, releasing approved work orders ensures that the information is synchronized with Purchasing.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise 9.0 Services Procurement PeopleBook*.

Reviewing Report PUEPK702

If you use PeopleSoft Enterprise Purchasing Contracts, you will use the results of this report as a reference for updating the service types after data conversion. Otherwise, you can skip this step.

In the new release, the different service types (formerly role types) may be associated with the same project role. A flag has been added to allow you to define a default service type for each project role. The report identifies which service type should be defaulted to each project role.

Note. Keep the output of this report; you will need it prior to finishing the upgrade.

Reviewing Report PUEPJ703

All amount fields and rate fields used in Services Procurement have been set to a standard field length of 23.3 and 10.4 respectively. In the unlikely event that your data will be truncated, this report will identify the data in fields which have values that are greater than the new standard field lengths. You will need to adjust the values that appear on the report accordingly.

Reviewing Report PUEPP704

This report produces a list of denied timesheet lines that need to be resubmitted prior to running the data conversion. Any denied timesheet lines that are not resubmitted will result in double booking of the work order amount for the non-denied timesheet lines.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 1-40-3: Running the PreUpgrade sPro Queries

In this step, you run the Services Procurement pre-upgrade queries.

To run the pre-upgrade queries:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Viewer.
2. Run the following queries:

```
sPro Time Template BU to setID, UPG_SPP706
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 1-40-4: Reviewing the PreUpgrade sPro Queries

This section discusses:

- Reviewing Query UPG_SPP706

Reviewing Query UPG_SPP706

Time templates are now setID driven instead of business unit driven. This report provides a list of all existing time templates by business units. After data conversion completes, you use this report to evaluate and remove any duplicate templates. Another alternative is to reuse one template for multiple business units by mapping the business units to a common setID. New features need to be set up and configured before the review.

For additional information on how Services Procurement uses time templates, calendars, and time reporting rules, see the following reference.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise Services Procurement 9.0 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up Application Specific Options for PeopleSoft Services Procurement.”

Note. Keep the output of this report; you will need it prior to finishing the upgrade.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 1-40-5: Completing Cost Collection

This step applies only if your Services Procurement product is integrated with the Project Costing product. In this step, you complete the Cost Collection for Services Procurement process.

To run the Cost Collection process:

1. Select Projects, Collect Cost, Services Procurement.
2. Enter a Run Control ID.
3. Accept the defaults and click the Run button to submit the process for execution.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 1-41: Preparing Outstanding Schedules

In this task you need to ensure all outstanding schedules for Collaborative Supply Management have been approved and applied, so that there are not any schedules in a partial cycle. The planned order table will be refreshed as part of the data conversion and you will not be able to use the auto-apply feature for any schedules built prior to this table being refreshed.

To approve and apply schedules:

1. Select Purchasing, Supplier Schedules, Scheduler's Workbench.
2. Select the Maintain Current Schedules radio button.
3. Click Search.
4. Ensure that there are no schedules in the list in dispatched status or approved status without changes applied. Schedules in a dispatched status should be re-dispatched after the upgrade or approved by suppliers before continuing with the upgrade. Approved schedules with an Apply hyperlink visible should have any required changes applied to related purchase orders before continuing with the upgrade.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Collaborative Supply Management	All	All

Task 1-42: Completing Purchasing Tasks

This section discusses:

- Loading Change Requests

Task 1-42-1: Loading Change Requests

There have been a number of changes to the way change requests via EDI are now handled. It is highly recommended that you load and process all change requests made from EDI processes prior to the data conversion to guarantee that no information is lost or orphaned.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Purchasing	All	All

Task 1-43: Updating VAT Transaction Information

This section discusses:

- Understanding Updated VAT Transaction Information
- Reviewing Existing VAT Information
- Updating VAT Transaction Table
- Reviewing Current VAT Defaults

Understanding Updated VAT Transaction Information

In this task you update your Value Added Tax (VAT) Transaction Table.

You also review your current VAT default setup to assist in verifying data in the VAT Defaults Table after the data conversion.

Task 1-43-1: Reviewing Existing VAT Information

In the new release, the VAT functionality is enhanced to allow VAT to be recorded correctly for service transactions. Additionally, the VAT default and option fields are centralized into a common setup instead of existing at the individual product level. It is important that the VAT information for Payables, Receivables, General Ledger, Expenses, Asset Management, Treasury, Order Management, Billing, and Purchasing be reviewed and corrected on existing transactions prior to data conversion.

Important! It is very important that you complete this step before you continue with the upgrade. Updating the VAT information on existing transactions after data conversion will be very difficult to accomplish without extensive manipulation of the data.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-43-2: Updating VAT Transaction Table

This section discusses:

- Understanding VAT Transaction Table Updates

Understanding VAT Transaction Table Updates

Make sure that the VAT Transaction Table has been updated with all eligible VAT-applicable transactions from Payables, eSettlements, Receivables, Billing, Asset Management, Treasury, General Ledger and Expenses.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-43-3: Reviewing Current VAT Defaults

In this PeopleSoft release, most VAT defaults and options have been removed from application VAT driver tables such as VAT entity, business units, vendor, customer and others and moved to a single VAT defaults table. Additionally, all VAT default tables have also been moved to the new VAT defaults table.

Prior to running the data conversion, review your current VAT defaults setup to allow you to verify that these values have been copied correctly to the new VAT defaults table.

Review the VAT defaults from the following VAT Drivers:

- Asset Management Business Unit Definition (BUS_UNIT_TBL_AM)
- Billing Business Unit Definition (BUS_UNIT_TBL_BI)
- Expenses Business Unit Definition (BUS_UNIT_TBL_EX)

Note. VAT tolerance information defined on the Expenses Business Unit Definition will only be copied to the new VAT Defaults table when the VAT Tolerance Flag is set to *S* (Specify).

- Expenses Business Unit Options (BUS_UNIT_OPT_EX)
- General Ledger Business Unit Definition (BUS_UNIT_TBL_GL)

Note. The Zero tolerance amounts and zero tolerance percents on the General Ledger Business Unit Definition are interpreted as meaning an absolute intolerance for any discrepancy between the entered and calculated VAT amounts. These zero amounts will be copied to the new VAT Defaults table.

- Order Management Business Unit Definition (BUS_UNIT_TBL_OM)
- Payables Business Unit Definition (BUS_UNIT_TBL_AP)
- Payables Business Unit Options (BUS_UNIT_OPT_AP)

Tolerance currency code and rate type are required in the new PeopleSoft release. Please review your VAT tolerance setup to ensure that currency code and rate type have been specified for all sets of Payables Business Unit Options.

Note. The Zero tolerance amounts and zero tolerance percents on the Payables Business Unit Options are interpreted as meaning an absolute intolerance for any discrepancy between the entered and calculated VAT amounts. These zero amounts will be copied to the new VAT Defaults table.

- Purchasing Business Unit Definition (BUS_UNIT_TBL_PM)
- Purchasing Business Unit Options (BUS_UNIT_OPT_PM)
- Receivables Business Unit Options (BUS_UNIT_OPT_AR)

Tolerance currency code and rate type are required in the new PeopleSoft release. Please review your VAT tolerance setup to ensure that currency code and rate type have been specified for all sets of Receivables Business Unit Options.

Note. The Zero tolerance amounts and zero tolerance percents on the Receivables Business Unit Options are interpreted as meaning an absolute intolerance for any discrepancy between the entered and calculated VAT amounts. These zero amounts will be copied to the new VAT Defaults table.

- Treasury Business Unit Options (TRV_BU_UNIT_VAT)

Note. If both the tolerance amount and tolerance percent on the Treasury Business Unit Options are zero, no tolerance information will be copied to the new VAT Defaults table.

- Vendor Location (VENDOR_LOC)

Tolerance currency code and rate type are required in the new PeopleSoft release. For your vendor locations where the VAT Tolerance Flag is set to *S* (Specify), please review the currency information to ensure that currency code and rate type have been specified.

Note. VAT tolerance information defined on the Vendor Location will only be copied to the new VAT Defaults table when the VAT Tolerance Flag is set to *S* (Specify).

- Customer (CUSTOMER)
- Voucher Origin (ORIGIN_AP_OPT)

Tolerance currency code and rate type are required in the new PeopleSoft release. For your voucher origins where the VAT Tolerance Flag is set to *S* (Specify), please review the currency information to ensure that currency code and rate type have been specified.

Note. VAT tolerance information defined on the Voucher Origin will only be copied to the new VAT Defaults table when the VAT Tolerance Flag is set to *S* (Specify).

- Control Group (GRP_AP)

Tolerance currency code and rate type are required in the new PeopleSoft release. For your control groups where the VAT Tolerance Flag is set to *S* (Specify), please review the currency information to ensure that currency code and rate type have been specified.

Note. VAT tolerance information defined on the Control Group will only be copied to the new VAT Defaults table when the VAT Tolerance Flag is set to *S* (Specify).

- Purchasing Item Attributes (PURCH_ITEM_ATTR)
- Business Unit Items (PURCH_ITEM_BU)
- Expense Types (EX_TYPES_TBL)
- General Ledger Journal Source (SOURCE_TBL)

Tolerance currency code and rate type are required in the new PeopleSoft release. For your journal sources where the VAT Tolerance Flag is set to *S* (Specify), please review the currency information to ensure that currency code and rate type have been specified.

Note. VAT tolerance information defined on the Journal Source will only be copied to the new VAT Defaults table when the VAT Tolerance Flag is set to *S* (Specify).

- Account ChartField (GL_ACCOUNT_TBL)

- Tolerance currency code and rate type are required in the new PeopleSoft release. For your GL accounts where the VAT Tolerance Flag is set to *S* (Specify), please review the currency information to ensure that currency code and rate type have been specified.
- For all GL accounts flagged as VAT accounts, the VAT Calculation Type field must be blank. Please review to ensure that the VAT Calculation Type field is set to blank for all accounts flagged as VAT accounts.
- In the new release, either the Record Input VAT and/or the Record Output VAT flags must be set to *Y* for all accounts flagged as either VAT Applicable Accounts or VAT Accounts

For all GL accounts flagged as VAT Applicable Accounts, please ensure that the Record Input VAT and/or the Record Output VAT flag is set to *Y*.

For all GL accounts flagged as VAT Accounts, please ensure that either the Record Input VAT flag or the Record Output VAT flag (but not both) are set to *Y*.

Note. VAT tolerance information defined on the General Ledger account will only be copied to the new VAT Defaults table when the VAT Tolerance Flag is set to *S* (Specify).

- Bank Branch (TRV_BRANCH_VAT)

Note. If both the tolerance amount and tolerance percent on the Bank Branch are zero, no tolerance information will be copied to the new VAT Defaults table.

- Bank Code (TRV_BANK_CD_VAT)

Note. If both the tolerance amount and tolerance percent on the Bank Code are zero, no tolerance information will be copied to the new VAT Defaults table.

- Treasury Accounting Template (TRV_TR_TMPL_VAT)

Note. If both the tolerance amount and tolerance percent on the Treasury Accounting Template are zero, no tolerance information will be copied to the new VAT Defaults table.

- Procurement VAT Defaults (VAT_DF_CD_PR)

- Vendor
- Voucher Origin
- Control Group
- Item Category
- Item

- Item VAT Recovery Rate (VAT_DF_RCVR_ITM)

- Non-VAT Suspended Items (VAT_DF_NSUSP_PR)

- Sales VAT Defaults (VAT_DF_CD_SL)

- Customer
- Product Group
- Product
- Charge Code
- Discount Code
- Surcharge Code
- Contracts Offering VAT ID

- Non-VAT Suspended Products (VAT_DF_NSUSP_SL)

- Product
- Charge Code

- Expenses VAT Defaults (VAT_DFLT_EXP)

Note. The data conversion program will only copy default values from the Expenses VAT Default table to the new VAT Defaults table for fields where the 'Specify' flag has been selected. Please review your setup and verify that the 'Specify' flag is selected for all default values you want copied.

- Expenses VAT Code Defaults (VAT_DF_CD_EE)

- VAT Country (COUNTRY_VAT_TBL)

- VAT Entity Registration (VAT_ENT_RGSTRN)

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-44: Setting Up Treasury

This section discusses:

- Understanding the Treasury Setup
- Running Auto Position Process
- Approving Settlements Before Upgrading
- Deleting Duplicate Securities Data

Understanding the Treasury Setup

In this task, you rerun the Auto Position process for all deals. Run this task only if you licensed Treasury.

Task 1-44-1: Running Auto Position Process

During this step, you will ensure that the Auto Position process is run for all deals. This will process every deal (with its most recent data) to calculate the cash flows, position, and accounting events.

Note. Complete this step only if you license Treasury.

To rerun auto position process:

1. Select Deal Management, Capture Deals, Deal Position Update.
2. Choose the Process All Outstanding Deals switch and run the process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Deal Management Risk Management	All	All

Task 1-44-2: Approving Settlements Before Upgrading

This section discusses:

- Understanding Selecting and Approving Settlements

- Selecting Settlements
- Approving Settlements

Understanding Selecting and Approving Settlements

In prior releases, the payment method was not available when creating a Fee or Bank Account Transfer. You used to select the payment method when selecting and/or approving the settlement. In the new PeopleSoft release, the payment method cannot be changed for this type of transaction on the Settlements components, so you must select and/or approve all Fees and Bank Account Transfers before the upgrade. The payment method must be entered in all cases.

Selecting Settlements

To select settlements:

1. Select Cash Management, Settlements, Settlement Selection.
2. Select all settlements that are outstanding.

Approving Settlements

To approve settlements:

1. Select Cash Management, Settlements, Settlement Approval.
2. Approve all settlements that are outstanding.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Cash Management	All	All

Task 1-44-3: Deleting Duplicate Securities Data

In the new PeopleSoft release, the Key Field business unit has been deleted from the Securities definition. Therefore, if the same security definition has been set up under multiple business units, then the duplicate business units need to be identified and deleted.

To identify duplicate data:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager.
2. Run the following query:

```
UPG_TRU00
```

The results of this query display securities that have been set up under multiple business units. These Security IDs need to be deleted.

3. Log into the query tool of your choice.
4. Enter every Security ID that shows up in the query display for Bind Variable1.
Bind Variable2 is the Business Unit for the security data you wish to retain.
5. Run the following SQL:

```
DELETE FROM PS_TRX_SEC_HDR WHERE SECURITY_ID =:1 AND BUSINESS_UNIT <>:2;
```

```
DELETE FROM PS_TRX_SEC_MKTVAL WHERE SECURITY_ID =:1 AND BUSINESS_UNIT <>:2;
```

6. Rerun the SQL until all the duplicate data has been deleted.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Deal Management	All	All

Task 1-45: Reporting Row Count for Tables

You may find it helpful to run a report that identifies any table without rows, that is, any table not used in your production database. This information can help you determine whether to accept a change from the New Release Demo database. The UPGCOUNT process reports the row counts of all PeopleSoft tables in your database. You can find the resulting report (UPGCOUNT.LIS) in the TEMP directory specific to your machine.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 1-46: Preparing Your Database

This section discusses:

- Understanding Database Preparation
- Verify Database Integrity
- Clean the PSOBJCHNG Table
- Drop PeopleTools Tables
- Shrink Images
- Purge Message Queues

Understanding Database Preparation

In this task, you perform a variety of steps in preparation for the PeopleSoft PeopleTools upgrade. These steps prevent errors in tasks later in the upgrade.

Task 1-46-1: Verify Database Integrity

The DBCC CHECKDB command is run to perform a database consistency check on your Copy of Production database. A database consistency check ensures that your database platform environment is clean and minimizes any potential upgrade errors due to possible database corruption.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	MS SQL Server Sybase	All

Task 1-46-2: Clean the PSOBJCHNG Table

This step deletes all data stored in the PSOBJCHNG table, which contains all renamed records and fields. The data stored in the PSOBJCHNG table must be deleted before starting your upgrade. The build process looks in this table when running alter renames. Change Assistant will execute the following SQL:

```
DELETE FROM PSOBJCHNG
```

Note. Move to Production: If you rename records or fields later in your upgrade, you should expect to see rows in the PSOBJCHNG table at the end of the upgrade pass. During the Move to Production these rows will be copied from your old Copy of Production to your new Copy of Production. Thus, this step is not necessary during Move to Production.

See “Apply Application Changes,” Modifying the Database Structure.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 1-46-3: Drop PeopleTools Tables

In this step, you drop PeopleSoft PeopleTools tables to ensure the successful completion of your upgrade. You will drop the following tables, if they exist in your database, using the SQL tool of your choice.

Drop the following tables:

- PS_PSMCFQUEUESLANG

Note. The table, PS_PSMCFQUEUESLANG, contains no data and can be safely dropped. Do *not* drop the table PSMCFQUEUESLANG.

- PSOPTSTATUS

The table, PSOPTSTATUS, will be converted into a view and can be safely dropped. Do not drop the view PSOPTSTATUS.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-46-4: Shrink Images

If you have customized images stored in your database, you may need to shrink these images before updating PeopleSoft PeopleTools system tables later in the upgrade. Large image fields could cause that step to fail because it is not possible to bind long raw data that is longer than 32 KB.

To shrink images using a PeopleSoft PeopleTools release later than 8.44.14:

1. Launch Configuration Manager and select the Profile tab.
2. Select the profile for the upgrade database and click Edit.
3. Select the Common tab.
4. Select the option that is labeled either Convert and Shrink Images to Image Size Limit, or Convert DIB and BMP images to JPG.
5. Click OK.

Note. If you re-shrink images, select Don't Convert, but Shrink Images to Image Size Limit. Specify the number of bytes for the image size limit.

6. Launch Application Designer.
7. Select Tools, Upgrade, Convert Images...
8. Select Convert Static Images in Image Catalog.
9. Click Start to convert or shrink images.
10. Select Tools, Upgrade, Convert Images...
11. Select Convert Dynamic Images for fields. Select the box for all of the fields listed.
12. Click Start to convert or shrink images.

If you are using a PeopleSoft PeopleTools release earlier than 8.44.15, you will need to manually save and temporarily remove any custom images greater than 32 KB. Using your SQL query tool, run the following SQL to identify images greater than 32 KB:

```
-- CREATE A TABLE TO HOLD THE CONVERTED IMAGE
CREATE TABLE PS_CONVIMG (CONTNAME VARCHAR2(30), IMAGE SIZE BLOB);
-- LOAD CONVERTED DATA INTO THE TABLE
INSERT INTO PS_CONVIMG SELECT CONTNAME, TO_LOB(CONTDATA) FROM PSCONTDEFN;
-- RETRIEVE IMAGES OVER 32K
SELECT CONTNAME, DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH(IMAGE SIZE) IMAGE SIZE FROM PS_CONVIMG WHERE⇒
  DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH(IMAGE SIZE) > 32768;
```

To manually save images greater than 32 KB:

1. In Application Designer, insert your images into a project.
Select Insert, Definitions into Project.

2. Save the project.
3. Copy the images to file.
Select Tools, Upgrade, Copy Project to File.
4. Delete the rows for the images in your project from the PSCONTDEFN table.
5. When you are finished with the upgrade, copy the project from file to restore your custom images.
Select Tools, Upgrade, Copy Project from File.

See “Apply PeopleTools Changes,” Updating PeopleTools System Tables.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 1-46-5: Purge Message Queues

Ensure that all of your message transactions are complete before starting the upgrade. Message functionality and structure changed in the new release, which will prevent old messages from processing successfully.

This step runs the following Data Mover script (DMS), found in the *PS_HOME\SCRIPTS* directory of your old release codeline, on your Copy of Production database to purge your message queues:

```
APPMMSGPURGEALL.DMS
```

Warning! A script of the same name is found in the codeline of the release to which you are upgrading. Do not use this script; it will not run successfully.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-47: Backing Up Demo Databases

This section discusses:

- Backing Up Copy of Current Demo
- Backing Up New Release Demo

Task 1-47-1: Backing Up Copy of Current Demo

Back up your Copy of Current Demo database now. This upgrade requires you to run scripts on this database. Before the upgrade starts, you need to take a backup of this environment to preserve your Oracle-delivered demo implementation.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Copy of Current Demo	Initial	All	All	All

Task 1-47-2: Backing Up New Release Demo

Back up your New Release Demo database now. This upgrade requires you to run scripts on this database. Before the upgrade starts, you need to take a backup of this environment to preserve your Oracle-delivered demo implementation.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 1-48: Renaming Records and Fields

This section discusses:

- Understanding Renaming Records and Fields
- Running the RNEPUPJ14 Script
- Running the RNEPSPJ01 Script
- Running the RNEPGMJ01 Script
- Retaining the Target Rename Log Files
- Running RNEPUPJ14 Script on Copy of Current Demo
- Running RNEPSPJ01 Script on Copy of Current Demo
- Running RNEPGMJ01 Script on Copy of Current Demo

Understanding Renaming Records and Fields

During development of new releases, PeopleSoft sometimes renames records, fields, or specific occurrences of a field on a record (recfield renames). In this task, you will execute scripts to rename those same objects in your Copy of Production and in the Copy of Current Demo.

With these commands, Data Mover renames the objects in the record and field definitions in Application Designer and then logs an entry on the table PSOBJCHNG. It also changes all references to these objects in pages and PeopleCode. This will not rename the objects on the database tables at this time.

Later in the upgrade, you will generate the SQL that will alter the tables on the database. This alter process reads PSOBJCHNG and will rename these tables and fields. The SQL generated to perform that task will be different depending on the build options you select and your database platform, however the result is the same. For record renames, the old table no longer exists and the new table contains the data from the old tables. For field and recfield renames, any affected tables will contain the new column with data from the old column; the old column no longer exists on the tables.

If a field rename does not go through this process, the alter SQL will not recognize it as a rename. After the alter, both old and new columns exist on the table and a data conversion process is required to copy the data from the old column to the new. This is an important distinction to make.

Important! It is very important to resolve any errors with these rename scripts. Do not skip any lines that error. It is not possible to recover from missed renames. The consequences of skipping a rename are evident later in the upgrade when you are in the middle of running data conversion programs.

A few different things could happen: the conversion program could error because the PeopleSoft system is expecting only the new column on the table, but you have both old and new, or you may lose data. Because of the rename, the PeopleSoft system expects the data to be handled in the SQL alter process. If the data doesn't move in the SQL alter process, and you don't write a data conversion program to move the data, the process drops the old column without having copied the data to the new column.

There are several advantages to using this rename process. Any references to the renamed records or fields in your customizations will also be modified. The number of differences on the compare reports is reduced. The SQL alter moves the data from old to new efficiently and no additional data conversion steps are required.

Task 1-48-1: Running the RNEPUPJ14 Script

The RNEPUPJ14.dms script will rename records, fields, and recfields on the Copy of Production database. These renames should only execute during the initial upgrade pass, not the move to production passes.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 1-48-2: Running the RNEPSPJ01 Script

This script applies only to Services Procurement customers. The RNEPSPJ01.dms script will rename records and fields and recfields on the Copy of Production database.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 1-48-3: Running the RNEPGMJ01 Script

The RNEPGMJ01.dms script will rename records, fields, and recfields on the Copy of Production database. This script only applies if you have not applied Resolution #677037 or Financials Grants 8.4 SP2 Bundle #5 (Bundle Resolution #677198). These renames should only execute during the initial upgrade pass, not the move to production passes.

Follow the procedure below to edit your template so the script can run automatically.

To run the script automatically:

1. Select this step and open the Step Properties dialog box.
2. Change the Type from ManualStop to DataMoverUser, and click OK.
3. In your upgrade job, mark the step as Run.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 1-48-4: Retaining the Target Rename Log Files

In order to retain a copy of the log files for the preceding rename script steps run against the Copy of Production database, you must resave the logs for those steps with new file names. Otherwise, these logs will be overwritten by the following rename script steps run against the Copy of Current Demo database.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 1-48-5: Running RNEPUPJ14 Script on Copy of Current Demo

The RNEPUPJ14.DMS script will rename records, fields, and recfields on the Copy of Current Demo database. These renames should only execute during the initial upgrade pass, not the Move to Production passes. Run this script in Data Mover user mode.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Copy of Current Demo	Initial	All	All	All

Task 1-48-6: Running RNEPSPJ01 Script on Copy of Current Demo

This script applies only to Services Procurement customers. The RNEPSPJ01.DMS script will rename records and fields and recfields on the Copy of Current Demo database. Run this script in Data Mover user mode.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Copy of Current Demo	Initial	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 1-48-7: Running RNEPGMJ01 Script on Copy of Current Demo

The RNEPGMJ01.dms script will rename records, fields, and recfields on the Copy of Current Demo database. This script only applies to if you have not applied Resolution #677037 or Financials Grants 8.4 SP2 Bundle #5 (Bundle Resolution #677198). These renames should only execute during the initial upgrade pass, not the move to production passes.

Follow the procedure below to edit your template so the script can run automatically.

To run the script automatically:

1. Select this step and open the Step Properties dialog box.
2. Change the Type from *ManualStop* to *DataMoverUser*, and click OK.
3. In your upgrade job, mark the step as Run.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Copy of Current Demo	Initial	All	All	All

Task 1-49: Comparing Customizations

This section discusses:

- Modifying Compare Report Options
- Running Compare UPGCUST
- Running UPGCUST Filter Script
- Reviewing UPGCUST Compare Log
- Restoring Copy of Current Demo

Note. In this task, you identify customizations on the Copy of Production by running a database compare against the Copy of Current Demo database.

Task 1-49-1: Modifying Compare Report Options

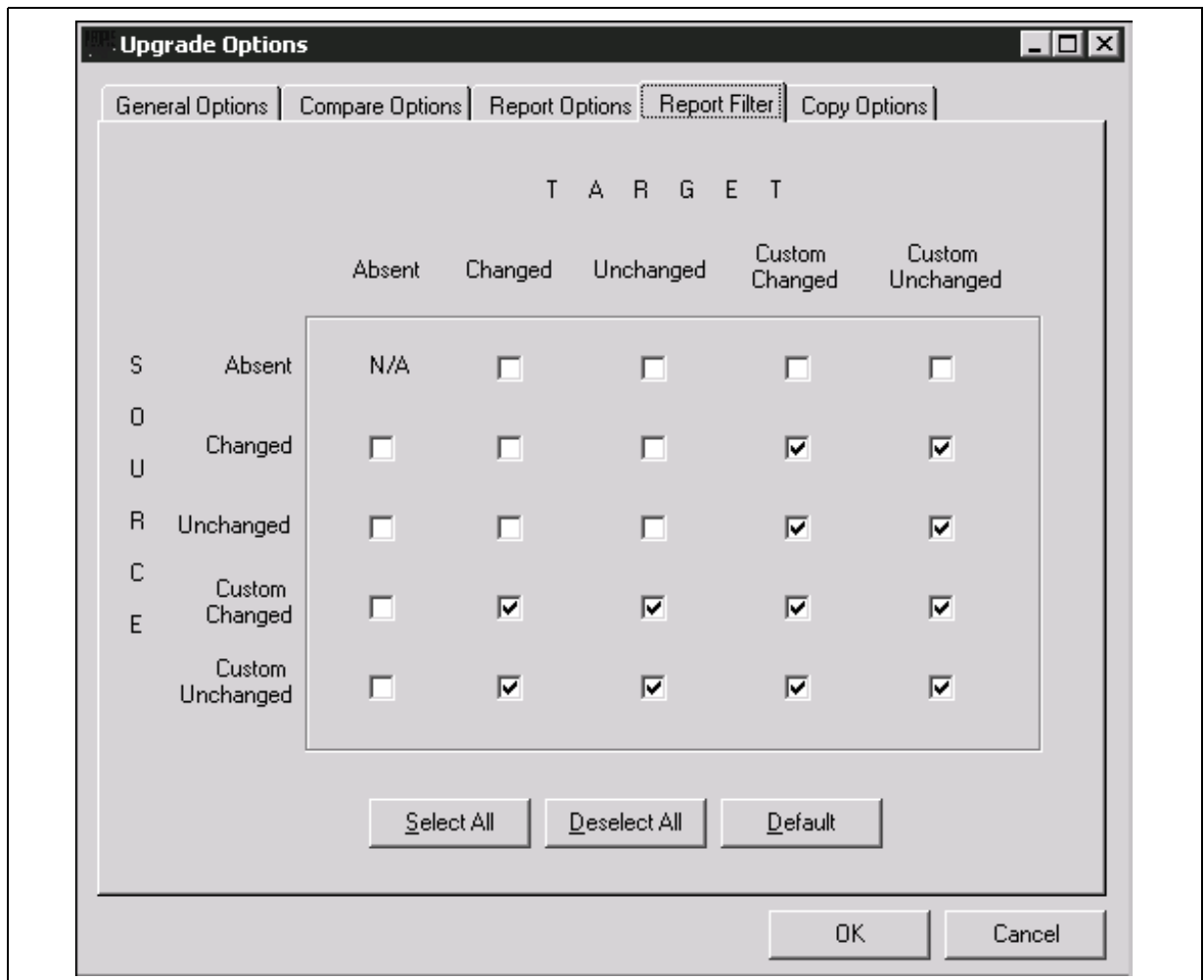
PeopleSoft Change Assistant templates are delivered with the default report filters turned on. This limits the size of the reports and keeps them manageable. Before you start the compare, review the compare options in your Change Assistant template step properties and modify them based on your specific requirements.

If you decide not to modify the compare options, the objects are still compared. However, the results are only available online in Application Designer, and are not written into the compare reports. The compare reports are tools to help you review changed objects. However, based on the report filters you select, you may need to review the action flags for other objects in the compare project in Application Designer.

For example, you can modify the compare options so the report contains customized objects that are present in your Copy of Production database but are absent from the Copy of Current Demo database. Alternatively, you can review these objects online, through Application Designer, after the database compare.

To modify the upgrade compare options:

1. Highlight the Run Compare UPGCUST step and right-click.
2. Select Step Properties
The Step Definition dialog box appears.
3. Click Upgrade.
The Compare and Report dialog box appears.
4. Click Options.
5. Select the Report Filter tab.
The default options include your custom changes on the reports.
6. Change the default options as necessary and click OK.



Upgrade Options page, Report Filter tab

7. In the Compare and Report dialog box, click OK.
8. In the Step Definition dialog box, click OK.
9. Select File, Save Job.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 1-49-2: Running Compare UPGCUST

This step creates a project on your Copy of Production database called UPGCUST and executes a database compare of all comparable object types. This compare is run to identify all customizations on the Copy of Production database. The database compare occurs between your Copy of Production and the Copy of Current Demo database. The following comparable object types are omitted from the comparison:

- Application packages.
- Application package PeopleCode.

- File reference type codes.
- IB queues.
- Java portlet user preferences.
- Messages.
- Message catalog entries.
- Message PeopleCode.
- Portal registry user favorites.
- Portal registry user home pages.
- Services
- Service operations.
- Service operations handlers.
- Service operation versions.
- Service operation routings.

Message catalog entries are exported and imported with Data Mover in a later step. Portal registry user home pages, portal registry user favorites, file reference type codes, and Java portlet user preferences remain in the Copy of Production environment and are not copied from the New Release Demo database. Integration Broker objects will be compared later in the upgrade.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Copy of Current Demo	Initial	All	All	All

Task 1-49-3: Running UPGCUST Filter Script

This step removes all objects from the UPGCUST project that are not marked **Changed* or **Unchanged* in your Copy of Production environment. It is used to isolate only custom objects in the UPGCUST project.

The script name for your upgrade is:

`PUUPX99.DMS`

See Appendix: “Using the Comparison Process.”

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 1-49-4: Reviewing UPGCUST Compare Log

In this step, review the log file and compare reports generated by the database compare in the previous step to ensure that it completed successfully. A detailed analysis of these compare reports is not necessary. Later in the upgrade, you will review a new set of compare reports when customizations are compared to the New Release Demo database.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 1-49-5: Restoring Copy of Current Demo

Restore your Copy of Current Demo database from the backup taken earlier in the upgrade. The backup was taken before rename scripts ran against the Copy of Current Demo. This is done to restore the environment to an Oracle-delivered demo implementation.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Copy of Current Demo	Initial	All	All	All

Task 1-50: Identifying Customizations

In this task, identify your modifications to Mass Change, EDI, Message Catalog, SQR Strings, XML Service Information, Verity Based Indexes, Setup Manager data, Pagelet Wizard objects, and related language system data, so that you can reload them later in the upgrade process.

The upgrade tasks will replace all Mass Change processes, Verity Based Indexes, and Setup Manager data. Only modifications to delivered Pagelet Wizard objects will be overwritten because any non-delivered custom Pagelet Wizard objects will be preserved during the upgrade. You cannot print Mass Change code. Be sure that you have extracted your modifications to reapply them later. You must extract your modifications, using cut and paste, to a file for manual reapplication later. EDI tables must be handled in the same way. Reload additional data and review customizations in Oracle-delivered data.

Message sets 0-19,999 will be overlaid during the upgrade, so any customizations you have made in this range will be lost. In addition, all SQR strings will be replaced. To save your customizations, cut and paste your changes to a file and manually reapply them.

Be aware that the data loaded by the PeopleSoft software must not be overwritten.

If you have multiple languages loaded, you should save any custom data you have in related language tables for system data. For these tables, data will be exported from the New Release Demo database when you export related language system data, and imported to your Copy of Production when you import related language system data. The import may delete your custom data, depending on the import option.

The tables that need to be reviewed are listed in the following scripts. These scripts can be found in your new release *PS_HOME\SCRIPTS* directory.

Important! The scripts below are delivered with and run from your new PeopleSoft release. These scripts are *not* run in this task. You will run these scripts later in the upgrade process.

Review the tables that will be overwritten in these scripts:

Tables	Script
Message Catalog	DLUPX01E.DMS
SQR Strings	DLUPX04E.DMS
EDI	DLUPX05E.DMS
Mass Change	DLUPX06E.DMS
XML Service Information	DLUPX13E.DMS
Setup Manager, Verity Based Indexes, and Optimization Models	DLUPX16E.DMS
Pagelet Wizard	DLUPX14E.DMS

If your database contains translations, review the list of related language system data tables that will be exported and imported in these scripts:

DLEPLASYSE.DMS
DLEPLASYSI.DMS

Note. Move to Production: Once you have reapplied these customizations at the end of your initial upgrade pass, you will not need to apply them again. The affected tables are moved from the old Copy of Production to the New Copy of Production by the scripts listed in the following table:

Tables	Scripts
Mass Change	MVAPPEXP.DMS MVAPPIMP.DMS
EDI	MVPRDEXP.DMS MVPRDIMP.DMS
Strings	MVAPPEXP.DMS MVAPPIMP.DMS
Messages	MVAPPEXP.DMS MVAPPIMP.DMS
XML Service Information	MVPRDEXP.DMS MVPRDIMP.DMS

Tables	Scripts
Setup Manager, Verity Based Indexes, and Optimization Models	MVAPPEXP.DMS MVAPPIMP.DMS
Pagelet Wizard	MVUPX16E.DMS

See Also

“Apply Application Changes,” Loading Data for Data Conversion.

“Apply Application Changes,” Loading Data to Complete System Setup.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 1-51: Preparing for the Application Upgrade

This section discusses:

- Creating a Copy of PS_INSTALLATION Table
- Creating a Copy of RecField Definitions
- Creating a Copy of DbField Definitions
- Deleting Old Pagelet Wizard Data
- Exporting Upgrade Setup Data
- Dropping Indexes
- Editing the System Data Swap Script
- Editing the PeopleTools Swap Script

Task 1-51-1: Creating a Copy of PS_INSTALLATION Table

This script saves the contents of PS_INSTALLATION to a temporary table (PS_UPG_INSTALL) to be used by data conversion programs. The PS_INSTALLATION table will be altered later in the upgrade. This script also saves a copy of the Set Control Record information, SET_CNTRL_REC, as it exists in the previous release. Running the script at this point in the upgrade preserves the prior structure and data in the temporary table. The script name is:

PUCGGLY31.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-51-2: Creating a Copy of RecField Definitions

This step creates a copy of the contents of PSRECFIELD, before the upgrade is begun. It is used by the data conversion code to determine the structure of tables that may have been impacted by fixes you applied.

The script name is:

PUUPX07.DMS

Note. If you previously upgraded your system you may need to drop PSRECFIELD_TMP before running this script.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-51-3: Creating a Copy of DbField Definitions

This step runs a script to save a copy of the table PSDBFIELD as PSDBFIELD_TMP. PSDBFIELD_TMP will be used during ChartField configuration to refer to field properties that existed prior to the upgrade.

The script name is:

PUEPFAU41.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 1-51-4: Deleting Old Pagelet Wizard Data

This step is only applicable if you have already upgraded your production application to PeopleTools 8.46 or greater.

In this step, you run a script to delete the Common Component Pagelet Wizard (PW) data to ensure that when the UPGPT846PP conversion program is run subsequently, the old existing Common Components Pagelet Wizard data is not re-entered into the PeopleTools Pagelet Wizard tables. If you do not run the script, then items that were removed from the PeopleTools version of Pagelet Wizard, but still exist in the Common Components version of Pagelet Wizard, will be copied back into the PeopleTools version when the UPGPT846PP conversion program is run.

The script also updates the Common Component portal option tables with the existing values in the PeopleTools portal options tables. If you do not run the script, then changes made to the current PeopleTools options tables may be overwritten with values from the Common Components portal options when the UPGPT846PP conversion program is run. The affected values include the default registry prefix, default owner ID, and the default style sheet.

Only run the script if *both* of the following conditions are met.

- Your current production application release database is *already* on PeopleTools 8.46 or greater.
- The table PS_EOPPB_LINKPATHS exists on the Target database.

If both of the above conditions are met, then run the following script:

```
PTPPB_EOPPB.DMS
```

To run the step automatically:

1. In Change Assistant, open your upgrade job.
2. In the task Preparing for the Application Upgrade, right-click on the step Deleting Old Pagelet Wizard Data, and select Step Properties.
3. In the Step Properties dialog box, change the Type from *ManualStop* to *DataMoverUser*, and click OK.
4. Select Edit, Run.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-51-5: Exporting Upgrade Setup Data

This script exports upgrade setup data and mapping values from your Copy of Production database during the Initial or Move to Production upgrade pass, to preserve them for subsequent upgrade passes. You had set up these values earlier in your Copy of Production database throughout various tasks in this chapter. You will load this information into your New Copy of Production in any future Move to Production passes.

The script name for your upgrade path is:

```
PUEP84EXP.DMS
```

You will need to preserve the corresponding DAT file in your current PS_HOME directory for use in subsequent Move to Production passes.

The DAT file name for your upgrade path is:

```
PUEP84EXP.DAT
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-51-6: Dropping Indexes

Drop the following indexes using the SQL tool of your choice. These tables are changing key structure and data conversion cannot update the new columns if these old indexes exist.

- PSMAPRECFIELD.PSAPSMAPRECFIELD
- PSMAPROLEBIND.PSAPSMAPROLEBIND

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 1-51-7: Editing the System Data Swap Script

This step should only be completed if your Copy of Production has a base language other than English. In a later step you will swap PeopleTools Managed Object tables that have related language on your New Release Demo database so that it is translated correctly when you copy to your Copy of Production. In this step, you edit the swap script located in your new release *PS_HOME* directory to set your New Release Demo database language to the same language as your Copy of Production.

To do this, follow the edit instructions in the script.

The swap system data script for your path is:

```
DLEPLASWAP.DMS
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	Non-English Base Language

Task 1-51-8: Editing the PeopleTools Swap Script

This step should only be completed if your Copy of Production has a base language other than English. In a later step you will swap all PeopleTools Managed Object tables that have related languages on your Demo Database so that it is translated correctly when you copy to your Copy of Production. In this step you edit the swap script to set your Demo database language to the same language as your Copy of Production.

To do this, follow the edit instructions in the script.

The swap script for your upgrade path is:

PT_RELEASE_SWAP.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	Non-English Base Language

Task 1-52: Backing Up After Prepare Your Database

Back up your Copy of Production database now. This enables you to restart your upgrade from this point, should you experience any database integrity problems during the remaining tasks in the upgrade process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

CHAPTER 2

Apply PeopleTools Changes

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding PeopleTools Changes
- Verifying Upgrade User
- Performing Script Modifications
- Updating PeopleTools System Tables
- Turning Off Change Control
- Loading Model Definition Data
- Loading Message Data
- Reviewing PeopleTools Objects
- Exporting and Copying Projects
- Populating Tablespace Data
- Building Updated PeopleTools Project
- Migrating Records to New Tablespaces
- Loading Base Data
- Loading Language Data
- Loading PeopleTools Data
- Loading PeopleTools Definition Group
- Converting PeopleTools Objects
- Creating PeopleTools Views
- Converting Integration Broker
- Setting Object Version Numbers
- Converting Database Data Types
- Backing Up After PeopleTools Upgrade

Understanding PeopleTools Changes

To implement a successful upgrade, you must apply the necessary PeopleSoft PeopleTools changes. This involves updating the following PeopleSoft PeopleTools features: system tables, copying and building projects, loading seed data, and converting objects. From this point forward, you run all steps using your newly installed version of the software.

Note. Unless otherwise indicated, all scripts can be found in your new release PeopleSoft codeline PS_HOME\SCRIPTS directory. The actual script name is indicated in the description of each step in uppercase letters.

Task 2-1: Verifying Upgrade User

In this task, you verify that the user performing the upgrade steps has proper permissions to complete the upgrade.

Ensure that your upgrade user has PeopleSoft administrator privileges. This allows access to the PeopleSoft portal to make necessary security changes for the upgrade and to run the Portal Application Engine upgrade program. You use this ID to update the security setting for your other users so they can sign on after the upgrade.

Warning! You must perform this step now using your old version of PeopleSoft PeopleTools. If you skip this step, or if your user has insufficient PeopleSoft administrator privileges, you will not be able to complete your upgrade. You cannot complete this step later in the upgrade process. Perform the following steps to grant administrator privileges now.

To grant your upgrade user PeopleSoft administrator privileges:

1. From the browser, select PeopleTools, Security, User Profiles, User Profiles.
2. Select the user ID for your upgrade user.
3. Select the Roles tab.
4. Add the role *PeopleSoft Administrator* if it is not already granted to your upgrade user.
5. Save the user profile.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: Security Administration for your new release.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 2-2: Performing Script Modifications

This section discusses:

- Understanding Script Modifications

- Update Configuration Manager Profile
- Run a DBTSFIX Report
- Edit the DBTSFIX Output Scripts
- Edit the GRANT Script
- Edit the PSLANGUAGES Script
- Edit the TLSUPGNONCOMP Script
- Edit the PTxxxTLS Scripts
- Edit the DB2 Scripts
- Edit Move to Production Import Scripts
- Edit Move to Production Password
- Edit the DDLDB2 Script
- Edit the DDLDBX Script
- Edit the DDLORA Script
- Edit the DDLIFX Script
- Edit the MSGTLSUPG Script
- Edit the Integration Broker Script
- Edit Multilingual Step Properties
- Edit Data Type Steps

Understanding Script Modifications

In this task, you perform preparation steps and make manual modifications to scripts delivered with your new PeopleSoft release. You must make the following modifications before proceeding with the remainder of your upgrade.

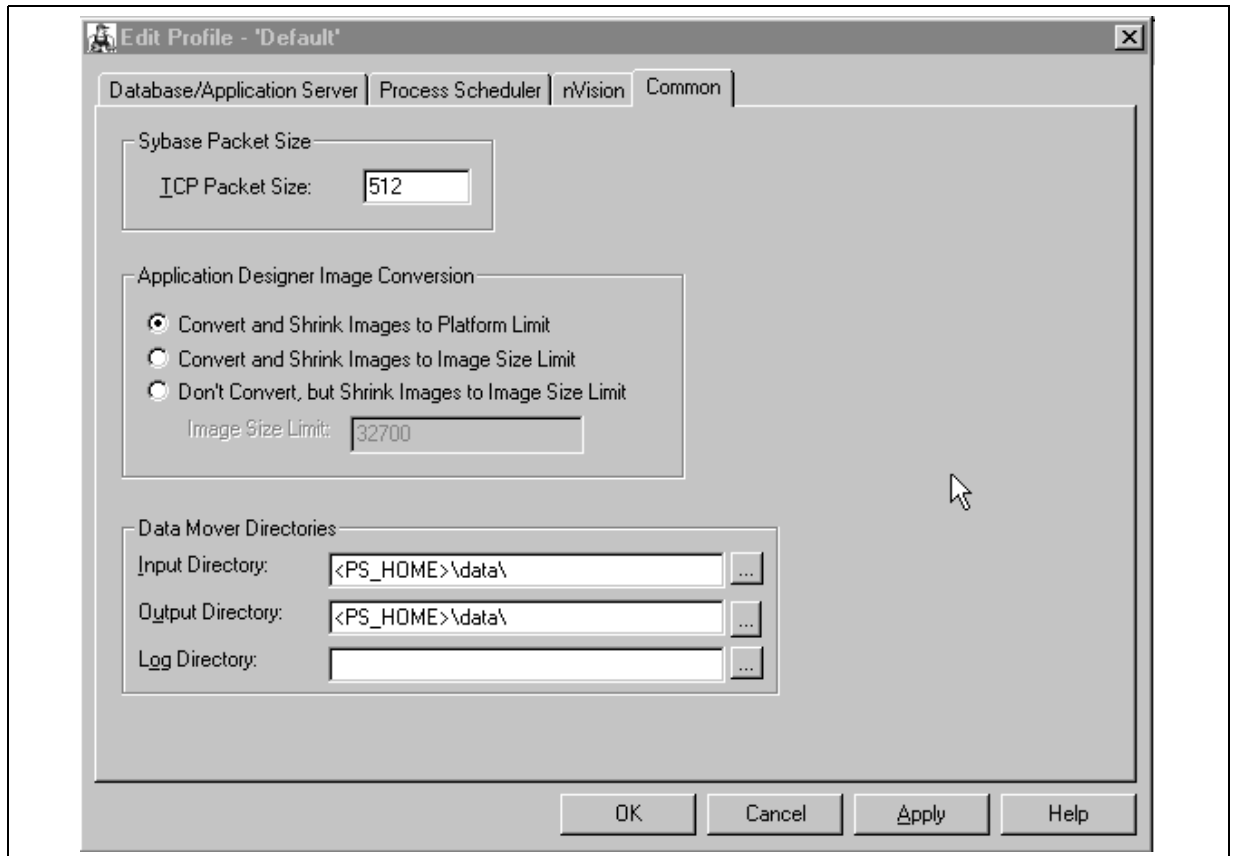
Note. Move to Production: These steps will be repeated in the Move to Production (MTP) pass. The script that you previously edited may be acceptable, or you may need to change it again if your New Copy of Production has a different security or data definition language (DDL) configuration.

Task 2-2-1: Update Configuration Manager Profile

The Configuration Manager default profile needs to be updated to use values for your new release PS_HOME. Change Assistant uses this information to run automated steps for the rest of the upgrade. These are settings on the workstation and you need to do this for each workstation that you may use during the upgrade.

To update the profile:

1. Open Configuration Manager.
2. On the Profile tab, select the Default profile, click Edit, and select the Common tab.



Edit Profile - Default dialog box: Common tab

Note. The Input Directory must be `<PS_HOME>\data\`, substituting `<PS_HOME>` with your directory. The Output Directory must be the same.

3. The Log Directory is set by Change Assistant and should be left as is.
4. Select the Process Scheduler tab and verify your SQR settings. Change Assistant will use these settings to launch SQR.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 2-2-2: Run a DBTSFIX Report

The DBTSFIX.SQR script aligns the tablespaces in the delivered release scripts with the Target database used during the upgrade. This process generates new release scripts, conforming to the RELxxxDBTSFIX.SQL naming convention that you run in a later task. Run this script to preserve your existing table-to-tablespace mapping in the Target database. The result of this task will be a RELxxxDBTSFIX.SQL script in which xxx represents a release number (for example, 800, 810, 811, 812, and so on) associated with your particular path.

Note. Before running this step, verify that the PS_HOME values are set correctly in the Change Assistant environment for your upgrade job. Change Assistant uses the PS_HOME information to determine which scripts need to be generated.

Important! Do not run the new release script at this point. You will be instructed to run this script later in the upgrade process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle Informix DB2 UNIX/NT DB2 z/OS	All

Task 2-2-3: Edit the DBTSFIX Output Scripts

Edit the generated RELxxxDBTSFIX scripts according to the comments within each script. Verify that the data definition language (DDL) is accurate for your environment for tablespaces, database names, owner IDs, and so forth. The scripts can be found in your Change Assistant output directory for this upgrade path.

Warning! Do not run output scripts at this time. At this point in the upgrade process, you must only review the DBTSFIX output scripts.

Note. For DB2 z/OS customers only: When upgrading from one PeopleSoft release to the next, it is possible to move tables from a tablespace using a 4-KB buffer pool to one using a 32-KB buffer pool. The tablespaces PSIMAGE and PSIMGR use 32-KB buffer pools in Oracle-delivered applications. To maintain the tablespace schema used at your site, the DBTSFIX.SQR script will revise the upgrade scripts with the database and tablespace information from your database (the Target database). Tables assigned to tablespaces PSIMAGE or PSIMGR in the upgrade scripts are the exception to this approach. Note that Oracle has reassigned some tables to PSIMAGE or PSIMGR because they now require a 32-KB buffer pool. You must manually edit the “Create Table” statements in the upgrade scripts to replace the tablespace name PSIMAGE or PSIMGR with an appropriate tablespace name in your implementation that utilizes a 32-KB buffer pool. The database name must also be replaced with the value corresponding to the tablespace you are using.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle Informix DB2 UNIX/NT DB2 z/OS	All

Task 2-2-4: Edit the GRANT Script

Edit `PS_HOME\SCRIPTS\GRANT.SQL` and make the necessary modifications as documented in the script.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 2-2-5: Edit the PSLANGUAGES Script

Edit `PS_HOME\SCRIPTS\PSLANGUAGES.DMS` and make the necessary modifications as documented in the script.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 z/OS	All

Task 2-2-6: Edit the TLSUPGNONCOMP Script

Edit `PS_HOME\SCRIPTS\TLSUPGNONCOMP.DMS` and make the necessary modifications as documented in the script.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 z/OS	All

Task 2-2-7: Edit the PTxxxTLS Scripts

This step applies only if you are running on a DB2 z/OS platform.

To edit the PTxxxTLS scripts:

1. Edit all of the scripts in the PS_HOME\SCRIPTS directory on the file server that conform to this file naming convention:

PTxxxTLS.DMS

PTxxxTLSyyy.DMS

The xxx represents a PeopleSoft PeopleTools release greater than your current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release and yyy represents the three-letter language code.

2. Uncomment and modify the set owner ID command within each script, as in the following example:

```
set execute_sql set current sqlid = 'OwnerId In Upper Case';
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 z/OS	All

Task 2-2-8: Edit the DB2 Scripts

Perform this step only if your database platform is DB2 z/OS. DB2 z/OS scripts that create tables need the `set current sqlid` statement so that the tables are created with the correct owner ID. Open each script listed below, then uncomment and modify all of the DB2-specific statements to reflect your environment.

For SQL scripts, if the script does not contain DB2-specific statements, add the following line to the top of the script and edit it for your environment:

```
set current sqlid = 'OWNERID (in uppercase)';
```

For Data Mover scripts (DMSs), if the script does not contain DB2-specific statements, add the following line to the top of the script and edit it for your environment:

```
set execute_sql set current sqlid = 'OWNERID (in uppercase)';
```

Following is a list of the scripts that you need to edit:

```
DB2TMPIDXCREATE.SQL
DLUPX02I.DMS
DLUPX13I.DMS
DLUPX14I.DMS
DLUPX96I.DMS
PT_RELEASE_IMPORT.DMS
DLEPSYSI.DMS
DLEPLASYSI.DMS
RNEPPLJ01DB2.SQL
RNEPPLJ02DB2.SQL
RNEPSPJ01DB2.SQL
RNEPSPJ02DB2.SQL
RNEPUPJ01DB2.SQL
RNEPUPJ02DB2.SQL
DLGFAQ19I.DMS
DLGGLU20I.DMS
```

DLCGUPY39I.DMS

DLCGUPY41I.DMS

Note. The DLUPX96I.DMS script will run on your Source database. Remember to edit this script for your Source database. All of the other scripts listed will run against the Target database.

In several steps in the upgrade process, project definitions are copied into the database. Any DB2 z/OS scripts that are built from these project definitions will need to be modified before you run them. Set the following steps in your Change Assistant job to a manual stop and edit the scripts for correct database/tablespace information. When you build the SQL scripts after copying the project, the database/tablespace names are the default values. You need to change these to the Target database specific values. To set a step as a manual stop in Change Assistant, highlight the step and select Edit, Stop from the menu bar.

Following is a list of the steps in chapter 4, “Apply Application Changes,” that you will need to set as a manual stop and the names of the scripts you need to edit:

- Run the UPG_CF_CONFIG Script (in the task Configuring ChartFields)
When you get to this step, edit the script UPG_CF_CONFIG.SQL
- Run the UPG_CF_RENAME Script (in the task Configuring ChartFields)
When you get to this step, edit the script UPG_CF_RENAME.SQL
- Run the Create Upgrade Tables Script (in the task Modifying the Database Structure)
When you get to this step, edit the script UPGCONVERT_CRTTBL.SQL

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 z/OS	All

Task 2-2-9: Edit Move to Production Import Scripts

Perform this step only if your database platform is DB2 z/OS.

During the Move to Production, there are several scripts that export data from the previous Copy of Production to the New Copy of Production. These scripts export the tables to a DAT file. When the tables are exported, all the table attributes, including the database-specific information (table owner, database name, and tablespace name), are stored in the DAT file. When you run the import script, it tries to create the tables and indexes using the database-specific information from the DAT file. So even though you ran the import script against your Copy of Production, you would still create tables in the upgraded database (which is the Source database for the Move to Production step). To create the tables in the Target database, open each script listed below, then uncomment and modify all of the DB2-specific statements to reflect your environment.

You will also need to add the following command into MVPRDIMP.DMS, near the end of the script, just after the REPLACE_DATA PSSTATUS command, but before the REPLACE_VIEW PSTEMPBTBLCNTVW command, to change *ownerid* to the owner ID of your database.

```
Update PSSTATUS set OWNERID='OWNERID (in uppercase)';
```

Following is a list of the scripts that you need to edit:

MVAPPIMP.DMS

MVPRDIMP.DMS

```
MVCGFAU25I.DMS
MVEP84IMP.DMS
MVCgupY27I.DMS
```

If you prefer, you can copy these overrides from the `xxDMODBO.DMS` script that was generated from DBSetup while installing your database. Make sure you remove the `SET NO RECORD` if you copy from the DBSetup generated file.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: Data Management for your new release.

See “Apply Changes to Production Database,” Performing the Move to Production.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	MTP	All	DB2 z/OS	All

Task 2-2-10: Edit Move to Production Password

If your access ID and access password are different in the Copy of Production database than in the New Copy of Production database, you need to reset the access password in the `MVPRDIMP.DMS` script.

To modify passwords in your New Copy of Production database, append the following to your `MVPRDIMP.DMS` script and replace `ownerID`, `accessID`, and `accesspswd` with your values in the New Copy of Production database:

```
UPDATE PSSTATUS set OWNERID = 'ownerID';
UPDATE PSACCESSPRFL SET ACCESSID = 'accessID',
ACCESSPSWD = 'accesspswd', ENCRYPTED = 0;
ENCRYPT_PASSWORD *;
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	MTP	All	All	All

Task 2-2-11: Edit the DDLDB2 Script

Edit `PS_HOME\SCRIPTS\DDLDB2.DMS`. At the bottom of this script, you will see an insert into `PSDDLDEFPARMS`. This insert contains default information used when creating a table, an index, a unique index, or a tablespace. Verify with your database administrator that the last value for each row is appropriate for your environment by checking the values currently stored in your `PSDDLDEFPARMS` table. Otherwise, the values will be reset to the default values delivered by Oracle in this script.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 z/OS	All

Task 2-2-12: Edit the DDLDBX Script

Edit `PS_HOME\SCRIPTS\DDLDBX.DMS`. At the bottom of this script, you will see an insert into `PSDDLDEFPARMS`. This insert contains default information used when creating a table, an index, a unique index, or a tablespace. Verify with your database administrator that the last value for each row is appropriate for your environment by checking the values currently stored in your `PSDDLDEFPARMS` table. Otherwise, the values will be reset to the default values delivered by Oracle in this script.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 UNIX/NT	All

Task 2-2-13: Edit the DDLORA Script

Edit `PS_HOME\SCRIPTS\DDLORA.DMS`. At the bottom of this script, you will see an insert into `PSDDLDEFPARMS`. This insert contains default information used when creating a table, an index, a unique index, or a tablespace. Verify with your database administrator that the last value for each row is appropriate for your environment by checking the values currently stored in your `PSDDLDEFPARMS` table. Otherwise, the values will be reset to the default values delivered by Oracle in this script.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-2-14: Edit the DDLIFX Script

Edit `PS_HOME\SCRIPTS\DDLIFX.DMS`. At the bottom of this script, you will see an insert into `PSDDLDEFPARMS`. This insert contains default information used when creating a table, an index, a unique index, or a tablespace. Verify with your database administrator that the last value for each row is appropriate for your environment by checking the values currently stored in your `PSDDLDEFPARMS` table. Otherwise, the values will be reset to the default values delivered by Oracle in this script.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Informix	All

Task 2-2-15: Edit the MSGTLSUPG Script

Edit `PS_HOME\SCRIPTS\MSGTLSUPG.DMS` and make the necessary modifications as documented in the script.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 z/OS	All

Task 2-2-16: Edit the Integration Broker Script

Edit `PS_HOME\SCRIPTS\PTIBUPGRADE.DMS` and make the necessary modifications as documented in the script. User level node security and transactional security have been added as of PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.48. Service namespace information, a low-level user on the node, and a low-level permission list for service operations, need to be specified. Consult with your Integration Broker specialist for assistance.

Note. If you are upgrading from PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.48 or later, this step and all of the steps in the task “Converting Integration Broker” do not need to be run because the Integration Broker conversion has already been performed. You need to mark all of these steps as complete in your upgrade job. If you don’t mark these steps as complete, the upgrade will try to unnecessarily reconvert your objects.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-2-17: Edit Multilingual Step Properties

In this step, you will edit the Change Assistant step properties for the multilingual PeopleSoft PeopleTools project copy step (or steps). Copy only the translated objects for the languages you license. This prevents the translated objects for unlicensed languages from copying over. You will copy any multilingual projects later in the upgrade process.

Depending on which languages you license, you will need to complete the following instructions once or twice. If you license any of these languages—Arabic, Czech, Danish, Finnish, French, Hebrew, Hungarian, Norwegian, Polish, Russian, or Turkish—perform the following instructions for the step “Export and Copy PPLTLSML Project.” If you license any of these languages—Canadian French, Dutch, German, Greek, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Malay, Portuguese, Simplified Chinese, Spanish, Swedish, Traditional Chinese, or Thai—perform the following instructions for the step “Export and Copy PPLTLS84CURML Project.”

To edit multilingual step properties:

1. In Change Assistant, select the step.
2. Open the Step Properties dialog box.
3. Click the Upgrade button, and then click the Options button.
4. On the Copy Options tab, deselect any languages that you do not license.
Common and English should remain deselected.
5. Click OK three times.
6. Save the template in Change Assistant.

See Export and Copy PPLTLS84CURML Project.

See Export and Copy PPLTLSML Project.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All Non-English

Task 2-2-18: Edit Data Type Steps

For PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.48 and later, new data types are supported for Microsoft SQL Server 2005 or later and Oracle. These data type changes are only available for use in conjunction with PeopleSoft application release 9.0 or later. If you have already converted data types or are upgrading to a PeopleSoft application release earlier than 9.0, you must mark these steps as complete in the template now. Do *not* run these steps unnecessarily.

To set the Data Conversion steps as complete:

1. In Change Assistant, select all the steps within the task Converting Database Data Types.
2. Press the F7 key.
3. Save the upgrade job in Change Assistant.

See Converting Database Data Types.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	MS SQL Server Oracle	All

Task 2-3: Updating PeopleTools System Tables

This section discusses:

- Understanding Updating PeopleTools System Tables

- Clean Up Message Data
- Update System Catalog Views
- Update PeopleTools System Tables
- Grant Privileges to the CONNECT ID
- Update the Product License Code
- Update PeopleTools Patch Information
- Create Temporary Performance Indexes
- Export PeopleTools System Tables
- Import PeopleTools System Tables
- Reset Database Options Flag
- Rerun Update Statistics for DB2 zOS
- Rerun RUNSTATS Report for DB2 UNIX NT
- Rerun Update Statistics for DB2 UNIX NT
- Rerun Update Statistics for Informix
- Rerun Update Statistics for Oracle

Understanding Updating PeopleTools System Tables

In this task, you update your PeopleSoft PeopleTools system tables by running various scripts.

Important! From this point forward, run all steps using the new release of PeopleSoft PeopleTools on your Copy of Production database, unless otherwise indicated.

Task 2-3-1: Clean Up Message Data

If you are upgrading from PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.48 or later, mark this step as complete in your upgrade job and continue with the rest of the upgrade. Do *not* perform any deletes in this step as you will wipe out current valid data that is needed for your system to function properly.

If you are upgrading from PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.47 or earlier, perform this step to clean out obsolete message data. Message functionality and structure changed as of PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.48 and the old data is obsolete. Edit PS_HOME\SCRIPTS\PTUPGIBDEL.SQL to delete data from the tables that only exist in the old PeopleSoft PeopleTools release. Open the script and make the following modifications:

1. Search for the string “--- End of PT8.xx ---” in which *xx* represents the last two digits of the PeopleSoft PeopleTools release you are upgrading from.
2. Delete the entire portion of the script below this string.
3. Save the script as PS_HOME\SCRIPTS\PTUPGIBDEL8xx.SQL in which *xx* represents the last two digits of the PeopleSoft PeopleTools release you are upgrading from, as determined in Step 1.

Important! Save the script using the naming convention shown above. This will preserve the original script for use in updating other databases at different PeopleSoft PeopleTools releases, and assist in running the script automatically.

Follow this procedure to edit your template so that the script can run automatically:

1. Select this step and open the Step Properties dialog box.
2. Change the Script/Procedure value from PTUPGIBDEL8xx to the specific name that you used in Step 3 without the .SQL extension.
3. Change the type from ManualStop to SQLScript, and click OK.
4. In your upgrade job, mark the step as Run.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 2-3-2: Update System Catalog Views

This step runs the UPDOBJ.SQL script, which re-creates system catalog views that both DataMover and PeopleSoft PeopleTools use.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	MS SQL Server	All

Task 2-3-3: Update PeopleTools System Tables

Release scripts are SQL scripts that modify the underlying table structure of a database so that it is compatible with a more recent PeopleSoft PeopleTools release. They are located in the PS_HOME\SCRIPTS directory. Release scripts can be identified by their common naming standard, RELxxx.SQL, in which xxx designates a PeopleSoft PeopleTools release number.

These release (REL) scripts alter and update your PeopleSoft PeopleTools tables to the current release. Change Assistant determines which RELxxx scripts to run based on the PeopleSoft PeopleTools release of your Source and Target databases.

If you created RELxxxDBTSFIX (in which xxx is a PeopleSoft PeopleTools release) earlier in your upgrade, the procedure will look at your Output folder and will know to run RELxxxDBTSFIX. If you did not run DBTSFIX, Change Assistant will run RELxxx.

Note. Before running this step, verify that the PS_HOME values are set correctly in the Change Assistant environment for your upgrade job. Your new release PS_HOME/SCRIPTS directory should contain all scripts that will be run during this step. This step runs at least one script. Do not proceed to the next step until these scripts run successfully.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Software Updates for your new release.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 2-3-4: Grant Privileges to the CONNECT ID

This step runs the GRANT.SQL script. This script grants select access to the connect ID for tables necessary for sign on.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 2-3-5: Update the Product License Code

This section discusses:

- Understanding the Product License Code
- Updating the Product License Code

Understanding the Product License Code

The new PeopleSoft release stores your application product license code on the database. This code is used to unlock the pages and Application Engine programs that you licensed. It also provides necessary product information about your database to be used for identifying software maintenance that may need to be applied.

You need to populate the databases that were upgraded to the new PeopleSoft release so that you have the correct access to pages and Application Engine programs that you licensed.

When your new PeopleSoft databases were installed, the appropriate application license code was added to your database in the PSOPTIONS table. This was done in an update statement that was created when DBSETUP was run to create the Data Mover script for the new PeopleSoft release. The location of this script is:

```
PS_HOME\SCRIPTS\DBnameDBplatform.DMS
```

DBname is the name of the Demo database you installed and *DBplatform* represents the database platform using the following chart:

Database Platform	Code Used
Microsoft SQL Server	MSS
DB2 UDB z/OS	DB2
DB2 UDB UNIX/NT	DBX
Oracle	ORA

Database Platform	Code Used
Informix	INF
Sybase	SYB

Updating the Product License Code

Follow the steps below to update your product license code.

To update the product license code:

1. From the Data Mover script that was created for your new PeopleSoft database installation, copy out the update to PSOPTIONS.

The statement should look similar to this:

```
update PSOPTIONS set LICENSE_CODE = 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx', LICENSE_⇒
GROUP = 'xx' ;
```

where 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx' equals your license code and 'xx' equals your license group.

2. Run the SQL command identified above using your SQL tool.

Your database is now updated with the appropriate license code. You can now access the pages and Application Engine programs that you licensed.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-3-6: Update PeopleTools Patch Information

In this step, you update your database with the version of the PeopleSoft PeopleTools patch being applied.

Note. You only need to run this step if you are applying a PeopleSoft PeopleTools patch as part of the upgrade process.

Log on to Data Mover in user mode and run the %PS_HOME\SCRIPTS\PTPATCH.DMS script.

Review the PeopleSoft PeopleTools patch instructions and perform any additional database upgrade instructions that may be listed prior to the copy of the patch project. The patch project will be copied later during the upgrade.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-3-7: Create Temporary Performance Indexes

Perform this step only if you are running on a DB2 z/OS platform. This step runs the DB2TMPIDXCREATE script to create multiple indexes for rename performance. You will drop these indexes later in the upgrade process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	DB2 z/OS	All

Task 2-3-8: Export PeopleTools System Tables

The script for this step exports the content of the PeopleSoft PeopleTools tables from the Copy of Production database during your Move to Production passes. During the initial pass, you run programs to convert some objects, like PeopleCode and fields. You perform analysis to decide which objects, such as records and menus, to bring over to your production database and which customized objects to keep. At the end of the initial pass, you reapply customizations or make other changes, such as modifying your permission lists. You do not need to repeat those tasks in the Move to Production pass because this script exports all of your changes to the PeopleSoft PeopleTools objects.

The script name for your upgrade path is:

MVPRDEXP.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	MTP	All	All	All

Task 2-3-9: Import PeopleTools System Tables

The script for this step imports the content of the PeopleSoft PeopleTools tables into your New Copy of Production database during your Move to Production passes.

These MVPRD* scripts replace tasks and steps performed in the initial pass. These tasks and steps may include:

- Renaming Records and Fields
- Running New Release Compare Reports
- Running New Release Upgrade Copy

If your RDBMS uses tablespaces, edit this script for the proper DDL information.

The script name for your upgrade path is:

MVPRDIMP.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	MTP	All	All	All

Task 2-3-10: Reset Database Options Flag

This step runs UPGDBOPTIONS_DISABLE.SQL, which resets the PSSTATUS.UPGDBOPTIONS flag. The flag is reset only for upgrades where you are coming from a PeopleSoft application release prior to 9.0 and going to a PeopleSoft application release of 9.0 or later with PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.48 or later. The PeopleSoft PeopleTools upgrade must be applied using the old data types as the data type conversion will occur after the PeopleSoft PeopleTools changes have been completed.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	MTP	All	MS SQL Server Oracle	All

Task 2-3-11: Rerun Update Statistics for DB2 z/OS

Earlier in the upgrade process, you updated your statistics for DB2 z/OS. Due to changes in the database structure, you must update statistics again to improve the performance of your compare and copy. Contact your database administrator to have the statistics updated on your database before proceeding with your upgrade.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 z/OS	All

Task 2-3-12: Rerun RUNSTATS Report for DB2 UNIX NT

This script creates the RUNSTATS.DAT file for the script to update the statistics for DB2 UDB on UNIX, Linux, or Windows.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 UNIX/NT	All

Task 2-3-13: Rerun Update Statistics for DB2 UNIX NT

Earlier in the upgrade process, you updated your statistics for DB2 UDB on UNIX, Linux, or Windows. Due to changes in the database structure, you must update statistics again to improve the performance of your compare and copy. This step runs `RUNSTATS .SQL` to update statistics on your database.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 UNIX/NT	All

Task 2-3-14: Rerun Update Statistics for Informix

Earlier in the upgrade process, you updated your statistics for Informix. Due to changes in the database structure, you must update statistics again to improve the performance of your compare and copy. This step runs `UPDATESTATS` to update statistics on your database.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Informix	All

Task 2-3-15: Rerun Update Statistics for Oracle

Earlier in the upgrade process, you updated your statistics for Oracle. Due to changes in the database structure, you must update statistics again to improve the performance of your compare and copy. Contact your database administrator to have the statistics updated on your database before proceeding with your upgrade.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-4: Turning Off Change Control

This task executes a SQL statement that turns off the Change Control feature to improve performance for the upgrade copy. One of the tasks for completing database changes will remind you to turn this feature on again, if you want to use it.

Note. Move to Production: The Change Control feature slows down copy functions. The large copy projects are executed only during the initial pass and the feature is disabled only for the initial pass.

See “Complete Database Changes,” Reviewing Change Control.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-5: Loading Model Definition Data

This section discusses:

- Understanding Model Definition Data Load Process
- Load Model Definitions for DB2 zOS
- Load Model Definitions for DB2 UNIX NT
- Load Model Definitions for Oracle
- Load Model Definitions for Informix
- Load Model Definitions for Microsoft
- Load Model Definitions for Sybase

Understanding Model Definition Data Load Process

In this task, you load model definition scripts for your database platform and populate DDL model definitions. This step runs the DDL model definition script applicable to your database platform. If required by your database platform, you modified this script in the task “Performing Script Modifications,” to use your site-specific information.

See Performing Script Modifications.

Task 2-5-1: Load Model Definitions for DB2 zOS

This step runs the DDLDB2.DMS script to populate DDL model definitions for the DB2 z/OS platform.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 z/OS	All

Task 2-5-2: Load Model Definitions for DB2 UNIX NT

This step runs the DDLDBX.DMS script to populate DDL model definitions for DB2 UDB on UNIX, Linux, or Windows.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 UNIX/NT	All

Task 2-5-3: Load Model Definitions for Oracle

This step runs the DDLORA.DMS script to populate DDL model definitions for the Oracle platform.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-5-4: Load Model Definitions for Informix

This step runs the DDLIFX.DMS script to populate DDL model definitions for the Informix platform.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Informix	All

Task 2-5-5: Load Model Definitions for Microsoft

This step runs the DDLMSS.DMS script to populate DDL model definitions for the Microsoft SQL Server.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	MS SQL Server	All

Task 2-5-6: Load Model Definitions for Sybase

This step runs the DDLSYB.DMS script to populate DDL model definitions for the Sybase platform.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Sybase	All

Task 2-6: Loading Message Data

This step loads system messages in the message catalog.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-7: Reviewing PeopleTools Objects

Run this task to identify any PeopleSoft PeopleTools objects that you have customized. This task only identifies the customized PeopleTools objects. You still must overwrite the customized objects with the new PeopleSoft PeopleTools definitions when you copy the project.

During the upgrade process, you copy PeopleSoft PeopleTools objects into your database. PeopleSoft PeopleTools functionality, such as Security, is built using PeopleSoft PeopleTools objects and it is possible that you could have modified the objects that make up a product like Security.

Warning! Do not change the delivered PeopleSoft PeopleTools objects. The delivered objects are integral to the smooth operation of your system, and the modification of these objects could cause system instability.

When you perform the copy of the PeopleSoft PeopleTools projects during the upgrade, you may overwrite modifications that you have made. Excluding any PeopleSoft PeopleTools-delivered objects from the upgrade may result in instability due to dependencies on specific objects.

To review PeopleSoft PeopleTools objects:

1. Open the PPLTLS84CUR project on your Source database.
 - a. Launch Application Designer and sign on to the Demo (Source) database.
 - b. Select File, Open...
 - c. In the Definition field, select Project and click Open to display a list of projects.
 - d. Select the PPLTLS84CUR project and click Open.
2. If the PPLTLS84CUR project does not exist on your Demo (Source) database, then copy the project definition; otherwise continue to the next step.
 - a. Select Tools, Copy Project, From File...
 - b. In the resulting dialog box, change the import directory to *PS_HOME\PROJECTS*, select PPLTLS84CUR from the list of projects and click the Open button.
 - c. The Copy dialog box appears. Click the Deselect All button and then click the Copy button.
When the progress dialog disappears, the project definition has been copied.
3. On your Source database, make a copy of the PPLTLS84CUR project and name it PPLTLS84CURCOMP.
You will use this project for the compare process.
 - a. If the PPLTLS84CUR project is not open, open it now.
 - b. Select File, Save Project As...
 - c. Name the project PPLTLS84CURCOMP.
4. On your Source database, perform a project compare of the PPLTLS84CURCOMP project against your Target database.
 - a. If the PPLTLS84CURCOMP project is not open, open it now.
 - b. Select Tools, Compare and Report...
 - c. Sign on to the Target database.
 - d. Verify that all object types are selected.
 - e. Select Options...
 - f. On the Compare Options tab, select Compare Type of Project.
 - g. Select a value for Target Orientation.
 - h. For Comparison by Release, select the highest release in the list.
 - i. Under Compare Languages, select Common and English.
 - j. If you have non-English languages loaded, select the other languages loaded into your database.
 - k. Select the Report Filter tab and click Default.
This will cause only customizations to appear on the compare reports.
 - l. Click OK.
 - m. Click Compare to start the compare process.

Note. To preserve the PPLTLS84CURCOMP compare reports, you must perform one of the following actions: 1) rename the reports, 2) move the reports to a different folder, or 3) reset the Compare Report Output Directory: Within Application Designer, select Tools, Options. On the General tab, change the path specified for the Report Output Directory.

5. Evaluate the compare reports to identify whether the delivered objects conflict with any of your customizations.

You will overwrite the customized objects with the new PeopleSoft PeopleTools definitions when you copy the PeopleSoft PeopleTools projects in a later task. You must not make any modifications that will affect PeopleSoft PeopleTools objects when reimplementing your customizations after the upgrade.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-8: Exporting and Copying Projects

This section discusses:

- Understanding Exporting and Copying Projects
- Export and Copy PPLTLS84CUR Project
- Export and Copy PPLTLS84CURML Project
- Export and Copy PPLTLSML Project
- Export and Copy PPLTLS84CURDEL Project
- Export and Copy PATCH84X Project
- Export and Copy PATCH84XML Project

Understanding Exporting and Copying Projects

In this task, you export and copy projects.

Oracle recommends that you verify the results of all copied projects. After a project has been copied, each object is identified with a checkmark in the Done column. You can view these results from the Upgrade tab in Application Designer. It is also recommended that you copy the PeopleSoft PeopleTools projects with the take action flags set as they originally were set when the database was delivered.

Note. If you are running Sybase, check the configuration parameter for “open objects.” If this parameter is set too low, you may encounter the following error: `ct_connect(): network packet layer: internal net library error` during the compare or copy process. If you encounter this error, you will need to increase your parameter accordingly.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Application Designer for your new release.

Task 2-8-1: Export and Copy PPLTLS84CUR Project

This process copies specified objects to the database that are necessary for the proper operation of PeopleSoft PeopleTools. The PPLTLS84CUR project contains all PeopleSoft PeopleTools objects that have been created or updated since PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.40 was released.

Before the copy of records and fields, the upgrade process detects if the object definition exists or not. The PPLTLS84CUR project is delivered with an action of CopyProp to prevent the possible overwrites of custom field labels and recfields. When the upgrade process detects that a given field or record does not exist, it changes that action so that the entire definition can be copied. You can ignore any errors that you may receive at this time similar to the following examples:

```
Changed Action from CopyProp to Copy, definition does not exist on target.
Definition Name: OBJECTNAME not copied, entire definition already copied.
```

These warnings occur because the PeopleSoft PeopleTools project contains fields along with their field label. This is necessary so that the software does not overwrite any customized field labels on PeopleSoft field objects.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-8-2: Export and Copy PPLTLS84CURML Project

This process copies language-specific PeopleSoft PeopleTools objects to the database that are necessary for the proper operation of PeopleSoft PeopleTools.

Before the copy of records and fields, the upgrade process detects if the object definition exists or not. The PPLTLS84CURML project is delivered with an action of CopyProp to prevent the possible overwrites of custom field labels. When the upgrade process detects that a given field does not exist, it changes that action so that the entire definition can be copied. You can ignore any errors that you may receive at this time similar to the following example:

```
Changed Action from CopyProp to Copy, definition does not exist on target.
Definition Name: OBJECTNAME not copied, entire definition already copied.
```

This warning occurs because the PeopleSoft PeopleTools project contains fields along with their field label. This is necessary so that the software does not overwrite any customized field labels on PeopleSoft field objects.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	Canadian French Dutch Greek German Italian Japanese Korean Portuguese Simplified Chinese Spanish Swedish Traditional Chinese Thai Malay

Task 2-8-3: Export and Copy PPLTLSML Project

This process copies language-specific PeopleSoft PeopleTools objects to the database that are necessary for the proper operation of PeopleSoft PeopleTools.

Before copying records and fields, the upgrade process detects whether the object definition exists. The PPLTLSML project is delivered with an action of `CopyProp` to prevent the possible overwrites of custom field labels and recfields. When the upgrade process detects that a given field or record does not exist, it changes that action so that the entire definition can be copied. You can ignore any errors that you may receive at this time similar to the following examples:

```
Changed Action from CopyProp to Copy, definition does not exist on target.
Definition Name: OBJECTNAME not copied, entire definition already copied.
```

These warnings occur because the PeopleSoft PeopleTools project contains fields along with their field labels. This is necessary so that the PeopleSoft system does not overwrite any customized field labels on PeopleSoft field objects.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	Arabic Czech Danish Finnish French Hebrew Hungarian Norwegian Polish Russian Turkish

Task 2-8-4: Export and Copy PPLTLS84CURDEL Project

This process deletes specified PeopleSoft PeopleTools objects from your database.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-8-5: Export and Copy PATCH84X Project

This process copies specified objects to the database that are necessary for the proper operation of PeopleSoft PeopleTools.

Note. Perform this process only if you are applying a PeopleSoft PeopleTools patch that includes a database project. Check the patch documentation to verify whether a database project was delivered with the patch.

Use Application Designer to perform the following steps.

To export and copy the project:

1. Log on to your Target database as a valid user.
2. Select Tools, Copy Project, From File...
3. In the Import Directory field, enter *PS_HOME\PROJECTS*.
4. Select the PATCH84X project from the list, in which 84X corresponds to the PeopleSoft PeopleTools release of the patch project.

This should correspond with the PeopleSoft PeopleTools release to which you are upgrading.

5. Select Options; select the languages Common and English *only*.
6. Select Copy to begin copying updated PeopleSoft PeopleTools objects to your database.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-8-6: Export and Copy PATCH84XML Project

This process copies language-specific PeopleSoft PeopleTools objects to your database that are necessary for the proper operation of PeopleSoft PeopleTools.

Note. Perform this process only if you are applying a PeopleSoft PeopleTools patch that includes a database project. Check the patch documentation to verify whether a multilingual database project was delivered with the patch.

Use Application Designer to perform the following steps.

To export and copy the project:

1. Log on to your Target database as a valid user.
2. Select Tools, Copy Project, From File...
3. In the Import Directory field, enter *PS_HOME\PROJECTS*.
4. Select the PATCH84XML project from the list, where 84X represents the PeopleSoft PeopleTools release of the patch project.

This should correspond to the PeopleSoft PeopleTools release to which you are upgrading.

5. Click Options, and then select the Copy Options tab and verify that only the non-English languages that are installed are selected.

Note. The languages English and Common should not be selected.

6. Click OK.
7. Click Copy.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All Non-English

Task 2-9: Populating Tablespace Data

This section discusses:

- Create Application Tablespaces
- Populate Tablespace Data
- Update Tablespace Names

Task 2-9-1: Create Application Tablespaces

During each Move to Production pass, you must create any new tablespaces. You can reuse the same script created during the initial pass when you created new tablespaces, or you can build a new one if you plan to use different tablespaces on your production system.

See “Apply Application Changes,” Updating Database Overrides, Create New Tablespaces.

The script supplied by Oracle to create tablespaces for your upgrade is:

```
EPDDL.SQL (EPDDL.U.SQL for DB2 z/OS Unicode)
```

Important! For DB2 UNIX/NT sites, the script name is EPDDL.DMS.SQL for ANSI, and EPDDL.DMSU.SQL for Unicode.

Once you have determined which script to run during Move to Production, you can change this step to run automatically.

To run the Create Application Tablespaces step automatically:

1. In Change Assistant, open your upgrade job.
2. In the task Populating Tablespace Data, right-click on the step Create Application Tablespaces, and then select Step Properties.
3. In the Step Properties dialog box, change the value in the Type field from *ManualStop* to *SQLScript*.
4. In the Script/Procedure field, enter the name of the script you want to run and click OK.
5. Select Edit, Run.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	MTP	All	Oracle Informix DB2 UNIX/NT DB2 z/OS	All

Task 2-9-2: Populate Tablespace Data

This step populates all tablespace information in the PSRECTBLSPC table. This step runs the SETSPACE.SQR script, which ensures that the correct tablespace information is populated for tasks later in the upgrade process.

The values stored in the DDLSPACENAME field are updated with current values found in the system catalog for tables already defined in your database. If you modified tablespace names from the Oracle-delivered names, this step makes those same changes in the PeopleSoft record definition.

If you receive any errors when you run this script, correct them by creating the needed tablespace or changing the tablespace definition on the record object. Then run the script again to validate that you have created all tablespaces.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle Informix DB2 UNIX/NT DB2 z/OS	All

Task 2-9-3: Update Tablespace Names

The SETSPACE SQR script identifies the tables with an invalid database name/tablespace combination. However, the PeopleTools Metadata tables in your Copy of Production (Target) database contain the database/tablespace values from the Demo (Source) database. This also occurs if your Demo and Copy of Production databases are in the same DB2 subsystem after the upgrade/copy is completed. SETSPACE.SQR corrects these values for those tables defined in DB2. For those tables that are defined in the PeopleTools metadata tables, but have not been defined in DB2, you need to review the SETSPACE SQR script for those tables that are reported as not defined in the database, but where the database/tablespace combination is valid. If the report shows an invalid database/tablespace combination, or shows your Demo (Source) database and tablespace names instead of your Copy of Production (Target) database and tablespace names, you can correct the database and tablespace names using one of the following options:

- Generate the alter/create scripts and globally edit the scripts, changing the database/tablespace values to those of your Copy of Production.
- Directly update the PSRECTBLSPC table with your Target database names before generating the alter/create scripts.

This will ensure that the database name/tablespace names in the generated alter/create scripts will be correct. The syntax to update the PSRECTBLSPC table is as follows:

```
UPDATE PSRECTBLSPC SET DBNAME = dbname, DDLSPACENAME = tablespace name WHERE⇒
DDLSPACENAME = tablespace identified in SETSPACE OUTPUT AND DBNAME = database⇒
identified in SETSPACE OUTPUT;
```

If you are using the Oracle-delivered tablespaces, you can omit the references to DDLSPACENAME in the SQL statement above.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 z/OS	All

Task 2-10: Building Updated PeopleTools Project

This section discusses:

- Generate Updated PeopleTools Script
- Edit the Updated PeopleTools Script
- Run the Updated PeopleTools Script

Task 2-10-1: Generate Updated PeopleTools Script

This step generates the SQL script to create and alter records of the type Table that are delivered in the PPLTLS84CUR project. The tables are altered to add new columns, rename existing columns, and change columns that have modified properties, such as length, and delete columns. The script will also create new indexes, re-create modified indexes, and create triggers. The script name is:

PPLTLS84CURTABLES.SQL

Note. For DB2 z/OS sites, if this step takes an exceptionally long time, performing a RUNSTATS on the system catalog tablespace SYSDBASE may improve performance.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 2-10-2: Edit the Updated PeopleTools Script

In this step, you edit the PPLTLS84CURTABLES.SQL script that was generated in the previous step for tablespace names and sizing. If you are running on a RDBMS platform that uses tablespaces, and you are *not* using the PeopleSoft tablespace names, have your database administrator review this script and modify the tablespace names appropriately. The script can be found in your Change Assistant output directory for this upgrade path.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 z/OS DB2 UNIX/NT Oracle Informix	All

Task 2-10-3: Run the Updated PeopleTools Script

This step runs the script you generated in this task to create all records of the type Table. This creates new table structures, alters existing PeopleSoft table structures, creates new indexes, re-creates modified indexes, and creates triggers.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 2-11: Migrating Records to New Tablespaces

This section discusses:

- Understanding Migration of Records to New Tablespaces
- Export and Copy the PT84TBLSPC Project
- Build the Tablespace Alter Script
- Edit the Tablespace Alter Script
- Run the Tablespace Alter Script

Understanding Migration of Records to New Tablespaces

In this task you migrate the tables delivered in the PT84TBLSPC project to the correct tablespaces.

Task 2-11-1: Export and Copy the PT84TBLSPC Project

This process copies the records that moved to different tablespaces in the new release of PeopleSoft PeopleTools. The upgrade copy options are set to Copy From Source for record DDL to pick up the new tablespace information.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	DB2 z/OS DB2 UNIX/NT Oracle Informix	All

Task 2-11-2: Build the Tablespace Alter Script

This step generates the SQL script to alter records of the type Table that are delivered in the PT84TBLSPC project. The tables are altered to move them to the correct tablespaces for the new release of PeopleSoft PeopleTools. The script name is:

TABLESPACEALTRTABLES.SQL

Note. For DB2 z/OS sites, if this step takes an exceptionally long time, performing a RUNSTATS on the system catalog tablespace SYSDBASE may improve performance.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 z/OS DB2 UNIX/NT Oracle Informix	All

Task 2-11-3: Edit the Tablespace Alter Script

In this step, you edit the TABLESPACEALTRTABLES.SQL script for tablespace names and sizing. If you are running on an RDBMS platform that uses tablespaces, and you are *not* using the PeopleSoft tablespace names, you need to review and modify the scripts above. Have your database administrator review these scripts and modify the tablespace names appropriately. The script can be found in your Change Assistant output directory for this upgrade path.

Note. If you are a DB2 z/OS customer, you must edit the scripts for database name regardless of whether you are using the delivered PeopleSoft tablespace names.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 z/OS DB2 UNIX/NT Oracle Informix	All

Task 2-11-4: Run the Tablespace Alter Script

This step runs the TABLESPACEALTRTABLES.SQL script to move the tables to the new tablespaces.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 z/OS DB2 UNIX/NT Oracle Informix	All

Task 2-12: Loading Base Data

These Data Mover scripts (DMSs) initialize and modify the data in various PeopleSoft PeopleTools tables required for the system to execute properly. This step runs scripts conforming to the PTxxxTLS.DMS and PTxxxTLSyyy.DMS naming conventions, where xxx represents a PeopleSoft PeopleTools release number and yyy represents a three-letter language code, that are greater than your current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release. For some upgrades, no data scripts are required. In this case, Change Assistant continues to the next step without producing a log file.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-13: Loading Language Data

This section discusses:

- Populate Languages
- Load Language Data

Task 2-13-1: Populate Languages

This step runs the PSLANGUAGES.DMS script. This script populates the PSLANGUAGES table with Verity Locale data and other language-specific data.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-13-2: Load Language Data

If your database has languages installed in addition to English, you must populate the PSLANGUAGES table.

To load language data:

1. From the DMS that was created for your PeopleSoft 8.x database installation, find the UPDATE to PSLANGUAGES.

The statement should look similar to the following:

```
UPDATE PSLANGUAGES SET INSTALLED=1 WHERE LANGUAGE_CD = 'xxx';
```

2. Run the SQL command identified above using your SQL tool.

Your database is now updated with the language data.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All Non-English

Task 2-14: Loading PeopleTools Data

This section discusses:

- Load NonComparable Objects
- Load English Messages
- Load English String Data
- Load Stored Statements Data

Task 2-14-1: Load NonComparable Objects

This step runs the TLSUPGNONCOMP.DMS script. This script loads the TLSUPGNONCOMP project and all PeopleSoft PeopleTools-owned object definitions that cannot be delivered using Copy Project to File.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-14-2: Load English Messages

This step runs the MSGTLENG.DMS script, which loads English messages into your database.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-14-3: Load English String Data

This step runs the PTSTRENG.DMS script, which loads English string data into the STRINGS_TBL table.

Note. The non-English language data was loaded in the task Loading Base Data.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-14-4: Load Stored Statements Data

Loading the stored statements ensures that the dynamic SQL statements will work correctly with the delivered COBOL programs.

This step runs the STOREPT.DMS script, which loads the dynamic SQL used by the PeopleSoft PeopleTools-delivered COBOL.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 2-15: Loading PeopleTools Definition Group

This task runs the PTDEFNSEC.DMS script that loads the PeopleTools definition security group. This ensures that the definition security group is updated with the PeopleTools objects introduced in this release.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-16: Converting PeopleTools Objects

This section discusses:

- Update REN Server Configuration
- Populate MCF Data
- Convert Portal Objects
- Convert Query Prompt Headings
- Encrypt Connector Passwords
- Load Conversion Data
- Report Conversion Details
- Run Data Conversion

Task 2-16-1: Update REN Server Configuration

This step runs the Application Engine program UPGMCF843, which converts real-time event notification (REN) server configuration information to the new format. REN servers run in the application server domain. They are used for the PeopleSoft PeopleTools MultiChannel Framework (MCF) and Reporting Window output option. The program converts standard REN server configurations to the new format, including MCF cluster information. All REN server configuration information is now stored within the database. You must upgrade old REN server configurations before attempting to boot with the new version of PeopleSoft PeopleTools. If you did not have any REN servers configured prior to starting the upgrade, then the UPGMCF843 program does not make any changes. If one of your configurations cannot be converted, error messages will be written in the Application Engine message log.

After running this step, you should also check the PSRENCONFIG.TXT file located in each application server domain that started an old REN server. (The file will not exist in domains that did not start a REN server.) Each old file should be replaced with the new template file located at PS_HOME/APPSEV/REN/PSRENCONFIG.TXT. Old template files cannot be used with the new version of REN server. If you customized your old configuration files, manually edit the new files and update them with your customizations.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 2-16-2: Populate MCF Data

This step runs the Application Engine program MCF_UPGR_SND, which populates the PS_MCFEM_MAIL_DSCR table with data. In PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.44, the REPLY_TO header functionality was added. The field PS_MCFEM_MAIL_DSCR.MCF_REPLY_TO is populated with the values stored in PS_MCFEM_MAIL_MAIN.MCF_EMAIL_SENDER.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 2-16-3: Convert Portal Objects

This step runs the Application Engine program UPG844PORTAL, which splits PSPRSMDEFN.PORTAL_URLTEXT into segments and stores them in separate columns: PORTAL_URI_SEG1, PORTAL_URI_SEG2, PORTAL_URI_SEG3, and PORTAL_URI_SEG4. This is performed for PeopleSoft Component URLs to extract values for Menu, Component, and Market. Values for Record, Field, Event, and Function Names are extracted from PeopleSoft URLs.

You may see some errors or messages in your log. Following is a list of some of the errors and what to do about them:

- Not authorized CRef: *Portal Object Name* (95,5032).

This means that you do not have proper privileges to run this conversion. You need to grant the user ID that you are using to upgrade Portal Administrator permissions.

- Security synchronization failed for Portal Object: *Portal Object Name* (96,61).

This is not a fatal error. It may be caused by a content reference that contains invalid URL text and indicates that there was an internal error writing to the security table. The invalid URL text may be pointing to a component or script that does not exist in the database. You need to fix the content reference and then rerun the UPG844PORTAL process.

- Cref *Portal Object Name* points to Menu: *Menu Name*, Component *Component Name* which doesn't exist. (96,80).

The content reference is pointing to an invalid Menu/Component combination. You need to fix the content reference so that it points at a valid Menu/Component combination and then rerun the UPG844PORTAL process.

- Duplicate key. Portal: *Portal Name*, Obj Name: *Portal Object Name*, Nodename: *Node*, URL: *URL* (133,4).

This portal object has the same URL as another portal object. Delete or modify this object to remove the conflict and then rerun the UPG844PORTAL process.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: Internet Technology for your new release.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-16-4: Convert Query Prompt Headings

This step runs the Application Engine program UPGQRYDUPHED, which searches for duplicate prompt headings in the table PSQRYBIND and appends numbers onto the text. For example, *Item ID* would become *Item ID 2*. When you run Crystal 9 through the process scheduler, it cannot handle queries with two or more prompts that have the same heading. These duplicates are also not legal in Query. You need to alter any old queries that have duplicate prompt headings so that they work with Crystal 9.

If you find a duplicate heading that exceeds the length of the field HEADING, you need to change the heading manually. In these cases, the following error is written to the log file:

```
The prompt heading HEADING for Query QUERY is duplicated. Please manually correct.⇒
(108, 1108)
```

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Query for your new release.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-16-5: Encrypt Connector Passwords

This step runs the Application Engine program UPGRDPASSWDS, which encrypts the password property field for the POP3Target, FTPTarget, GetMailTarget, and JMSTarget connectors.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 2-16-6: Load Conversion Data

This step imports PeopleSoft PeopleTools data conversion Application Engine driver data into your database.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 2-16-7: Report Conversion Details

This step runs the PTUCONV.SQR script. It details which sections will be called by the Upgrade Driver program and what they are doing. Each of the upgrade data conversion sections contains comments that describe the processing done by the section. The information contained in the report is used to evaluate the conversions run in the next step and any actions that are required as a result of the conversion.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 2-16-8: Run Data Conversion

The Upgrade Driver Application Engine program, PTUPGCONVERT, runs additional PeopleSoft PeopleTools upgrade data conversions. The program then reads the table PS_PTUPGCONVERT, selecting all rows with the group number of 01 and ordering them by the sequence number on the row. A list of Application Engine library sections that must be run for data conversion is returned. The program then calls each section in the order of the sequence number. Review the output file generated in the previous step for more details on the conversions run in this step.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 2-17: Creating PeopleTools Views

This section discusses:

- Create Updated PeopleTools Views

Task 2-17-1: Create Updated PeopleTools Views

This step creates all views defined in the PPLTLS84CUR project. These are PeopleTools views that have changed and are required for tasks later in the upgrade.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 2-18: Converting Integration Broker

This section discusses:

- Understanding Converting Integration Broker
- Updating Integration Broker Defaults
- Creating Integration Broker Objects
- Saving Application Messaging Objects
- Exporting Node Transactions
- Preparing Integration Broker Deletes
- Deleting Application Messaging Objects
- Deleting Node Transactions

Understanding Converting Integration Broker

If you are upgrading from PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.48 or later, this task does not need to be run because the Integration Broker conversion has already been performed. You need to mark all of the steps in this task as complete in your upgrade job. If you don't mark these steps as complete, the upgrade will try to unnecessarily reconvert your objects.

Task 2-18-1: Updating Integration Broker Defaults

This step runs the PTIBUPGRADE.DMS script. This script populates the default values specified earlier in the upgrade.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-18-2: Creating Integration Broker Objects

The PeopleSoft PeopleTools Upgrade Driver Application Engine program, PTUPGCONVERT, runs additional PeopleSoft PeopleTools upgrade data conversions. The program then reads the table PS_PTUPGCONVERT, selecting all rows with a group number of 03 and ordering them by the row sequence number. A list of Application Engine library sections that must be run for data conversion is returned. The program then calls each section in the sequence number order. Review the report generated by PTUCONV.SQR for details on the conversions run in this step.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-18-3: Saving Application Messaging Objects

This step copies the PTUPGIBCLONE project to the *PS_HOME*\projects directory. This project was created by the UPGPT848IBUG Application Engine program and contains objects that were successfully converted. The objects are copied to file as a precautionary measure because they will be deleted from the upgrade database.

After running this step, save the exported project in a permanent location where it can be accessed post-upgrade in case there is a need to review or import the old objects.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-18-4: Exporting Node Transactions

This step runs PTUPG_TRX_EXPORT.DMS to save out the old preconversion node transaction data. The generated .dat file is written to the DataMover output directory defined in Configuration Manager, which should be your *PS_HOME*\data directory.

After running this step, save PTUPG_TRX_EXPORT.DAT in a permanent location where it can be accessed post-upgrade in case there is a need to review or import the old objects.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-18-5: Preparing Integration Broker Deletes

This step copies the PTUPGIBDELETE project to your *PS_HOME*\projects directory in preparation for deleting the obsolete pre-conversion object definitions from the upgrade database. This project was created by the UPGPT848IBUG Application Engine program and contains the same objects as PTUPGIBCLONE.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-18-6: Deleting Application Messaging Objects

This step copies the PTUPGIBDELETE project definition from file. Since the actions in the project are set to Delete, this will delete the obsolete preconversion object definitions from the upgrade database.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-18-7: Deleting Node Transactions

This step runs PTUPG_TRX.DMS, which removes obsolete node transaction data associated with the obsolete objects in the PTUPGIBDELETE project. This script was generated by the UPGPT848IBUG Application Engine program.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 2-19: Setting Object Version Numbers

In this task, you run the VERSION Application Engine program. This ensures that all of your version numbers are correct and, if not, resets them to 1.

Note. You will rerun the VERSION application engine program later in the upgrade. If you want to preserve the log files generated by Change Assistant from this run, you will need to rename the files manually after completing this task.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 2-20: Converting Database Data Types

This section discusses:

- Understanding Converting Database Data Types
- Backing Up Before Platform Changes
- Running Long Data Audit
- Validating Microsoft Database
- Reviewing Microsoft Settings
- Creating Microsoft Conversion Project
- Generating Microsoft Conversion Script
- Running Microsoft Conversion Script
- Granting Permissions to the CONNECT ID
- Running Microsoft Conversion Report
- Validating Oracle Database
- Creating Oracle Audit Tables
- Auditing Duplicate Length Constraints
- Auditing Disabled Constraints
- Reviewing Oracle Settings
- Generating Oracle Conversion Scripts
- Running Long to LOB Script 1
- Running Long to LOB Script 2
- Running Long to LOB Script 3
- Running Long to LOB Script 4
- Running Long to LOB Script 5
- Running Long to LOB Script 6
- Running Long to LOB Script 7
- Running Long to LOB Script 8
- Auditing Long to LOB Conversion
- Running Character Length Script 1
- Running Character Length Script 2
- Running Character Length Script 3
- Running Character Length Script 4
- Running Character Length Script 5
- Running Character Length Script 6

- Running Character Length Script 7
- Running Character Length Script 8
- Auditing Character Length Semantics
- Reviewing Conversion Reports
- Updating Database Options

Understanding Converting Database Data Types

As of PeopleTools 8.48, new database data types are supported for Microsoft SQL Server 2005 or later and Oracle 9i or later. These data type changes are mandatory but only available for use in conjunction with application releases 9.0 or later.

For Microsoft SQL Server 2005 and later, the data types VARCHAR, NVARCHAR, VARBINARY(MAX), and VARCHAR(MAX) are now supported. Databases on Microsoft SQL Server 2000 and earlier will not use these new data types. The data types as defined in Application Designer are not changed; only the database-level definition will be different:

- Records with fields defined as PeopleSoft CHAR(N) will now use VARCHAR(N).
- Records with fields defined as PeopleSoft NCHAR(N) will now use NVARCHAR(N).
- Records with fields defined as PeopleSoft Long Character(N) will now use VARCHAR(N) if N is <=4000 and VARCHAR(MAX) if N is > 4000 for non-Unicode.
- Records with fields defined as PeopleSoft Long Character(N) will now use NVARCHAR(N) if N is <=4000 and VARCHAR(MAX) if N is > 4000 for Unicode databases.
- Records with fields defined as PeopleSoft IMAGE will now use VARBINARY(MAX).

For Oracle 9i or later, the data types CLOB and BLOB are now supported. In addition, the Character Length Semantics feature is also supported for Unicode databases when creating PeopleSoft CHAR fields and LONG CHARACTER fields with specified lengths less than 1334:

- Records with fields defined as PeopleSoft IMAGE or PeopleSoft LONG CHARACTER with Raw Binary will now use BLOB.
- Records with fields defined as PeopleSoft LONG CHARACTER with no length specified, length greater than 1333(UNICODE), or length greater than 4000 (ANSI) will now use CLOB.

Task 2-20-1: Backing Up Before Platform Changes

Back up your upgrade database now. This enables you to restart your upgrade from this point, in case you experience any database integrity problems during the remaining tasks in the upgrade process.

Important! For Oracle platforms, contact your database administrator to update the statistics on the database catalog. This will improve performance for subsequent steps in the upgrade. Typically only the users sys and sysdba have the authority to perform this task.

The following command updates the statistics on the database catalog:

```
EXEC DBMS_STATS.GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS ( 'SYS' );
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	MS SQL Server Oracle	All

Task 2-20-2: Running Long Data Audit

This step runs LONGS-AUDIT.SQL, which audits for any fields exceeding the actual data length for PeopleSoft long character columns. You will review the output in a later step.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	MS SQL Server	All

Task 2-20-3: Validating Microsoft Database

This step runs DBSETTINGS.SQL, which checks the Microsoft SQL Server version. The data type conversion is supported only with Microsoft SQL Server 2005 or later. You will review the output in a later step.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	MS SQL Server	All

Task 2-20-4: Reviewing Microsoft Settings

If you are upgrading to a PeopleSoft 9.0 or later application release, the data type update *and* a minimum of Microsoft SQL Server 2005 are required. You will run a conversion process that will substitute the old data types for new ones. The data type conversion is supported for Microsoft SQL Server 2005 or later with PeopleTools 8.48 or later and an application release 9.0 or later. Examine the log file from the step Validating Microsoft Database to ensure that you are running a supported version of Microsoft SQL Server. Do *not* perform the rest of this task if you do not meet the qualifications.

Examine the log file from the step Running Long Data Audit to determine if there are any fields shorter than length 4000 in the database that exceed the actual data length defined for the PeopleSoft long character fields. Prior to PeopleTools 8.48, all PeopleSoft long character fields were created using the TEXT SQL Server data type, and no matter the length defined by the Application Designer, the data in the field could grow as much as the TEXT limits on SQL Server. After the data type conversion, the length specified in Application Designer will be enforced for all fields shorter than length 4000, except for those with length zero. If your data is larger than the length defined in Application Designer, then you must correct the length using Application Designer or change the data itself using your SQL query tool. You must decide whether you want a change in the field length definition or a change in the data. The log file created by LONGS-AUDIT.SQL will only show all of the fields that contain data exceeding a length between 1 and 4000 and will be empty if this condition does not occur with no other action to take.

Resolve these problems before continuing to the next step, otherwise the conversion process will fail. If necessary, contact your DBA for assistance in modifying the fields. If no fields are listed in the log file, no further action is needed and you may proceed with the upgrade.

Note. During Move to Production passes, copy MSSNEWTYPE_ALTER.SQL from your initial pass upgrade's output directory and place it into the output directory for your Move to Production pass. This script is only generated during the initial pass. Edit the script and correct the database name on the first line of the script to point to the Target database for the pass.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	MS SQL Server	All

Task 2-20-5: Creating Microsoft Conversion Project

This step runs MSSNEWTYPE.SQL, which generates and populates the MSSNEWTYPE project. The project contains all of the records that need to be modified to use the newly supported data types.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	MS SQL Server	All

Task 2-20-6: Generating Microsoft Conversion Script

This step generates the SQL script MSSNEWTYPE_ALTER.SQL to alter the records in the MSSNEWTYPE project. The generated script will alter the tables with the new data types.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	MS SQL Server	All

Task 2-20-7: Running Microsoft Conversion Script

This step runs the generated script from the previous step. This will alter the existing tables to use the new data types. All of the tables will be copied into their new representation using the new data types and all of the additional padding blanks derived from the use of the old data types will be truncated.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	MS SQL Server	All

Task 2-20-8: Granting Permissions to the CONNECT ID

This step runs the GRANT.SQL script. This script grants select access to the CONNECT ID for tables necessary for sign on.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	MS SQL Server	All

Task 2-20-9: Running Microsoft Conversion Report

This step runs CONVERSION-AUDIT.SQL, which audits for all unconverted fields. You will review the output in a later step.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	MS SQL Server	All

Task 2-20-10: Validating Oracle Database

This step runs the DBSETTINGS.SQL script, which queries the database to determine the value of the NLS_LENGTH_SEMANTICS parameter. You will review the output in a later step.

There are two possible conversions that may occur depending on whether or not the database is Unicode. The Long to LOB conversion will apply to all databases, Unicode or ANSI. CHARACTER LENGTH SEMANTICS (CLS) only applies to Unicode databases. The CLS conversion has a dependency on the init.ora parameter NLS_LENGTH_SEMANTICS. The init.ora parameter NLS_LENGTH_SEMANTICS=CHAR, must be enabled for PeopleSoft Enterprise Unicode databases prior to executing the conversion. If the database being converted is ANSI, then this setting is not necessary.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-11: Creating Oracle Audit Tables

This step runs PRECNVADT1A.SQL, which drops and re-creates some temporary tables required by the pre-conversion audit SQRs.

If the tables being dropped, CHECK_CONSTRAINTS, DUPLICATE_CONSTRAINTS, and DROP_CONSTRAINTS, don't exist, the execution of this script will generate the following error, which can safely be ignored:

```
ORA-00942: table or view does not exist
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-12: Auditing Duplicate Length Constraints

This step runs PRECNVADT1.SQR, which checks for duplicate length constraints. This condition can generally exist if the database was created using the Oracle Import utility and CONSTRAINTS=Y was enabled, which is the default setting. You will review the output in a later step.

Note. If this SQR needs to be rerun for any reason, you *must* run PRECNVADT1A.SQL before rerunning PRECNVADT1.SQR.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-13: Auditing Disabled Constraints

This step runs PRECNVADT2.SQR, which checks for 'not validated' constraints. Although this condition should not exist in a production database, it may have occurred if data was imported with external utilities, such as SQL Loader. You will review the output in a later step.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-14: Reviewing Oracle Settings

The data type conversion is only supported for Oracle 9i or later with PeopleTools 8.48 or later *and* an application release 9.0 or later. Do *not* perform the rest of this task if you do not meet the qualifications.

For Unicode databases, examine the log file from the step Auditing Duplicate Length Constraints. If there are any duplicate length constraints, those duplicate constraints must be dropped. Run the utility SQL script, `PS_HOME\scripts\GENDROPDUPCONSTRAINTS.SQL`, to generate the script `DROPDUPCONSTRAINTS.SQL`, containing an `ALTER TABLE TABLE_NAME DROP CONSTRAINT` for every duplicate constraint found. Run the `DROPDUPCONSTRAINTS.SQL` to resolve the duplicate length constraints.

For Unicode databases, examine the log file from the step Auditing Disabled Constraints. If there are any disabled or nonvalidated constraints, these constraints should be re-validated. Run the utility SQL script, `PS_HOME\scripts\GENREVALIDATECONSTRAINTS.SQL` to generate the script `REVALIDATECONSTRAINTS.SQL`, containing an `ALTER TABLE TABLE_NAME ENABLE VALIDATE CONSTRAINT CONSTRAINT_NAME` for every invalid constraint found. Run the `REVALIDATECONSTRAINTS.SQL` to enable the constraints.

For Unicode databases, examine the log file from the step Validating Oracle Database to determine if the values in the `init.ora` file are set properly. For Unicode databases, the `NLS_LENGTH_SEMANTICS` parameter needs to have a value of `CHAR`. This indicates that CHARACTER LENGTH SEMANTICS is enabled and the conversion can continue. If you need to enable Character Length Semantics, work with your DBA to modify the `init.ora` for the Target database's SID and set `NLS_LENGTH_SEMANTICS` to `CHAR`. Then stop and restart the database SID for the setting to take effect.

Note. The `NLS_LENGTH_SEMANTICS` parameter should be set to *CHAR only* at this point in the upgrade, and should not be set to *CHAR* earlier in the upgrade. If it is set at the time of database creation, the data type conversion scripts will fail with an ORA-30556 error due to the existence of functional indexes on the table.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-15: Generating Oracle Conversion Scripts

Work with your database administrator to set the following `init.ora` parameters for the Target database's system identifier (SID). Stop and restart the database SID for the following settings to take effect:

1. Set the following `init.ora` parameters:

```
db_block_size=8192
db_cache_size=325165824
db_file_multiblock_read_count=8
job_queue_processes=10
shared_pool_size=425829120
pga_aggregate_target=5871947670
parallel_max_servers=8
workarea_size_policy=AUTO
```

Note. If you are using Oracle 10g or higher, you may use the parameters `SGA_TARGET=300M` and `SGA_MAX_SIZE=350M` instead of `SHARED_POOL_SIZE`, `DB_CACHE_SIZE`, and `DB_BLOCK_BUFFERS`.

2. Pre-allocate the PSTEMP tablespace to at least 10 GB.

3. Pre-allocate the PSDEFAULT tablespace to at least 2 GB with 10-MB local uniform extents.
4. Ensure that you have at least six redo logs sized at 500 MB each.

The Oracle data types script generation program is a Java program that connects to an Oracle database. The prerequisites are Java and the Oracle JDBC Drivers. The Oracle JDBC drivers will automatically be picked up by the .bat file provided that the %ORACLE_HOME% environment variable is set. Check if the %ORACLE_HOME% environment variable is set, by typing the following at the workstation command prompt:

```
echo %ORACLE_HOME%;
```

This should return a path, for example:

```
c:\oracle\product\10.1.0\client_1;
```

If the %ORACLE_HOME% environment variable is not set, then set it in the command prompt window by typing the following at the workstation command prompt:

```
SET ORACLE_HOME=Oracle_Home_location
```

The Oracle data types script generation program is executed using the *PS_HOME*\utility\PSORADDataTypesConversion.BAT file, which requires five input parameters:

- THREADS: The number of Java threads the conversion script generation spawns to generate the scripts. We recommend 10 threads for running this program on Windows.
- ACCESSID: The access ID for the database to be converted.
- ACCESSIDPW: The access password for the database to be converted.
- DBNAME: The database name.
- OUTPUTDIR: A directory path to redirect the generated conversion scripts to a user specified directory. This must be set to the Change Assistant output directory for your upgrade pass. Change Assistant will run the generated scripts later in the upgrade.

Example:

```
PS_HOME\utility\PSORADDataTypesConversion.bat 10 SYSADM SYSADM MYDB c:\upgrade⇒  
\output\Change_Assistant_job_directory
```

In the example command line above:

THREADS = 10

ACCESSID = SYSADM

ACCESSIDPW = SYSADM

DBNAME = MYDB

OUTPUTDIR = c:\upgrade\output\Change_Assistant_job_directory

Open a command prompt window on the client workstation and execute the Oracle data types script generation program *PS_HOME*\utility\PSORADDataTypesConversion.bat. The program will display and write a log (PsOraCnv.log) to the directory specified by the OUTPUTDIR parameter indicating the status of the conversion program. Review PsOraCnv.log and ensure that the conversion scripts were generated cleanly.

For ANSI databases, only LONGTOLOBALTER conversion scripts are generated. For Unicode databases, two sets of scripts are generated: LONGTOLOBALTER conversion scripts and CHARACTERLENGTHSEMANTICSALTER scripts.

After successfully running the conversion program, verify that the generated SQL scripts are located in the staging Change Assistant output directory for your upgrade pass. Later in the upgrade, Change Assistant will automatically run the SQL scripts later in the upgrade from the Change Assistant output directory for your upgrade pass.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-16: Running Long to LOB Script 1

This step runs LONGTOLOBALTER1.SQL, which was generated using PSORADDataTypesConversion.bat. The Oracle long to LOB conversion scripts are designed to run concurrently to improve performance.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-17: Running Long to LOB Script 2

This step runs LONGTOLOBALTER2.SQL, which was generated using PSORADDataTypesConversion.bat. The Oracle long to LOB conversion scripts are designed to run concurrently to improve performance.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-18: Running Long to LOB Script 3

This step runs LONGTOLOBALTER3.SQL, which was generated using PSORADDataTypesConversion.bat. The Oracle long to LOB conversion scripts are designed to run concurrently to improve performance.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-19: Running Long to LOB Script 4

This step runs LONGTOLOBALTER4.SQL, which was generated using PSORADDataTypesConversion.bat. The Oracle long to LOB conversion scripts are designed to run concurrently to improve performance.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-20: Running Long to LOB Script 5

This step runs LONGTOLOBALTER5.SQL, which was generated using PSORADDataTypesConversion.bat. The Oracle long to LOB conversion scripts are designed to run concurrently to improve performance.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-21: Running Long to LOB Script 6

This step runs LONGTOLOBALTER6.SQL, which was generated using PSORADDataTypesConversion.bat. The Oracle long to LOB conversion scripts are designed to run concurrently to improve performance.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-22: Running Long to LOB Script 7

This step runs LONGTOLOBALTER7.SQL, which was generated using PSORADDataTypesConversion.bat. The Oracle long to LOB conversion scripts are designed to run concurrently to improve performance.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-23: Running Long to LOB Script 8

This step runs LONGTOLOBALTER8.SQL, which was generated using PSORADDataTypesConversion.bat. The Oracle long to LOB conversion scripts are designed to run concurrently to improve performance.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-24: Auditing Long to LOB Conversion

This step runs L2LAUDIT.SQR to report on the output of the long to LOB conversion. You will review the report output in a later step.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-25: Running Character Length Script 1

This step runs CHARACTERLENGTHSEMANTICSALTER1.SQL, which was generated using PSORADDataTypesConversion.bat. The Oracle character length semantics conversion scripts are designed to run concurrently to improve performance.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-26: Running Character Length Script 2

This step runs CHARACTERLENGTHSEMANTICSALTER2.SQL, which was generated using PSORADDataTypesConversion.bat. The Oracle character length semantics conversion scripts are designed to run concurrently to improve performance.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-27: Running Character Length Script 3

This step runs CHARACTERLENGTHSEMANTICSALTER3.SQL, which was generated using PSORADDataTypesConversion.bat. The Oracle character length semantics conversion scripts are designed to run concurrently to improve performance.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-28: Running Character Length Script 4

This step runs CHARACTERLENGTHSEMANTICSALTER4.SQL, which was generated using PSORADDataTypesConversion.bat. The Oracle character length semantics conversion scripts are designed to run concurrently to improve performance.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-29: Running Character Length Script 5

This step runs CHARACTERLENGTHSEMANTICSALTER5.SQL, which was generated using PSORADDataTypesConversion.bat. The Oracle character length semantics conversion scripts are designed to run concurrently to improve performance.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-30: Running Character Length Script 6

This step runs CHARACTERLENGTHSEMANTICSALTER6.SQL, which was generated using PSORADDataTypesConversion.bat. The Oracle character length semantics conversion scripts are designed to run concurrently to improve performance.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-31: Running Character Length Script 7

This step runs CHARACTERLENGTHSEMANTICSALTER7.SQL, which was generated using PSORADDataTypesConversion.bat. The Oracle character length semantics conversion scripts are designed to run concurrently to improve performance.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-32: Running Character Length Script 8

This step runs CHARACTERLENGTHSEMANTICSALTER8.SQL, which was generated using PSORADDataTypesConversion.bat. The Oracle character length semantics conversion scripts are designed to run concurrently to improve performance.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-33: Auditing Character Length Semantics

This step runs CLSAUDIT.SQR to report on the output of the character length semantics conversion. You will review the report output in a later step.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 2-20-34: Reviewing Conversion Reports

To review the conversion report for Microsoft, examine the log file from the step Running Microsoft Conversion Report. It contains a list of unconverted columns on tables along with its old data type. Fields on tables with no Application Designer definition will be included in this log. Any unresolved errors from the step Running Microsoft Conversion will also be included. If you are using these tables, it is possible to update them manually to use the new data types with a SQL query tool or with an ETL tool. Be very cautious when changing a table, as this could result in data loss or affected functionality. Once any underlying problems have been resolved, you may rerun all of the previous steps in this task to reconvert any remaining objects listed by the audit report.

Note. During Move to Production passes for Microsoft, you must manually convert any remaining objects. During Move to Production passes, the record definition differs from the database table structure, so do *not* build the record with Application Designer.

To review the conversion reports for Oracle, examine the log files from running the LONGTOLOBALTER*.SQL scripts. If the database is Unicode, also examine the log files for the CHARACTERLENGTHSEMANTICS*.SQL scripts. Review the output from the step “Auditing Long to LOB Conversion.” L2LAUDIT.SQR reports on any unconverted long raw columns. The table name, column name, and column data type are listed. For Unicode databases, review the output from the step “Auditing Character Length Semantics.” CLSAUDIT.SQR reports on any unconverted character length columns (Unicode only). Correct any errors listed on the log files or conversion reports before proceeding with the upgrade. You can manually convert any tables listed in the audit, or resolve the errors that led to the unconverted columns and rerun the conversion.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	MS SQL Server Oracle	All

Task 2-20-35: Updating Database Options

This step runs UPGDBOPTIONS_ENABLE.SQL. This script updates the database to indicate that the new data types are now enabled.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	MS SQL Server Oracle	All

Task 2-21: Backing Up After PeopleTools Upgrade

Back up your Copy of Production database now. This enables you to restart your upgrade from this point, in case you experience any database integrity problems during the remaining tasks in the upgrade process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

CHAPTER 3

Run and Review Compare Reports

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding Compare Reports
- Preparing for Application Changes
- Renaming Tables
- Copying Select Tables
- Running New Release Compare Reports
- Reviewing New Release Compare Reports

Understanding Compare Reports

Now that your Copy of Production database is at the same PeopleTools release as your new release, you can compare the two databases to see the differences. In this chapter you run and review compare reports to make decisions regarding your upgrade. Be sure you have plenty of space to run these reports, as some can be rather large.

Task 3-1: Preparing for Application Changes

This section discusses:

- Exporting Project Definitions
- Importing Project Definitions
- Dropping Tables for Informix
- Dropping Tables and Views

Task 3-1-1: Exporting Project Definitions

In this step you will export from your Demo database the definition of projects that will be used later in this upgrade. You will import these definitions in the next step.

The script for your upgrade is:

```
DLUPX08E.DMS
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Both	All	All	All

Task 3-1-2: Importing Project Definitions

In this step you will import the project definitions into your Copy of Production database. These projects will be used later in this upgrade.

The script for your upgrade is:

```
DLUPX08I.DMS
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 3-1-3: Dropping Tables for Informix

This script will drop tables, views, or both on the copy of production database. These tables only need to be dropped for Informix customers. If these tables do not exist in your database, and you receive SQL errors, you can move forward and proceed with your upgrade.

The script name for your upgrade path is:

```
DLEPUPJ07IFX.DMS
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Informix	All

Task 3-1-4: Dropping Tables and Views

This step will drop tables, views or both, on the Copy of Production database. Some tables and views need to be dropped from the database prior to compare, copy, or generating DDL scripts. Some common reasons include:

- When a record was a view in a prior release and will be a table in the new release, the view must be dropped before the new tables are created.
- Records used as Application Engine state records for upgrade conversion code must exist on the database as an exact version of the record definition. You do not want these tables to be altered without deleting the obsolete columns. To make that happen, drop the table on the database at this point in the upgrade.
- Some records that have many fields and long row lengths will exceed database limitations if they are altered without deleting obsolete columns. If the table is considered a "temporary" table for batch processing, PeopleSoft assumes it will contain no relevant data at this point in the upgrade process.

Dropping the table at this point in the upgrade will eliminate the row length problems that could occur later in the upgrade.

If for some reason any of these tables or views do not exist in your database, and you receive SQL errors, it is OK and you can proceed with your upgrade.

The script name for your upgrade path is:

DLEPUPJ07.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 3-2: Renaming Tables

This section discusses:

- Understanding Renamed Tables
- Running the RNEPUPJ01MSS Script
- Running the RNEPUPJ01DB2 Script
- Running the RNEPUPJ02DB2 Script
- Running the RNEPUPJ01DBX Script
- Running the RNEPUPJ02DBX Script
- Running the RNEPUPJ01IFX Script
- Running the RNEPUPJ01ORA Script
- Running the RNEPUPJ01SYB Script
- Running the RNEPSPJ01MSS Script
- Running the RNEPSPJ01ORA Script
- Running the RNEPSPJ01DB2 Script
- Running the RNEPSPJ02DB2 Script
- Running the RNEPSPJ01DBX Script
- Running the RNEPSPJ02DBX Script
- Running the RNEPSPJ01IFX Script
- Running the RNEPSPJ01SYB Script
- Running the RNEPPLJ01MSS Script
- Running the RNEPPLJ01DB2 Script
- Running the RNEPPLJ01DBX Script

- Running the RNEPPLJ01ORA Script
- Running the RNEPPLJ01IFX Script
- Running the RNEPPLJ01SYB Script

Understanding Renamed Tables

These SQL scripts rename tables, at the database level, to temporary table names. They do not change the Record Definition. These temporary tables will be used in the data conversion programs in a later step.

Near the end of the upgrade tasks, you will run a DDDAUDIT report again. On the report, these temporary tables will be listed in the section listing: “SQL Table defined in the Database and not found in the Application Designer.” Either at that point or later when you are comfortable with the results of the data conversion, you can drop these temporary tables.

In some database platforms, the related indexes and views must be dropped before the table can be renamed. Oracle has included drop statements for these objects that exist on the DMO version of the database. However, the list of related objects may be different in your environment because of customizations or applied product incidents. You may encounter errors in these scripts because of these differences—for example, the script tries to drop an index that you do not have or it cannot rename the table because there are more related objects that need to be dropped. Simply modify these scripts to work for your database and you will not encounter these errors in your next test pass.

Task 3-2-1: Running the RNEPUPJ01MSS Script

RNEPUPJ01MSS.SQL will rename tables on the Copy of Production database. This script is for SQL Server databases and will run in the initial and move to production passes.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	MS SQL Server	All

Task 3-2-2: Running the RNEPUPJ01DB2 Script

RNEPUPJ01DB2.SQL will drop the views related to the tables being renamed on the Copy of Production database. This script is for DB2 z/OS databases and will run in initial and move to production passes.

Note. You may encounter errors in this script due to applied product incidents or customizations. For example you may get an error because this script tries to drop a view that you do not have but is part of available maintenance. Ignore these errors and proceed with the upgrade.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 z/OS	All

Task 3-2-3: Running the RNEPUPJ02DB2 Script

RNEPUPJ02DB2.SQL will rename tables on the Copy of Production database. This script is for DB2 z/OS databases and will run in initial and move to production passes.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 z/OS	All

Task 3-2-4: Running the RNEPUPJ01DBX Script

RNEPUPJ01DBX.SQL will drop views related to the tables being renamed on the Copy of Production database. This script is for DB2 UDB databases on UNIX, Linux, or Windows and will run in initial and move to production passes.

Note. You may encounter errors in this script due to applied product incidents or customizations. For example you may get an error because this script tries to drop a view that you do not have but is part of available maintenance. Ignore these errors and proceed with the upgrade.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 UNIX/NT	All

Task 3-2-5: Running the RNEPUPJ02DBX Script

RNEPUPJ02DBX.SQL will rename tables on the Copy of Production database. This script is for DB2 UDB databases on UNIX, Linux, or Windows and will run in initial and move to production passes.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 UNIX/NT	All

Task 3-2-6: Running the RNEPUPJ01IFX Script

RNEPUPJ01IFX.SQL will rename tables on the Copy of Production database. This script is for Informix databases and will run in initial and move to production passes.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Informix	All

Task 3-2-7: Running the RNEPUPJ01ORA Script

RNEPUPJ01ORA.SQL will rename tables on the Copy of Production database. This script is for Oracle databases and will run in initial and move to production passes.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 3-2-8: Running the RNEPUPJ01SYB Script

RNEPUPJ01SYB.SQL will rename tables on the Copy of Production database. This script is for Sybase databases and will run in initial and move to production passes.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Sybase	All

Task 3-2-9: Running the RNEPSPJ01MSS Script

This section discusses:

- Editing the RNEPSPJ01MSS Script
- Running the RNEPSPJ01MSS Script Automatically

Editing the RNEPSPJ01MSS Script

If you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.4 Service Pack 2 (SP2), proceed to “Running the RNEPSPJ01MSS Script Automatically”. If you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.40 or PeopleSoft 8.4 SP1, you need to edit this script to comment out lines that do not apply for these paths before proceeding to “Running the RNEPSPJ01MSS Script Automatically”. RNEPSPJ01MSS.SQL will rename tables on the Copy of Production database.

Running the RNEPSPJ01MSS Script Automatically

Follow this procedure to edit your template so that the “Running the RNEPSPJ01MSS Script” can run automatically.

To run the RNEPSPJ01MSS script automatically:

1. In Change Assistant, select the step Run the RNEPSPJ01MSS Script.

2. Open the Step Properties dialog box.
3. Change the Type from *ManualStop* to *SQLScript*.
4. Click OK.
5. Ensure the step is still highlighted and select Edit, Run (or F4).

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Service Procurement	MS SQL Server	All

Task 3-2-10: Running the RNEPSPJ01ORA Script

This section discusses:

- Editing the RNEPSPJ01ORA Script
- Running the RNEPSPJ01ORA Script Automatically

Editing the RNEPSPJ01ORA Script

You need to edit this script to comment out some lines, depending on the version of PeopleSoft 8.4x that you are upgrading from. The script contains information about the lines to which this applies. You need to edit this script to comment out lines that do not apply before proceeding to “Running the RNEPSPJ01ORA Script Automatically”. RNEPSPJ01ORA.SQL will rename tables on the Copy of Production database.

Running the RNEPSPJ01ORA Script Automatically

Follow this procedure to edit your template so that the “Running the RNEPSPJ01ORA Script” step can run automatically.

To run the RNEPSPJ01ORA script automatically:

1. In Change Assistant, select the step Running the RNEPSPJ01ORA Script.
2. Open the Step Properties dialog box.
3. Change the Type from *Manual - Stop* to *SQL Script*.
4. Click OK.
5. Ensure the step is still highlighted and select Edit, Run (or F4).

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	Oracle	All

Task 3-2-11: Running the RNEPSPJ01DB2 Script

This section discusses:

- Editing the RNEPSPJ01DB2 Script

- Running the RNEPSPJ01DB2 Script Automatically

Editing the RNEPSPJ01DB2 Script

If you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.4 SP2, proceed to “Running the RNEPSPJ01DB2 Script Automatically”. If you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.40 or PeopleSoft 8.4 SP1, you need to edit this script to comment out lines that do not apply for these paths before proceeding to “Running the RNEPSPJ01DB2 Script Automatically”. RNEPSPJ01DB2.SQL will rename tables on the Copy of Production database.

Note. You may encounter errors in this script due to applied product incidents or customizations. For example you may get an error because this script tries to drop a view that you do not have but is part of available maintenance. Ignore these errors and proceed with the upgrade.

Running the RNEPSPJ01DB2 Script Automatically

Follow this procedure to edit your template so that “Running the RNEPSPJ01DB2 Script” can run automatically.

To run the RNEPSPJ01DB2 script automatically:

1. In Change Assistant, select the step Running the RNEPSPJ01DB2 Script.
2. Open the Step Properties dialog box.
3. Change the Type from *Manual - Stop* to *SQL Script*.
4. Click OK.
5. Ensure the step is still highlighted and select Edit, Run (or F4).

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	DB2 z/OS	All

Task 3-2-12: Running the RNEPSPJ02DB2 Script

This section discusses:

- Editing the RNEPSPJ02DB2 Script
- Running the RNEPSPJ02DB2 Script Automatically

Editing the RNEPSPJ02DB2 Script

If you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.4 SP2, proceed to “Running the RNEPSPJ02DB2 Script Automatically”. If you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.40 or PeopleSoft 8.4 SP1, you need to edit this script to comment out lines that do not apply for these paths before proceeding to “Running the RNEPSPJ02DB2 Script Automatically”. RNEPSPJ02DB2.SQL renames tables on the Copy of Production database.

Running the RNEPSPJ02DB2 Script Automatically

Follow this procedure to edit your template so that “Running the RNEPSPJ02DBS Script” can run automatically.

To run the RNEPSPJ02DB2 script automatically:

1. In Change Assistant, select the step Running the RNEPSPJ02DB2 Script.
2. Open the Step Properties dialog box.
3. Change the Type from *ManualStop* to *SQLScript*.
4. Click OK.
5. Ensure the step is still highlighted and select Edit, Run (or F4).

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	DB2 z/OS	All

Task 3-2-13: Running the RNEPSPJ01DBX Script

This section discusses:

- Editing the RNEPSPJ01DBX Script
- Running the RNEPSPJ01DBX Script Automatically

Editing the RNEPSPJ01DBX Script

If you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.4 SP2, proceed to “Running the RNEPSPJ01DBX Script Automatically”. If you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.40 or PeopleSoft 8.4 SP1, you need to edit this script to comment out lines that do not apply for these paths before proceeding to “Running the RNEPSPJ01DBX Script Automatically”. RNEPSPJ01DBX.SQL will rename tables on the Copy of Production database.

Note. You may encounter errors in this script due to applied product incidents or customizations. For example you may get an error because this script tries to drop a view that you do not have but is part of available maintenance. Ignore these errors and proceed with the upgrade.

Running the RNEPSPJ01DBX Script Automatically

Follow this procedure to edit your template so that “Running the RNEPSPJ01DBX Script” can run automatically.

To run the RNEPSPJ01DBX script automatically:

1. In Change Assistant, select the step Running the RNEPSPJ01DBX Script.
2. Open the Step Properties dialog box.
3. Change the Type from *Manual - Stop* to *SQL Script*.
4. Click OK.
5. Ensure the step is still highlighted and select Edit, Run (or F4).

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	DB2 UNIX/NT	All

Task 3-2-14: Running the RNEPSPJ02DBX Script

This section discusses:

- Editing the RNEPSPJ02DBX Script
- Running the RNEPSPJ02DBX Script Automatically

Editing the RNEPSPJ02DBX Script

If you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.4 SP2, proceed to “Running the RNEPSPJ02DBX Script Automatically”. If you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.40 or PeopleSoft 8.4 SP1, you need to edit this script to comment out lines that do not apply for these paths before proceeding to “Running the RNEPSPJ02DBX Script Automatically”. RNEPSPJ02DBX.SQL renames tables on the Copy of Production database.

Running the RNEPSPJ02DBX Script Automatically

Follow this procedure to edit your template so that “Running the RNEPSPJ02DBX Script” can run automatically.

To run RNEPSPJ02DBX script automatically:

1. In Change Assistant, select the step Running the RNEPSPJ02DBX Script.
2. Open the Step Properties dialog box.
3. Change the Type from *ManualStop* to *SQLScript*.
4. Click OK.
5. Ensure the step is still highlighted and select Edit, Run (or F4).

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	DB2 Unix/NT	All

Task 3-2-15: Running the RNEPSPJ01IFX Script

This section discusses:

- Editing the RNEPSPJ01IFX Script
- Running the RNEPSPJ01IFX Script Automatically

Editing the RNEPSPJ01IFX Script

If you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.4 SP2, proceed to “Running the RNEPSPJ01IFX Script Automatically”. If you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.40 or PeopleSoft 8.4 SP1, you need to edit this script to comment out lines that do not apply for these paths before proceeding to “Running the RNEPSPJ01IFX Script Automatically”. RNEPSPJ01IFX.SQL will rename tables on the Copy of Production database.

Running the RNEPSPJ01IFX Script Automatically

Follow this procedure to edit your template so that “Running the RNEPSPJ01IFX Script” can run automatically.

To run the RNEPSPJ01IFX script automatically:

1. In Change Assistant, select the step Running the RNEPSPJ01IFX Script.
2. Open the Step Properties dialog box.
3. Change the Type from *Manual - Stop* to *SQL Script*.
4. Click OK.
5. Ensure the step is still highlighted and select Edit, Run (or F4).

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	Informix	All

Task 3-2-16: Running the RNEPSPJ01SYB Script

This section discusses:

- Editing the RNEPSPJ01SYB Script
- Running the RNEPSPJ01SYB Script Automatically

Editing the RNEPSPJ01SYB Script

If you are upgrading from release 8.4 SP2, proceed to “Running the RNEPSPJ01SYB Script Automatically”. If you are upgrading from release 8.40 or release 8.4 SP1, you need to edit this script to comment out lines that do not apply for these paths before proceeding to “Running the RNEPSPJ01SYB Script Automatically”. RNEPSPJ01SYB.SQL will rename tables on the Copy of Production database.

Running the RNEPSPJ01SYB Script Automatically

Follow this procedure to edit your template so that “Running the RNEPSPJ01SYB Script” can run automatically.

To run the RNEPSPJ01SYB script automatically:

1. In Change Assistant, select the step Running the RNEPSPJ01SYB Script.
2. Open the Step Properties dialog box.
3. Change the Type from *Manual - Stop* to *SQL Script*.
4. Click OK.
5. Ensure the step is still highlighted and select Edit, Run (or F4).

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	Sybase	All

Task 3-2-17: Running the RNEPPLJ01MSS Script

This section discusses:

- Running the RNEPPLJ01MSS Script Automatically
- Skipping the RNEPPLJ01MSS Step

Proceed to “Running the RNEPPLJ01MSS Script Automatically” if you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.4 SP2. Otherwise, proceed to “Skipping the RNEPPLJ01MSS Step” for instructions on how to mark this task complete. RNEPPLJ01MSS.SQL will rename tables on the Copy of Production database.

Running the RNEPPLJ01MSS Script Automatically

If you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.4 SP2, follow this procedure to edit your template so that “Running the RNEPPLJ01MSS Script” can run automatically.

To run the RNEPPLJ01MSS script automatically:

1. In Change Assistant, select the step Running the RNEPPLJ01MSS Script.
2. Open the Step Properties dialog box.
3. Change the Type from *Manual - Stop* to *SQL Script*.
4. Click OK.
5. Ensure the step is still highlighted and select Edit, Run (or F4).

Skipping the RNEPPLJ01MSS Step

If you are not upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.4 SP2, you do not need to run this script. Follow this procedure to update your job so that “Running the RNEPPLJ01MSS Script” will not be run.

To skip the RNEPPLJ01MSS step:

1. In Change Assistant, select the step Running the RNEPPLJ01MSS Script.
2. Select Edit, Complete (or F7).

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	MS SQL Server	All

Task 3-2-18: Running the RNEPPLJ01DB2 Script

This section discusses:

- Running the RNEPPLJ01DB2 Script Automatically

- Skipping the RNEPPLJ01DB2 Step

Proceed to “Running the RNEPPLJ01DB2 Script Automatically” if you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.4 SP2. Otherwise, proceed to “Skipping the RNEPPLJ01DB2 Step” for instructions on how to mark this task complete.

Running the RNEPPLJ01DB2 Script Automatically

If you are upgrading PeopleSoft 8.4 SP2, follow this procedure to edit your template so that “Running the RNEPPLJ01DB2 Script” can run automatically.

To run the RNEPPLJ01DB2 script automatically:

1. In Change Assistant, select the step Running the RNEPPLJ01DB2 Script.
2. Open the Step Properties dialog box.
3. Change the Type from *Manual - Stop* to *SQL Script*.
4. Click OK.
5. Ensure the step is still highlighted and select Edit, Run (or F4).

Skipping the RNEPPLJ01DB2 Step

If you are not upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.4 SP2, you do not need to run this script. Follow this procedure to update your job so that “Running the RNEPPLJ01DB2 Script” will not be run.

To skip the RNEPPLJ01DB2 step:

1. In Change Assistant, select Running the RNEPPLJ01DB2 Script.
2. Select Edit, Complete (or F7).

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 z/OS	All

Task 3-2-19: Running the RNEPPLJ01DBX Script

This section discusses:

- Running the RNEPPLJ01DBX Script Automatically
- Skipping the RNEPPLJ01DBX Step

Proceed to “Running the RNEPPLJ01DBX Script Automatically” if you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.4 SP2. Otherwise, proceed to “Skipping the RNEPPLJ01DBX Step” for instructions on how to mark this task complete. RNEPPLJ01DBX.SQL will rename tables on the Copy of Production database.

Running the RNEPPLJ01DBX Script Automatically

If you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.4 SP2, follow this procedure to edit your template so that “Running the RNEPPLJ01DBX Script” can run automatically.

To run the RNEPPLJ01DBX script automatically:

1. In Change Assistant, select the step Running the RNEPPLJ01DBX Script.

2. Open the Step Properties dialog box.
3. Change the Type from *Manual - Stop* to *SQL Script*.
4. Click OK.
5. Ensure the step is still highlighted and select Edit, Run (or F4).

Skipping the RNEPPLJ01DBX Step

If you are not upgrading PeopleSoft 8.4 SP2, you do not need to run this script. Follow this procedure to update your job so that “Running the RNEPPLJ01DBX Script” will not be run.

To skip the RNEPPLJ01DBX step:

1. In Change Assistant, select Running the RNEPPLJ01DBX Script.
2. Select Edit, Complete (or F7).

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 UNIX/NT	All

Task 3-2-20: Running the RNEPPLJ01ORA Script

This section discusses:

- Running the RNEPPLJ01ORA Script Automatically
- Skipping the RNEPPLJ01ORA Step

Proceed to “Running the RNEPPLJ01ORA Script Automatically” if you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.42. Otherwise, proceed to “Skipping the RNEPPLJ01ORA Step” for instructions on how to mark this task complete. RNEPPLJ01ORA.SQL will rename tables on the Copy of Production database.

Running the RNEPPLJ01ORA Script Automatically

If you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.4 SP2 follow this procedure to edit your template so that “Running the RNEPPLJ01ORA Script” can run automatically.

To run the RNEPPLJ01ORA script automatically:

1. In Change Assistant, select the step Running the RNEPPLJ01ORA Script.
2. Open the Step Properties dialog box.
3. Change the Type from *Manual - Stop* to *SQL Script*.
4. Click OK.
5. Ensure the step is still highlighted and select Edit, Run (or F4).

Skipping the RNEPPLJ01ORA Step

If you are not upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.4 SP2, you do not need to run this script. Follow this procedure to update your job so that “Running the RNEPPLJ01ORA Script” will not be run.

To skip the RNEPPLJ01ORA step:

1. In Change Assistant, select Running the RNEPPLJ01ORA Script..
2. Select Edit, Complete (or F7).

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 3-2-21: Running the RNEPPLJ01IFX Script

This section discusses:

- Running the RNEPPLJ01IFX Script Automatically
- Skipping the RNEPPLJ01IFX Step

Proceed to “Running the RNEPPLJ01IFX Script Automatically” if you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.4 SP2. Otherwise, proceed to “Skipping the RNEPPLJ01IFX Step” for instructions on how to mark this task complete. RNEPPLJ01IFX.SQL will rename tables on the Copy of Production database.

Running the RNEPPLJ01IFX Script Automatically

If you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.4 SP2, follow this procedure to edit your template so that “Running the RNEPPLJ01IFX Script” can run automatically.

To run the RNEPPLJ01IFX script automatically:

1. In Change Assistant, select the step Running the RNEPPLJ01IFX Script.
2. Open the Step Properties dialog box.
3. Change the Type from *Manual - Stop* to *SQL Script*.
4. Click OK.
5. Ensure the step is still highlighted and select Edit, Run (or F4).

Skipping the RNEPPLJ01IFX Step

If you are not upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.4 SP2, you do not need to run this script. Follow this procedure to update your job so that “Running the RNEPPLJ01IFX Script” will not be run.

To skip the RNEPPLJ01IFX step:

1. In Change Assistant, select Running the RNEPPLJ01IFX Script.
2. Select Edit, Complete (or F7).

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Informix	All

Task 3-2-22: Running the RNEPPLJ01SYB Script

This section discusses:

- Running the RNEPPLJ01SYB Script Automatically
- Skipping the RNEPPLJ01SYB Step

Proceed to “Running the RNEPPLJ01SYB Script Automatically” if you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.4 SP2. Otherwise, proceed to “Skipping the RNEPPLJ01SYB Step” for instructions on how to mark this task complete. RNEPPLJ01SYB.SQL will rename tables on the Copy of Production database.

Running the RNEPPLJ01SYB Script Automatically

If you are upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.4 Service Pack 2, follow this procedure to edit your template so that “Running the RNEPPLJ01SYB Script” can run automatically.

To run the RNEPPLJ01SYB script automatically:

1. In Change Assistant, select the step Running the RNEPPLJ01SYB Script.
2. Open the Step Properties dialog box.
3. Change the Type from *Manual - Stop* to *SQL Script*.
4. Click OK.
5. Ensure the step is still highlighted and select Edit, Run (or F4).

Skipping the RNEPPLJ01SYB Step

If you are not upgrading from PeopleSoft 8.4 SP2, you do not need to run this script. Follow this procedure to update your job so that “Running the RNEPPLJ01SYB Script” will not be run.

To skip the RNEPPLJ01SYB step:

1. In Change Assistant, select Running the RNEPPLJ01SYB Script.
2. Select Edit, Complete (or F7).

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Sybase	All

Task 3-3: Copying Select Tables

This section discusses:

- Understanding the Copy Select Tables Process
- Running the DLCGGLU20E Script
- Running the DLCGGLU20I Script

Understanding the Copy Select Tables Process

This task will accomplish two things. First, you will save a copy of PSRECFIELDDB before it is modified by the copies in the upgrade. Second, you will review then copy a project containing tables, isolated by special circumstances, in this upgrade. If this is not done there will be situations where the order of the fields in the SQL used to create the Views will be different then the order of the fields used to define the views.

Task 3-3-1: Running the DLCGGLU20E Script

The DLCGGLU20E/I scripts save the contents of PSRECFIELDDB into a temporary table (PS_FS_UPG_RECFLDDB) to be used by data conversion programs. PSRECFIELDDB is a PeopleTools table that contains all Records and the fields on those records. Running the DLCGGLU20E script at this point in the upgrade will preserve the prior release record/field structure in the temporary table.

Note. Move to Production Note: The export can only run during the initial test pass. It is only during the initial pass that you have old release record structures in the new release PSRECFIELDDB table. You will need to preserve the .dat file DLCGGLU20.dat located in your PSHOME\DATA directory. It will need to exist in the PSHOME\DATA directory during your Move to Production Passes.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 3-3-2: Running the DLCGGLU20I Script

The DLCGGLU20I script imports the data into the PS_FS_UPG_RECFLDDB temporary table.

Note. Move to Production Note: The import needs to run in both initial and MTP passes. The export script, DLCGGLU20E script will only run in the initial test pass. This script requires the DLCGGLU20.dat file generated during the initial pass. The .DAT file should be located in your PSHOME\DATA directory.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 3-4: Running New Release Compare Reports

This section discusses:

- Understanding the New Release Compare
- Preserving Local Message Node
- Modifying New Release Compare Options

- Running New Release UPGCUST Compare
- Running New Release UPGCUSTIB Compare
- Resetting Take Action Flags in UPGCUST
- Running UPGCUSTIB Filter Script
- Resetting Flags for ChartField Objects

Understanding the New Release Compare

In this task you will compare your customizations to the new release objects by running a project compare against the Demo database.

Task 3-4-1: Preserving Local Message Node

In this step add your Local Message Node to the UPGCUST project before the project compare between the Copy of Production and Demo database.

To add Local Message Node:

1. Run the following SQL in your Copy of Production database to identify your Local Message Node:

```
SELECT MSGNODENAME FROM PSMGNOEDEDEFN WHERE LOCALDEFAULTFLG = 'Y'
```

2. Open Application Designer from your Copy of Production database.
3. Open project UPGCUST.
4. Select Insert, Definitions Into Project.
5. Select Definition Type of Message Node.
6. Enter the Message Node name that was returned from the SQL you ran above.
7. Select the displayed Message Node.
8. Click Insert.
9. Save project UPGCUST.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 3-4-2: Modifying New Release Compare Options

For compare steps, PeopleSoft Change Assistant templates are delivered with the default reports filter turned on in the compare options. This limits the size of the reports and keeps them manageable. Before you start the compares, review the Change Assistant template step properties for each compare step in this task and modify the compare options based on your requirements.

If you decide not to modify the compare options, the objects are still compared. However, the results are only available online in Application Designer. They are not written to the compare reports. The compare reports are tools to help you review changed objects. However, based on the report filters you select, you may need to review the action flags for other objects in the compare project in Application Designer.

For example, you can modify the compare options so the report contains customized objects that are present in your Copy of Production database but absent from the Demo database. Alternatively, you can review these objects online, through Application Designer, after the compare.

To modify upgrade compare options:

1. Highlight the compare step you want to review and right-click.
2. Select Step Properties.

The Step Properties dialog box appears.

3. Click Upgrade.

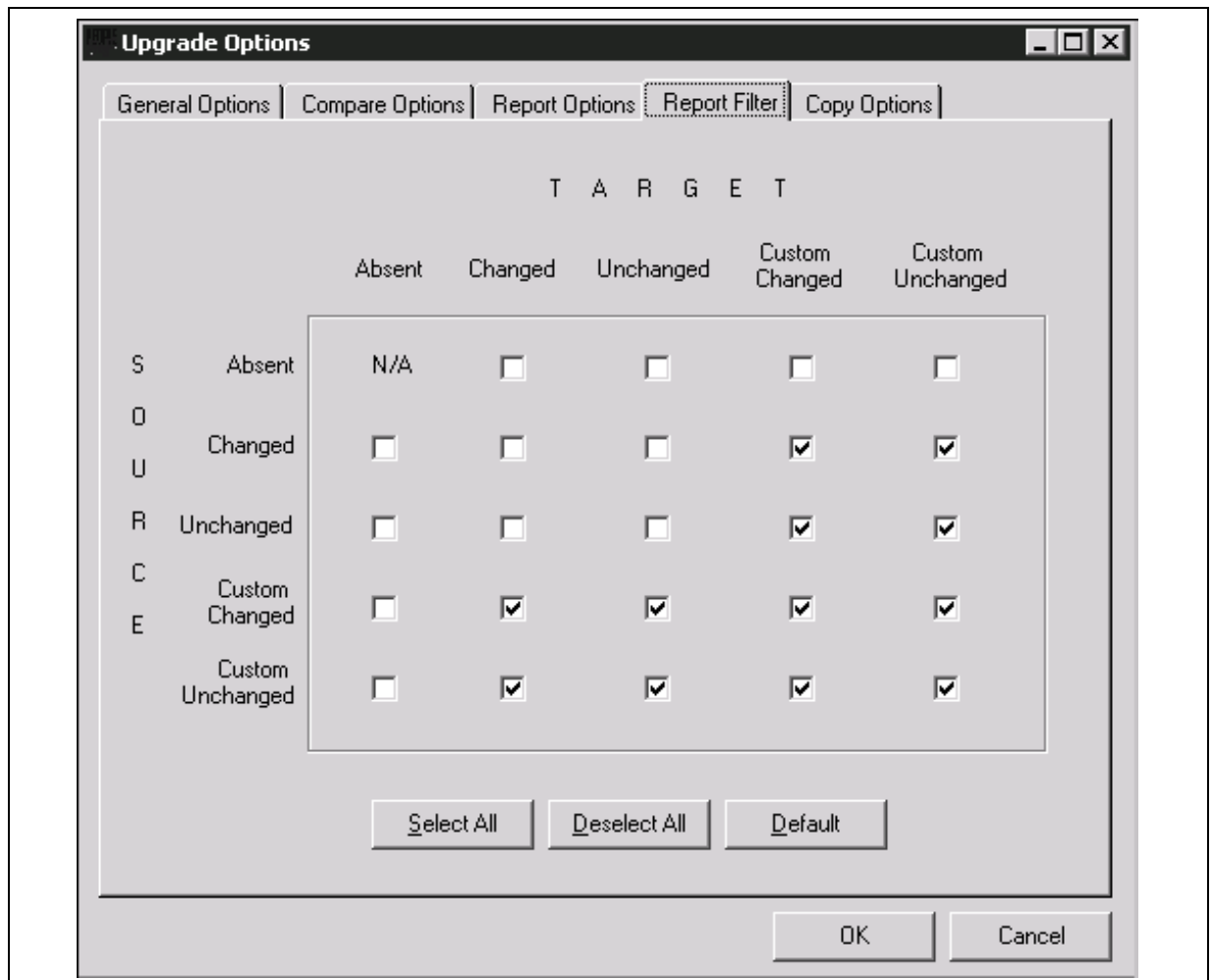
The Compare and Report dialog box appears.

4. Click Options.

5. Select the Report Filter tab.

The default options include your custom changes on the reports.

6. Change the default options as necessary and click OK.



Upgrade Options page, Report Filter tab

7. In the Compare and Report dialog box, click OK.
8. In the Step Definitions dialog box, click OK.

9. Repeat steps 1 through 8 for each compare step in the task you want to review and change.
10. Select File, Save Job.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 3-4-3: Running New Release UPGCUST Compare

This step executes a project compare of all comparable objects in the UPGCUST project.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 3-4-4: Running New Release UPGCUSTIB Compare

This step executes a database compare of all Integration Broker objects and generates the UPGCUSTIB project.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 3-4-5: Resetting Take Action Flags in UPGCUST

This step turns *off* all Take Action flags in the UPGCUST project after the compare. You will analyze the compare results and adjust the upgrade flags in the next step.

The script for your upgrade is:

```
DLUPX98.DMS
```

See Appendix: “Using the Comparison Process.”

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 3-4-6: Running UPGCUSTIB Filter Script

This step removes all objects from the UPGCUSTIB project that are not marked **Changed* or **Unchanged* in your Copy of Production environment. It is used to isolate only custom objects in the UPGCUSTIB project.

The script name for your upgrade is:

DLUPX95.DMS

See Appendix: “Using the Comparison Process.”

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 3-4-7: Resetting Flags for ChartField Objects

This step turns Take Action flags on in the UPGCUST project for objects modified by the ChartField Configuration process. If you have added a new ChartField, you need to review and adjust the flags for all the new objects you have created to support the new ChartField, such as records, views, pages, and components. The script below sets the flag for most of those objects, but you may have used a different name than expected. If you have not added a new ChartField, but have relabeled, resized, renamed, or activated/inactivated a delivered ChartField, the script below will include all those objects and no additional action is required.

The script for your upgrade is:

DLEPFAU01.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 3-5: Reviewing New Release Compare Reports

This section discusses:

- Reviewing New Release Changes
- Reviewing NonComparable Objects

Task 3-5-1: Reviewing New Release Changes

In this step, review the UPGCUST and UPGCUSTIB projects to evaluate how changes in the new release affect your customizations.

The UPGCUST and UPGCUSTIB projects exist in your Copy of Production database and contain all the objects you customized in the old release. These projects may include object definitions that are on your Copy of Production database but are not on the Copy of Current Demo database. If these are custom objects that you intend to keep in your upgraded system, you will want to ensure they are set to copy in the UPGCUST or UPGCUSTIB project. Compare reports are viewable when you open the projects in Application Designer. You can use these reports to determine your copy action for each object in the projects. Currently all Upgrade Flags are deselected, meaning no action will take place. Analyze the UPGCUST and UPGCUSTIB projects and select the Upgrade Flags for the customizations you wish to retain.

If the Target column has the value *Absent* it can indicate one of two possible conditions. If Oracle originally delivered the object definition, then it can be considered obsolete in the new release. This value can also indicate that you originally created the object definition for some custom functionality. To ensure the integrity and functionality of the system, delete obsolete Oracle-delivered objects. If you have made a customization to an obsolete object, refer to the product's Release Notes to assess the functionality of the customization and determine where to reapply it in the new release.

See Appendix: "Using the Comparison Process."

Warning! Pay close attention to the compare results for URLs, permission lists, and message nodes. It is highly likely that you will want to keep any customizations that you have made to these objects. You will want to migrate your customized local message node. Please be sure to select the Upgrade Flags from within Application Designer to retain these customizations.

Note. Steps in the database or third-party software installation documentation can result in Oracle-delivered objects being identified in the compare reports as **Changed* in the Source column. You should investigate all instances where objects are identified as **Changed* in the Source column to determine their origin and determine a plan of action based on the findings for each object.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 3-5-2: Reviewing NonComparable Objects

The UPGNONCOMP project is delivered in your Demo database. It contains object definitions that cannot be compared using Application Designer. The UPGNONCOMP project for your upgrade may contain some or all objects of the following object types: trees, access groups, roles, dimensions, cube definitions, and cube instance definitions. These object definitions are required for your upgraded database to function correctly. You need to review this project to see whether you customized any of the objects. You then need to reapply those customizations later in the upgrade.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

CHAPTER 4

Apply Application Changes

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding Application Changes
- Customizing the New Release
- Running New Release Upgrade Copy
- Updating Database Overrides
- Backing Up After the Upgrade Copy
- Configuring ChartFields
- Modifying the Database Structure
- Loading Data for Data Conversion
- Restoring New Release Demo
- Applying Updates Before Data Conversion
- Configuring Scheduler and Server
- Backing Up Before Data Conversion
- Running Data Conversion
- Backing Up After Data Conversion
- Finalizing the Database Structure
- Running Maintenance Pack Scripts
- Loading Data to Complete System Setup
- Loading Stored Statements
- Updating Language Data
- Completing PeopleTools Conversion
- Updating Object Version Numbers
- Completing the Service Operation Upgrade
- Running the Final Audit Reports

Understanding Application Changes

Earlier in the upgrade, you made various application changes. Now it is time to apply these application changes to your Copy of Production database.

Task 4-1: Customizing the New Release

This section discusses:

- Understanding New Release Customizations
- Copying the UPGCUST Project
- Reviewing Copy Results

Understanding New Release Customizations

In this task, the UPGCUST project is copied from the Copy of Production database to the Demo database.

Note. If you are running Sybase, check the configuration parameter for open objects. If this parameter is set too low, you may encounter the following error: `ct_connect(): network packet layer: internal net library error during the compare or copy process`. If you encounter this error, you need to increase the value of this parameter accordingly.

Task 4-1-1: Copying the UPGCUST Project

This step copies your customized PeopleTools and application objects from the Copy of Production database to your Demo database.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-1-2: Reviewing Copy Results

Review the results of the project copies that were performed in this task. For each of the projects copied, review the copy logs for any errors. Also, verify in Application Designer that each of the projects copied shows the Done options are checked for those objects you expected to be copied.

There are many different errors you can find in the copy logs, depending on which objects you chose to copy or not copy. For example, if you chose not to copy a record definition, but neglected to clear the PeopleCode Upgrade check box for that record, you will receive errors when trying to copy the PeopleCode. Application Designer maintains PeopleTools integrity during the copy and will not copy PeopleCode for records that do not exist.

Review any errors you receive during the copy process and determine whether they are acceptable cases or unacceptable errors that need correction. In the example above, either the PeopleCode error is acceptable because you do not intend to copy the record definition, or the error is unacceptable and you should copy the record and then copy the PeopleCode for that record again.

You may get messages similar to “Warning: FIELDNAME is a key field and has been appended to the end of the RECORDNAME record.” This is an acceptable message and you can ignore it.

The following error occurs when copying a Portal Registry Structure that has a different PORTAL_OBJNAME but the same PORTAL_URLTEXT as an existing registry object.

```
Duplicate Key. Portal: portalname, Obj name: objectname, CP: nodename, URL (1st 50⇒
char): URL
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-2: Running New Release Upgrade Copy

This section discusses:

- Exporting Selected PeopleTools Tables
- Importing Selected PeopleTools Tables
- Copying the UPGCUSTIB Project
- Swapping PeopleTools Tables
- Creating the UPGIBCOPY Project
- Copying the UPGIBCOPY Project
- Updating Target Values
- Copying the UPGNONCOMP Project
- Reviewing Project Copy Results
- Exporting New Release Objects
- Importing New Release Objects
- Resetting Object Version Numbers
- Backing Up New Release Demo Again

Task 4-2-1: Exporting Selected PeopleTools Tables

Depending on your upgrade path you will need to export one or more PeopleTools tables to preserve values on your Copy of Production database. This step exports PeopleTools tables in the Copy of Production before the upgrade copy has occurred.

The script for your upgrade path is:

```
DLUPX96E.DMS
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-2-2: Importing Selected PeopleTools Tables

Depending on your upgrade path you will need to import one or more PeopleTools tables to preserve values on your Copy of Production database. This step imports PeopleTools tables into the Demo database before the upgrade copy occurs.

The script for your upgrade path is:

```
DLUPX96I.DMS
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-2-3: Copying the UPGCUSTIB Project

This step copies your customized Integration Broker objects from the Copy of Production database to your Demo database.

See Customizing the New Release, Reviewing Copy Results.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-2-4: Swapping PeopleTools Tables

This step swaps the base language for tables that contain PeopleTools Managed Object data and related language data on your Demo database. This is in preparation for the step, “Exporting New Release Objects.” This script should only be run if your Copy of Production has a base language other than English. The script name for your upgrade path is:

```
PT_RELEASE_SWAP.DMS
```

If you would like to automate this step, follow the procedure below.

To make this step automated:

1. Select the step Swapping PeopleTools Tables in Change Assistant.
2. Open the Step Properties dialog box.
3. Change the Type from *ManualStop* to *DataMoverUser*.
4. Click OK.
5. In your upgrade job, mark the step as Run.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	Non-English Base Language

Task 4-2-5: Creating the UPGIBCOPY Project

In this step, you create the UPGIBCOPY project and use it to upgrade your Integration Broker objects to the new release.

To create the UPGIBCOPY project:

1. Launch PeopleTools and sign on to the New Release Demo database.
2. From Application Designer, select File, New...
3. Select Project, and then click OK.
4. Select Insert, Definitions into Project...
5. Select *Messages* from the Object Type drop-down list box.
6. Click Insert, and then click Select All.
7. Click Insert.
8. Repeat steps 5, 6, and 7 for the following object types:
 - Services
 - Service Operations
 - Service Operation Handlers
 - Service Operating Versions
 - Service Operation Routings
 - IB Queues
9. Click Insert, and then click Close.
10. Select File, Save All.
11. Enter the project name UPGIBCOPY.

Warning! You must name the project UPGIBCOPY or the next step will fail.

12. Click OK.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-2-6: Copying the UPGIBCOPY Project

In this step, copy all objects in the project, UPGIBCOPY. This project consists of Oracle-delivered Integration Broker objects as well as any customizations you may have selected to copy to the New Release Demo in a previous step.

See Copying the UPGCUSTIB Project.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-2-7: Updating Target Values

This step updates the Message Node table on the Demo database to keep the assignment of the Local Node defined in the Copy of Production. The update uses the copy of the Message Node table taken earlier in the upgrade.

The script for your upgrade path is:

```
DLUPX97.DMS
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-2-8: Copying the UPGNONCOMP Project

In this step, copy the non-compare project, UPGNONCOMP. This project consists of object types you cannot compare and object types not included in your compare project. In a previous step, you reviewed this Oracle-delivered project and modified the Upgrade check box for any objects you did not want to copy.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-2-9: Reviewing Project Copy Results

Review the results of the UPGCUSTIB, UPGIBCOPY, and UPGNONCOMP project copy steps that were performed earlier in this task. Review each copy log for any errors and verify in Application Designer that the Done options are checked for the objects in each of the projects. To verify Done options for UPGIBCOPY and UPGNONCOMP, you would log in to the Demo database, whereas to verify Done options for UPGCUSTIB, you would log in to your Copy of Production database.

There are many different errors you can find in the copy logs, depending on which objects you chose to copy or not copy. Review any errors you received during the copy process to determine whether they are acceptable cases or unacceptable errors that need corrective action.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-2-10: Exporting New Release Objects

This step exports the new release objects and your customizations that you copied to the Demo database in an earlier step, to a file.

The script name for your upgrade path is:

```
PT_RELEASE_EXPORT.DMS
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-2-11: Importing New Release Objects

This step imports the new release objects and your customizations into your Copy of Production database.

The script name for your upgrade path is:

```
PT_RELEASE_IMPORT.DMS
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-2-12: Resetting Object Version Numbers

In this step, you run the VERSION Application Engine program. This ensures that all of your version numbers are correct and, if not, resets them to 1.

Note. You will rerun the VERSION Application Engine program later in the upgrade. If you want to preserve the log files generated by Change Assistant from this run, you will need to manually rename the files after completing this step.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-2-13: Backing Up New Release Demo Again

Back up your New Release Demo database now. This enables you to restart your upgrade from this point, should you experience any database integrity problems during the remainder of the tasks in the upgrade process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-3: Updating Database Overrides

This section discusses:

- Understanding Database Overrides
- Set Index Parameters After Copy
- Set Tablespace Names After Copy
- Set Record Parameters After Copy
- Create New Tablespaces

Understanding Database Overrides

In this task, you update PeopleSoft PeopleTools tables with DDL information from your physical database DDL. You may have overwritten information about where tables exist in your database during the copy project steps of this upgrade. The following steps synchronize your PeopleSoft PeopleTools table definitions with your database again.

In the new release, certain tables have moved from 4K to 32K page size tablespaces. Make sure these tables are created or altered in the 32K tablespaces. See the reference below for a complete list of tables.

See Appendix, “Reviewing Tablespaces.”

Task 4-3-1: Set Index Parameters After Copy

This step updates index overrides stored in the PSIDXDDLPRM table. The values stored in the PARMVALUE field are updated with current values found in the system catalog. The name of the process is:

SETINDEX.SQR

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	Oracle DB2 z/OS	All

Task 4-3-2: Set Tablespace Names After Copy

This step updates tablespace names stored in the PSRECTBLSPC table. In addition, the values stored in the DDLSPACENAME field are updated with current values found in the system catalog. If you modified tablespace names from the Oracle-delivered names, this process makes those same changes in the PeopleSoft system record definition. It also corrects any tablespace names that were reset with values from the Demo database during the copy project step. The process then lists any tablespaces defined in the PeopleSoft PeopleTools tables that are not currently on your database. Use this report to create new tablespaces later in this task. The name of the process is:

SETSPACE.SQR

Note. This step updates both the database and tablespace names in the PSRECTBLSPC table for DB2 z/OS sites. The report produced by this process lists database/tablespace combinations that were not defined in the DB2 system catalog. The report may show your Demo database and tablespace names instead of your Copy of Production database and tablespace names. You will correct this situation when you create new tablespaces.

See Create New Tablespaces.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	Oracle Informix DB2 UNIX/NT DB2 z/OS	All

Task 4-3-3: Set Record Parameters After Copy

This step updates table overrides stored in the PSRECDDLPRM table. The values stored in the PARMVALUE field are updated with the current values found in the system catalog. The name of the process is:

SETTABLE.SQR

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	Oracle	All

Task 4-3-4: Create New Tablespaces

This section discusses:

- Prerequisites
- Creating Oracle Delivered Tablespaces
- Creating Custom Tablespaces

Prerequisites

Before you perform this step, you must make sure your database administrator has created all new tablespaces that will be used in new tables.

Note. DB2 z/OS sites need to create databases as well as tablespaces at this time.

Creating Oracle Delivered Tablespaces

If you use Oracle-delivered tablespace names, be aware that there may be new ones in this release. The report that you produced when you set tablespace names after copying provides a list of tablespaces that are missing from your database.

See Set Tablespace Names After Copy.

You need to create all the tablespaces on the report listed as missing on the database. Once you create all the tablespaces, you can rerun the SETSPACE.SQR; the report should show that no additional modifications are needed.

Note. For DBX sites, create all the tablespaces on the report listed as missing on the database in addition to the corresponding index (IDX) tablespace.

Oracle delivered a shell SQL script containing the DDL commands to create all the Oracle-delivered tablespaces. Edit the script to create just the new tablespaces and to set up the script for your environment.

Note. Oracle reassigned some tables to larger tablespaces because they now require a 32-KB buffer pool. You must manually edit the Create Table statements in the upgrade scripts to replace the tablespace names with an appropriate tablespace name in your implementation that utilizes a 32-KB buffer pool.

The script name is:

```
EPDDL.SQL (EPDDL.U.SQL for DB2 z/OS Unicode)
```

Important! For DB2 UNIX/NT sites, the script name is EPDDL.DMS.SQL for ANSI, and EPDDL.DMSU.SQL for Unicode.

DB2 z/OS sites must also consider how database names are assigned. After the upgrade/copy is completed, some of the PeopleSoft PeopleTools metadata tables in your Copy of Production database will contain the database values from the Demo database. Review the SETSPACE SQR report for those tables that are reported as not defined in the database. If the report shows your Demo database names instead of your Copy of Production database names you can reset them with the following SQL:

```
UPDATE PSRECTBLSPC SET DBNAME = 'Copy of Production dbname'
WHERE DBNAME = 'Demo dbname'
```

Creating Custom Tablespaces

If you will use custom tablespaces, create those tablespaces now. Choose one of the following two methods to get the information into PeopleSoft PeopleTools:

- Update PeopleSoft PeopleTools for each record you will put into a custom tablespace. You can do this directly through Application Designer, or you can update PSRECTBLSPC directly by using the appropriate SQL for your site, as follows:

DB2 z/OS sites:

```
UPDATE PSRECTBLSPC
SET DBNAME = 'new dbname', DDLSPACENAME = 'new tablespacename'
WHERE DBNAME = 'current dbname'
AND DDLSPACENAME = 'current tablespacename';
```

All other sites:

```
UPDATE PSRECTBLSPC
SET DDLSPACENAME = 'new tablespacename'
WHERE DDLSPACENAME = 'current tablespacename';
```

To update each table individually, add the following clause to the predicate of the above statement, making sure you use the record name in this clause:

```
AND RECNAME = record name
```

The SETSPACE report contains the table name. The record name will not have the “PS_” prefix.

You can double-check that you created all tablespaces by rerunning the SETSPACE.SQR report. If you created all tablespaces for records defined in PeopleSoft PeopleTools, the report will be empty.

- When you edit the Create and Alter scripts, you can change the SQL to create the tables in the correct tablespaces. Later in this task you will set tablespace names, which will update PeopleSoft PeopleTools with the correct tablespaces or database/tablespace in DB2 z/OS. The report should be empty at that time.

Note. For DB2 z/OS sites, the SETSPACE report may list some database/tablespace combinations as “Table Undefined - DB/TS OK” when in fact the database name is one that was defined for your Demo database. This occurs if your Demo and Copy of Production databases are in the same DB2 subsystem. The SETSPACE.SQR detected that the database/tablespace combinations do exist in the subsystem and are therefore valid. Make sure that you update these database/tablespace names to match those that exist in your Copy of Production, using the instructions above.

Note. During the Move to Production pass, you will create these tablespaces when you populate tablespace data. You can reuse this script, or you can create a new script for your production environment. To reuse the script you have created for this task, save it and copy it into the PS_HOME\SCRIPTS directory that you use during the Move to Production pass.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools installation guide for DB2 UDB for z/OS for your new release, “Creating a Database,” Correcting Invalid Database/Tablespace Combinations.

See Modifying the Database Structure, Editing the Create and Alter Scripts.

See Modifying the Database Structure, Setting Tablespace Names.

See “Apply PeopleTools Changes,” Populating Tablespace Data.

See “Apply Changes to Production Database,” Performing the Move to Production.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	Oracle Informix DB2 z/OS DB2 UNIX/NT	All

Task 4-4: Backing Up After the Upgrade Copy

Back up your database now. This enables you to restart your upgrade from this point, should you experience any database integrity problems during the remaining tasks in the upgrade process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-5: Configuring ChartFields

This section discusses:

- Understanding ChartFields
- Updating Inactive ChartFields
- Copying UPG CF CONFIG Project Definition
- Building the UPG CF CONFIG Script
- Running the UPG CF CONFIG Script
- Copying UPG CF RENAME Project Definition
- Building the UPG CF RENAME Script

- Running the UPG CF RENAME Script
- Exporting Configuration Defaults
- Importing Configuration Defaults
- Running Configuration by Project Process
- Updating Asset Management ChartField SQC
- Exporting ChartField Configuration
- Importing ChartField Configuration

Understanding ChartFields

In this task you will apply your existing ChartField configuration to the new PeopleSoft objects that have been copied into your database. You will accomplish this by running the Configuration by Project process. The process will dynamically create the project UPG_CFDBCOMP containing the new objects, and use this project in running ChartField Configuration by Project.

Since this task simply applies your existing configuration actions with a Complete status to the new objects, you will also need to run the Full Configuration process after completing the upgrade in the following cases:

- You need to make changes to your current PeopleSoft ChartField configuration that did not exist in the previous release (for example, activate an additional ChartField, relabel a ChartField and so forth).
- You have licensed new products and you have not yet run the Full Configuration process to configure those products.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise Application Fundamentals 9.0 PeopleBook* “Configuring ChartFields.”

Task 4-5-1: Updating Inactive ChartFields

This step updates the PSDBFIELD table to reflect which ChartFields were previously active or inactive in your Copy of Production database before the upgrade.

The script name for your upgrade is:

DLEPFAU40.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-5-2: Copying UPG CF CONFIG Project Definition

This step copies the project definition from the Demo database to the Copy of Production database. This will only copy the project definition, not the objects in the project.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-5-3: Building the UPG CF CONFIG Script

This step generates the UPG_CF_CONFIG.SQL script that contains SQL to alter existing tables. This SQL will create and alter tables, and create views.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-5-4: Running the UPG CF CONFIG Script

In this step, you run the SQL script generated in the previous step.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-5-5: Copying UPG CF RENAME Project Definition

This step copies the project definition from the Demo database to the Copy of Production database. This will only copy the project definition, not the objects in the project. This project contains records with the column FIELDNAME added in the new release to allow the CF Configuration process to do a Rename ChartField action.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-5-6: Building the UPG CF RENAME Script

This step generates the UPG_CF_RENAME.SQL script that contains SQL to alter existing tables. This SQL will create and alter tables, and create views.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-5-7: Running the UPG CF RENAME Script

In this step, you run the SQL script generated in the previous step.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-5-8: Exporting Configuration Defaults

This script exports ChartField configuration data from the Demo database. This data is considered system data needed for the ChartField configuration steps that follow. The script name for your upgrade path is:

DLCGFAQ19E.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-5-9: Importing Configuration Defaults

This script imports the ChartField configuration data into the Copy of Production database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

DLCGFAQ19I.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-5-10: Running Configuration by Project Process

This step runs the AE process UPG_CFCONFIG. This process applies all existing ChartField configuration actions on table FS_CF_ACT_LOG with a CF_STATUS of C (Complete) to the objects in project UPG_CFDBCOMP. Project UPG_CFDBCOMP is created by the process and contains records from the upgrade compare project UPGDBCOMP1 and pages from the upgrade compare project UPGDBCOMP2.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-5-11: Updating Asset Management ChartField SQC

This step runs the SQR AMCFBULD, which updates the file AMCHARTS.SQC. Once the process completes successfully, you will find a new AMCHARTS.SQC in your TEMP directory. Move AMCHARTS.SQC into your production SQR directory.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	Asset Management	All	All

Task 4-5-12: Exporting ChartField Configuration

To avoid running the ChartField Configuration process again in the Move to Production passes, this step exports the data updated by this process from your first Copy of Production database. The script name for your path is:

MVCGFAU25E.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	MTP	All	All	All

Task 4-5-13: Importing ChartField Configuration

This script imports the data into the new Copy of Production Database. The script name for your path is:

MVCGFAU25I.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	MTP	All	All	All

Task 4-6: Modifying the Database Structure

This section discusses:

- Understanding Modifying the Database Structure
- Backing Up for DB2
- Building the Upgrade Tables Script
- ReCreating Upgrade Tables
- Creating the ALLTEMPTABS Project
- Building the Create Temp Tables Script
- Creating the ALLTABS Project
- Building the Create and Alter Scripts
- Editing the Create and Alter Scripts
- Creating Temporary Tables
- Creating Tables
- Altering Tables
- Creating Indexes
- ReCreating Triggers
- Reviewing the Create Indexes Log
- Dropping Indexes for Data Conversion
- Creating Indexes for Data Conversion
- Creating Upgrade Views
- Setting Index Parameters
- Setting Temp Table Tablespace Names
- Setting Tablespace Names
- Setting Record Parameters
- Generating a DB2 UNIX RUNSTATS Script
- Updating Statistics for DB2 UNIX
- Updating Statistics for DB2 zOS
- Updating Statistics for Informix
- Updating Statistics for Oracle

Understanding Modifying the Database Structure

In this task you create and run various scripts and processes that will modify your database structure, including creating new tables and indexes, altering tables that have changed, and re-creating modified indexes.

Note. In the Change Assistant job, some of the steps may complete without error, but display a Warning icon indicating that warning messages exist in the log file.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Software Updates for your new release, “Error Handling.”

Task 4-6-1: Backing Up for DB2

If you are using the DB2 z/OS platform, back up your database now. This enables you to restart your upgrade from this point if you should experience any database integrity problems during the remaining tasks in the upgrade process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	MTP	All	DB2 z/OS	All

Task 4-6-2: Building the Upgrade Tables Script

This step generates the SQL script to drop and re-create all the tables in the project named UPGCONVERT. These tables will be used during data conversion by Application Engine programs. They can be safely dropped at this time because they do not contain application data required by your PeopleSoft system.

The script name for your upgrade path is:

UPGCONVERT_CRTTBL.SQL

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-6-3: ReCreating Upgrade Tables

This step runs the SQL script you generated to re-create all the tables in the project named UPGCONVERT.

The script name for your upgrade path is:

UPGCONVERT_CRTTBL.SQL

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-6-4: Creating the ALLTEMPTABS Project

This step creates a project named ALLTEMPTABS and inserts all records of the type *Temporary Table*.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-6-5: Building the Create Temp Tables Script

This step generates the SQL script to drop and re-create all the records of type Temporary Table in the database. Processes use the Temporary Tables dynamically in your system. They can be safely dropped at this time because they do not contain transaction data required by your PeopleSoft system.

The script name for your upgrade path is:

`ALLTEMPTABS_CRTTBL.SQL`

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-6-6: Creating the ALLTABS Project

This step creates a project named ALLTABS and inserts all records of the type *Table*.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-6-7: Building the Create and Alter Scripts

This step generates the SQL script to create all new records of the type *Table*. The script name is:

`ALLTABS_CRTTBL.SQL`

This step generates the SQL script to alter all existing records of the type *Table*. This script is referred to as Alter Without Deletes. The tables are altered to add new columns, rename existing columns and change columns that have modified properties, such as length. Columns that will eventually be deleted will still exist on the tables after this script is executed. The script name is:

`ALLTABS_ALTTBL.SQL`

This step also generates the SQL script to create new indexes and to re-create modified indexes as needed for the tables in the first two scripts. The script name is:

`ALLTABS_CRTIDX.SQL`

Note. This step also creates the script ALLTABS_CRTTRG.SQL, which re-creates all database triggers. You do not need to run this script, because all database triggers will be created in the “Finalizing the Database Structure” task.

Note. For DB2 z/OS sites, if this step takes an exceptionally long time, performing a RUNSTATS on the system catalog tablespace SYSDBASE may improve performance.

See Finalizing the Database Structure.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-6-8: Editing the Create and Alter Scripts

In this step, you will edit the SQL create and alter scripts for tablespace names and sizing. The script names for your upgrade path are:

```
ALLTEMPTABS_CRTTBL.SQL
ALLTABS_CRTTBL.SQL
ALLTABS_ALTTBL.SQL
ALLTABS_CRTIDX.SQL
```

If you are not using the PeopleSoft tablespace names, you will need to review and modify the scripts above. When the new record was copied to the Copy of Production database, the PeopleSoft default tablespace name was copied as well. When you performed the step, “Create New Tablespaces,” you were given the option to correct the tablespace names online or to wait and edit the scripts. After you have completed running these scripts you will run the programs that synchronize the PeopleTools definitions with the database catalog again. Therefore, any changes you make to the scripts now will be reflected in the PeopleTools definition. Have your database administrator review these scripts and modify the tablespace names appropriately.

Many of the new tables and indexes will be populated during the upgrade. If they are not sized appropriately for your database, the conversion programs will stop with errors. After the upgrade is complete, you may want your database administrator to review and make adjustments to the amount of free space left in some of the tables or tablespaces.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 z/OS DB2 UNIX/NT Oracle Informix	All

Task 4-6-9: Creating Temporary Tables

This step runs the SQL script you generated to create all the records of the type *Temporary Table*. The script name for your upgrade path is:

```
ALLTEMPTABS_CRTTBL.SQL
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-6-10: Creating Tables

This step runs the SQL script you generated to create all the records of the type *Table*. This step creates new table structures in your database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

```
ALLTABS_CRTTBL.SQL
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-6-11: Altering Tables

This step runs the SQL script you generated to alter the existing records of type *Table*. This step alters existing PeopleSoft table structures to comply with your new PeopleSoft release.

The script name for your upgrade path is:

```
ALLTABS_ALTTBL.SQL
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-6-12: Creating Indexes

This step runs the SQL script you generated to create indexes on records of the type *Table*. This step creates or modifies indexes as required.

The script name for your upgrade path is:

ALLTABS_CRTIDX.SQL

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-6-13: ReCreating Triggers

This step executes the script CREATETRGR.DMS, which will re-create all PeopleSoft triggers in the database. The triggers on PeopleSoft tables were invalidated when the tables were altered and need to be re-created.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 4-6-14: Reviewing the Create Indexes Log

When Change Assistant runs the create indexes script to create indexes, it will not stop when it encounters errors. When you view the log file, you will see that some indexes cannot be created due to unique index constraints. The data causing those indexes to fail will be updated during the task, “Running Data Conversion.” The indexes will then create successfully during the task, “Finalizing the Database Structure.”

Review the errors in the log file. Unique constraint errors are acceptable. If you see any other types of index creation errors, such as space problems, you must correct them before you continue with the upgrade. If you do not correct the errors, it may degrade your performance during data conversion.

The log file name for your upgrade path is:

ALLTABS_CRTIDX.LOG

See Running Data Conversion.

See Finalizing the Database Structure.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-6-15: Dropping Indexes for Data Conversion

Drop the following indexes using the SQL tool of your choice. These tables are changing key structure and data conversion cannot update the new columns if these old indexes exist. Some of these indexes may not exist because they did not create in the earlier Create Indexes step. This is acceptable.

Table Name	Index Name
PS_PC_BUD_DETAIL	PS_PC_BUD_DETAIL

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-6-16: Creating Indexes for Data Conversion

During this step, you will create indexes to improve performance during data conversion. These indexes are only used for the purposes of data conversion. They are not required for regular operation of the products, therefore they were not created in previous steps nor are they delivered with the record definitions on the Demo database. In this step you are asked to manually create those indexes that apply to you (not using Application Designer).

It is important to follow the following naming convention so the Alter with Deletes script you run in the task “Finalizing Database Structure” will drop these indexes automatically. Use PS[X]Record Name where X is any letter A-Z. For example, if you have to create an index for table PS_COUNTRY_TBL a proper index name would be PSUCOUNTRY_TBL. If an additional index is required for that same table, you can then name it (for example) PSYCOUNTRY_TBL. However, it is important to ensure that the new name of the index you are creating is not defined in the database already.

Not all listed indexes are required for all customers. Reading the comments with each listed index will help you determine if the index is applicable to your specific upgrade. Work with your database administrator to create a script that will build the indexes in your Copy of Production. You can then modify the Change Assistant Template to automate this step (for the initial pass and all future passes too). To do that, go to the Upgrade Template view, then right-click on the step and edit the step properties. Add your script name, without the file extension, in the Script/Procedure field and change the Type to SQL Script.

After reading the comments to determine whether the index is applicable to your situation, create or modify the following indexes in your Copy of Production database:

Table	With Columns	Comments
PS_BI_LINE	ORDER_NO BUSINESS_UNIT_OM ORDER_INT_LINE_NO	This index should be non-unique.
PS_CM_ACCTG_LINE	TRANSACTION_GROUP BUSINESS_UNIT_OM BUSINESS_UNIT ORDER_NO ORDER_INT_LINE_NO SCHED_LINE_NO INV_ITEM_ID SEQ_NBR SHIP_ID CHARGE_TYPE CM_BOOK	This index should be non-unique. This improves the performance of the data conversion code where BUSINESS_UNIT_OM has been added as an additional key on CM_ACCTG_LINE.
PS_CM_DEplete	TRANSACTION_GROUP BUSINESS_UNIT INV_ITEM_ID CM_BOOK DT_TIMESTAMP SEQ_NBR	This index should be non-unique. It prevents full table scan during insertion into table CM_UNDEplete.
PS_CNTRCT_HDR	CNTRCT_TYPE CNTRCT_PROC_OPT	This index should be non-unique. Fields CNTRCT_TYPE and CNTRCT_PROC_OPT on table CNTRCT_HDR are used to convert contract process option from 'GN' - General to 'PO' - Purchase Order.
PS_CNTRCT_HDR	VCHR_SRC	This index should be non-unique. Field VCHR_SRC on table CNTRCT_HDR is used to convert contract process option and contract type for recurring PO vouchers and contracts.

Table	With Columns	Comments
PS_CUST_CONVER_DTL	CONVR_QUALIFIER_CD BUSINESS_UNIT CUST_ID CONVR_QUAL_FIELD ITEM_LINE	This index should be non-unique. ARM05 will use this table to update all ITEM records where a CUST_CONVER_DTL exists. (CONVR_QUAL_FIELD is ITEM when CONVR_QUALIFIER_CD = 'I').
PS_INTFC_BI	ORDER_NO BUSINESS_UNIT_OM ORDER_INT_LINE_NO SCHED_LINE_NBR	This index should be non-unique.
PS_INTFC_BI_CMP	BUSINESS_UNIT_OM ORDER_NO ORDER_INT_LINE_NO SCHED_LINE_NBR TRANS_TYPE_BI	This index should be non-unique.
PS_INV_RECV_LN	SOURCE_BUS_UNIT INV_ITEM_ID	This index should be non-unique. Fields SOURCE_BUS_UNIT and INV_ITEM_ID on table INV_RECV_LN are used in two major updates in the Inventory data conversion code.
PS_ITEM	VAT_ENTITY	This index should be non-unique. It is only used when processing VAT in Receivables. It will improve performance for several steps in section ARM05.
PS_PENDING_ITEM	VAT_ENTITY	This index should be non-unique. It is only used when processing VAT in Receivables. It will improve performance for several steps in section ARM01.
PS_PL_ITEM_ATTRIB	SALES_CONSUMP EXTRA_CONSUMP	This index should be non-unique. Fields SALES_CONSUMP and EXTRA_CONSUMP on table PL_ITEM_ATTRIB are used in update in the Supply Planning data conversion code.

Table	With Columns	Comments
PS_PO_CMQTYSTD_IN	PROCESS_INSTANCE BUSINESS_UNIT PO_ID LINE_NBR SCHED_NBR CONVERSION_RATE	This index should be non-unique. Conversion rate is used to calculate the expected PO quantity in the standard UOM, which is stored on the distribution.
PS_PO_LINE_SHIP	VAT_TREATMENT_PUR	This index should be non-unique. Field VAT_TREATMENT_PUR on table PO_LINE_SHIP has been replaced by VAT_TREATMENT_GRP and VAT_TREATMENT.
PS_PROJ_RESOURCE	BUSINESS_UNIT_AM ASSET_ID	This index should be non-unique. It improves the performance in UPG_AM_F20 (AE/library) script, Section AMF20-01, Step Step580 (SQL/Update).
PS_SF_OUTPUT_LIST	BUSINESS_UNIT PRODUCTION_ID	This index should be non-unique. These fields are used to populate the main loop table used in the Product Configurator pegging update conversion.
PS_SF_PRDNID_HEADR	BUSINESS_UNIT PRODUCTION_ID PROD_STATUS	This index should be non-unique. Fields BUSINESS_UNIT, PRODUCTION_ID, and PROD_STATUS on table SF_PRDNID_HEADR are used in multiple updates in the Manufacturing data conversion code for Yield by Operation functionality.
PS_SF_PRDNID_HEADR	BUSINESS_UNIT PRODUCTION_ID PROD_STATUS BUSINESS_UNIT_OM ORDER_NO ORDER_INT_LINE_NO	This index should be non-unique. These fields are used to populate the main loop table used in the Product Configurator pegging update conversion.

Table	With Columns	Comments
PS_SUT_DFLT_TBL	SORT_SEQ_NUM	This index should be non-unique. Field SORT_SEQ_NUM (Character, 1) on table SUT_DFLT_TBL has been replaced by SORT_SEQ_NBR (Number, 3).
PS_SUT_DFLT_TBL	SUT_APPL_FLG	This index should be non-unique. The translate values for field SUT_APPL_FLG on table SUT_DFLT_TBL has been changed.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-6-17: Creating Upgrade Views

This step will create the views included in the project definition UPGVIEWS. These views are only needed for the manual setup tasks between here and running data conversion as well as data conversion itself.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-6-18: Setting Index Parameters

This step updates index overrides stored in the PSIDXDDLARM table. The values stored in the PARMVALUE field are updated with current values found in the system catalog. The name of the process is:

```
SETINDEX.SQR
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle DB2 z/OS	All

Task 4-6-19: Setting Temp Table Tablespace Names

This step populates the PeopleTools table PSRECTBLSPC with the table name, database name, and tablespace name information for the temporary table instances created on the database in a previous step. This information will be required by processes that perform in-stream RUNSTATS (%UpdateStats) on the temporary table instances. The name of the process is:

SETTMPIN.SQR

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 z/OS	All

Task 4-6-20: Setting Tablespace Names

This step populates all tablespace information in the PSRECTBLSPC table. The values stored in the DDLSPACENAM field are updated with current values found in the system catalog. If you modified tablespace names when you edited the SQL script that created your new tables from the Oracle-delivered names, this will make those same changes in the PeopleSoft record definition. The name of the process is:

SETSPACE.SQR

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle Informix DB2 UNIX/NT DB2 z/OS	All

Task 4-6-21: Setting Record Parameters

This step updates table overrides stored in the PSRECDDLPRM table. The values stored in the PARMVALUE field are updated with the current values found in the system catalog. The name of the process is:

SETTABLE.SQR

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 4-6-22: Generating a DB2 UNIX RUNSTATS Script

This step executes the RUNSTATS.SQR that creates the RUNSTATS.SQL to update the statistics on DB2 UNIX/NT.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 UNIX/NT	All

Task 4-6-23: Updating Statistics for DB2 UNIX

Earlier in the upgrade process, you updated your statistics. Now that you have copied your new objects and created new indexes, update your statistics again. Run the RUNSTATS.SQL script created in the previous step to improve performance of your data conversions and generation of the Alter with Delete script.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 UNIX/NT	All

Task 4-6-24: Updating Statistics for DB2 zOS

Earlier in the upgrade process, you updated your statistics. Now that you have copied your new objects and created new indexes, update your statistics again to improve performance of your data conversions and generation of the Alter with Delete script. Contact your database administrator to have the statistics updated on your database before proceeding with your upgrade.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 z/OS	All

Task 4-6-25: Updating Statistics for Informix

Earlier in the upgrade process, you updated your statistics. Now that you have copied your new objects and created new indexes, update your statistics again to improve performance of your data conversions and generation of the Alter with Delete script.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Informix	All

Task 4-6-26: Updating Statistics for Oracle

Earlier in the upgrade process, you updated your statistics. Now that you have copied your new objects and created new indexes, update your statistics again to improve performance of your data conversions and generation of the Alter with Delete script. Contact your database administrator to have the statistics updated on your database before proceeding with your upgrade.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

Task 4-7: Loading Data for Data Conversion

This section discusses:

- Swapping Languages on System Data
- Exporting Application Messages
- Importing Application Messages
- Exporting Record Groups
- Importing Record Groups
- Exporting the System Setup Data
- Importing the System Setup Data
- Exporting the PW Pagelet Data
- Importing the PW Pagelet Data
- Exporting the Pagelet Wizard Data
- Importing the Pagelet Wizard Data
- Exporting Upgrade Defaults
- Importing Upgrade Defaults
- Exporting Application Data
- Importing Application Data
- Exporting Data Conversion Driver Data

- Importing Data Conversion Driver Data

Task 4-7-1: Swapping Languages on System Data

This script swaps the base language for tables that contain system data on your Demo database and have related language data, in preparation for the system data exports in the next step. This script should be run only if your Copy of Production has a base language other than English. The script name for your upgrade path is:

DLEPLASWAP.DMS

If you want to make this step automated, follow the steps below.

To make this step automated:

1. Select the step Swapping Languages on System Data in Change Assistant.
2. Open the Step Properties dialog box.
3. Change the Type from *ManualStop* to *DataMoverUser*.
4. Click OK.
5. In your upgrade job, mark the step as Run.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	Non-English Base Language

Task 4-7-2: Exporting Application Messages

This step exports Application Messages data from the Demo database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

DLUPX01E.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-7-3: Importing Application Messages

This step imports Application Message data into your Copy of Production database. Message Sets 0-999 are overlaid during the PeopleTools Upgrade. Application Message Sets 1000-19,999 are overlaid with this task. If you have added custom messages in this set range, you must add those messages again at the end of the upgrade. To prevent this from happening again in future maintenance or upgrades, add your custom messages in a set range of 20,000 or greater.

Note. If the script fails, verify that your Configuration Manager Profile output and input directories are set to the same location. If not, this could be the cause of the problem.

The script name for your upgrade path is:

DLUPX01I.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-7-4: Exporting Record Groups

This step exports Record Group data from the Demo database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

DLUPX02E.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-7-5: Importing Record Groups

This step imports Record Group data and populates Set Control data in your Copy of Production database. The following records are related to Record Groups and Set Control data:

- REC_GROUP_REC
- REC_GROUP_TBL
- SET_CNTRL_TBL
- SET_CNTRL_GROUP
- SET_CNTRL_REC
- SETID_TBL

The import script deletes from, and then reloads, the Record Group tables, REC_GROUP_REC and REC_GROUP_TBL. These are the tables that are modified when you use PeopleTools, Utilities, Administration, Record Group. The script then rebuilds the related setID tables, PS_SET_CNTRL_GROUP and PS_SET_CNTRL_REC. The PS_SET_CNTRL_TBL and PS_SETID_TBL tables contain the setIDs you use in your system; this script does not update PS_SET_CNTRL_TBL. However, it does check for orphan setID references in PS_SET_CNTRL_REC and adds the missing setIDs to PS_SETID_TBL.

If you have moved an Oracle-delivered record into a custom added record group, and deleted the record from the Oracle-delivered record group, this script will put the record back into the Oracle-delivered record group and remove it from the custom added record group.

If you have created a new record group, it will be deleted in this step if all of its records are assigned to Oracle-delivered record groups in the new release. To continue using your custom record group, you will need to re-create it in the Reapply Customizations task.

This script creates an output file and uses it to create a temporary table. To run successfully, the Configuration Manager input and output Data Mover directories should be the same.

Note. If the script fails, verify that your Configuration Manager Profile output and input directories are set to the same location. If not, this could be the cause of the problem.

The script name for your upgrade path is:

DLUPX02I.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-7-6: Exporting the System Setup Data

This script exports the contents of the Message, Strings, Stored Statements, Record Group, data conversion driver, EDI, and Mass Change tables from the Copy of Production database during your Move to Production passes. During the initial pass, you ran other scripts to load this data and in some cases had to reapply customizations. This script exports the entire contents of these tables, including customizations, so that you will not need to reapply them after the Move to Production. The script name for your upgrade path is:

MVAPPEXP.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	MTP	All	All	All

Task 4-7-7: Importing the System Setup Data

This script imports the data exported in the previous step into your New Copy of Production database during your Move to Production passes. This script replaces many scripts that you ran in the initial pass. It will move all data in these tables so that any customizations you have added to these tables during your initial pass will be moved to your New Copy of Production database. Also, it will rebuild the Set Control tables using the Record Groups from the Copy of Production database and your current Set Control values on the New Copy of Production database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

MVAPPIMP.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	MTP	All	All	All

Task 4-7-8: Exporting the PW Pagelet Data

This script exports the application-specific Pagelet Wizard pagelet definition, header, footer, and category tables from the Demo database in the initial pass. The script name is:

DLUPX14E.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-7-9: Importing the PW Pagelet Data

This script imports the application-specific data for the Pagelet Wizard pagelet definition, header, footer, and category tables into your Copy of Production database during the initial pass. This data is needed for the data conversion. The script name is:

DLUPX14I.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-7-10: Exporting the Pagelet Wizard Data

This script exports the contents of the Pagelet Wizard tables from the Copy of Production database during your Move to Production passes. During the initial pass, you ran programs and scripts to load this data and in some cases had to make changes. This script exports the entire contents of these tables, including changes, so that you will not need to reapply them after the Move to Production. This data is needed for the data conversion. The script name is:

MVUPX16E.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	MTP	All	All	All

Task 4-7-11: Importing the Pagelet Wizard Data

This script imports the Pagelet Wizard tables from the Copy of Production database into the New Copy of Production during your Move to Production passes. This script replaces processes that you ran in the initial pass. It will move all data in the affected tables so that any changes you have made during your initial pass will be moved to your New Copy of Production database. This data is needed for the data conversion. The script name is:

MVUPX16I.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	MTP	All	All	All

Task 4-7-12: Exporting Upgrade Defaults

This script exports the upgrade default data values and mapping during your Move to Production passes. This is the data that you set up during the chapter “Prepare Your Database” of your initial upgrade pass. You will load this information into your New Copy of Production later in the Move to Production upgrade pass. The script name for your upgrade path is:

MVEP84EXP.DMS

See “Prepare Your Database.”

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	MTP	All	All	All

Task 4-7-13: Importing Upgrade Defaults

This script imports the upgrade default data values and mapping that you set up during the chapter “Prepare Your Database,” of your initial upgrade pass. The script name for your upgrade path is:

MVEP84IMP.DMS

See “Prepare Your Database.”

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	MTP	All	All	All

Task 4-7-14: Exporting Application Data

This script exports data from the Demo database for various application system data tables. The script name for your upgrade path is:

DLEPUPJ33E.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-7-15: Importing Application Data

This script imports data into your Copy of Production database. These tables are various application system data tables that contain data required for some data conversion programs. The remaining application system data will be loaded after tables are altered to delete obsolete columns. The script name for your upgrade path is:

DLEPUPJ33I.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-7-16: Exporting Data Conversion Driver Data

This step exports data conversion Application Engine driver data from the Demo database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

DLUPX03E.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-7-17: Importing Data Conversion Driver Data

This step imports data conversion Application Engine driver data into your Copy of Production database.

The script name for your upgrade path is:

DLUPX03I.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-8: Restoring New Release Demo

Restore your New Release Demo database from the backup you took in Chapter 1 earlier in the upgrade. The backup was taken before projects were copied and scripts were run against the Demo database. This is done to restore the environment to the original Demo database.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-9: Applying Updates Before Data Conversion

You should have downloaded and applied Required For Upgrade updates just after you installed your Demo database. Now is a great time to check PeopleSoft Customer Connection again for any new postings, and apply them now. Before data conversion, you should also verify that you have the most current UPGCONVERT.EXE.

This is just one place that you can apply updates. There are other places in the upgrade process where applying updates may be applicable as well. How you apply the update varies depending on where you are in the upgrade.

See Appendix: “Applying Fixes Required for Upgrade.”

Important! Apply all fixes listed under the product line/release, even if you have not licensed the product the fix is listed under. There are many interdependencies between products and database objects. If you do not apply the fix, you may be introducing another error in a different area of the conversion code.

To apply PeopleSoft project fixes before data conversion:

1. Download Required for Upgrade Change Packages using the “Download Change Package” functionality in Change Assistant.
2. Use Change Assistant to install and apply the updates into your Demo database for this upgrade pass. Review the documentation included with each update prior to applying the update.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Software Updates for your current release.

3. The project is now loaded on your Demo database. You should run a project compare to make sure the objects in the fix will not overwrite any of your customizations. If you find customizations, you must decide how to deal with them before you copy the fix to your Copy of Production.
4. If you are performing a Move to Production upgrade pass, first migrate the Change Packages into the Source database for this upgrade pass. If needed, first set up Change Assistant with the environment information for your Source database. If you customized any of the objects delivered in the Change Package, you should repackage the fix to include your customizations. If you did not customize any objects delivered in the fix you may directly apply it to the Source database.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Software Updates for your new release, “Applying Updates.”

5. Migrate the Change Packages into the Target database for this upgrade pass. If needed, first set up Change Assistant with the environment information for your Target database.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-10: Configuring Scheduler and Server

You can manually run data conversion jobs on the server. Refer to the appendix “Improving Performance” for instructions. If you choose to run data conversion manually, configure and start your process scheduler and application servers now.

Tips for configuring and starting the application server:

- Make sure the application server domain being configured points to the Target database for this pass of the upgrade.
- Set a different JSL port for each database instance.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools installation guide for your database platform for the new release.

See Appendix: “Improving Performance.”

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-11: Backing Up Before Data Conversion

Back up your database now. This enables you to restart your upgrade from this point, should you experience any database integrity problems during the remainder of the tasks in the upgrade process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-12: Running Data Conversion

This section discusses:

- Reviewing Data Conversion Tips
- Running Data Conversion for Group 1
- Running Data Conversion for Group 2
- Running Data Conversion for Group 3
- Running Data Conversion for Group 4
- Running Data Conversion for Group 5
- Running Data Conversion for Group 11

Note. In this task you will populate new tables and columns. Earlier, you altered tables and added all new and modified columns. You did not, however, remove obsolete columns. The following steps will move data from the obsolete columns to the new columns and tables. Later in this chapter, in the task “Finalizing the Database Structure,” you will generate and run SQL to delete those obsolete columns. The Upgrade Driver Application Engine program, UPG_DATACONV, will run all upgrade data conversions.

Task 4-12-1: Reviewing Data Conversion Tips

This section discusses:

- Upgrade Driver Program – UPG_DATACONV
- Data Conversion Documentation
- Running Data Conversion Concurrently
- Writing Data Conversion for Your Non-Oracle Records
- Data Conversion Errors Expected During the Initial Upgrade Pass
- Restarting Data Conversion

Upgrade Driver Program – UPG_DATACONV

UPG_DATACONV is an Application Engine program designed to run all upgrade data conversions. Each time the program is run during an upgrade pass, Change Assistant passes a group number parameter to the program. The program then reads the table PS_UPG_DATACONV, selecting all rows with that group number and ordering them by the sequence number on the row. A list of Application Engine library sections that must be run for data conversion is returned. The program then calls each section in the order of the sequence number. You can review the sections that are called by the Upgrade Driver program by accessing the Define Upgrade Drivers page on the Demo database.

Data Conversion Documentation

Each section called by the Upgrade Driver program contains comments describing the underlying conversion. By running the UDATAENV.SQR report you can find which sections are called by the Upgrade Driver program and what they are doing.

See Appendix: “Using Data Conversion Utilities.”

Running Data Conversion Concurrently

Each data conversion step in this task corresponds to a group number as defined in the Define Upgrade Drivers page. Each group is independent of the others unless otherwise documented, allowing the groups to be run concurrently. Oracle recommends that you run data conversion in the order it appears in your template during the initial upgrade pass to determine processing times. This is why the Change Assistant templates are delivered with the data conversion steps' "Run Concurrently" property set to *No*. To reduce overall processing time during your Move to Production passes, you may decide to run some or all conversion steps concurrently. To run steps concurrently, reset the "Run Concurrently" property to *Yes* in your Change Assistant template.

Note. Group 1 data conversion, run later in this task, can not be run concurrently with any of the other groups. It must be completed first before running any other data conversion.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Software Updates for your new release.

Writing Data Conversion for Your Non-Oracle Records

The data conversion code delivered for this upgrade was written to handle only Oracle-delivered records. You may have added your own records to the system. To convert data in the underlying tables, you may need to create your own Application Engine library. The Upgrade Driver program can call an Application Engine library section that you create. To have the Upgrade Driver program call your custom section during this task, you will need to add the section on the Define Upgrade Drivers page.

See Appendix: "Using Data Conversion Utilities."

Data Conversion Errors Expected During the Initial Upgrade Pass

During your initial upgrade pass you can expect to have data conversion programs fail. This is because your PeopleSoft software installation is unique, which makes it difficult to write data conversions that will work for everyone all of the time. Your database may be larger than most, you may have customized Oracle-defined records, or you may not have copied all object deletions onto your Copy of Production. These differences will cause data conversion to fail. You must fix each problem on your initial Copy of Production and restart the Application Engine program. Your fixes will be automatically copied to your New Copy of Production during the Move to Production passes and data conversion will run smoothly.

If you have customized records that are delivered from Oracle, you may need to make changes to the Application Engine programs to handle these customizations. For example, here are two situations in which you may need to customize data conversion code:

- If you added fields to a Oracle-delivered record, you may need to add your additional fields to the conversion code for those records.
- If a Oracle-delivered record you customized will be deleted, you may need to add your own conversions to move the data to a new location.

Use the Find In feature of Application Designer to determine which Application Engine programs affect your customized records.

To use the Find In feature:

1. Create a project and add all Application Engine programs and related objects that have a name starting with *UPG* and save the project.
2. Select Edit, Find In.
3. Enter each customized record name in the Find What field and your project name in the Project field.
4. Click Find.

The results will appear in the output window.

Document any changes you make to data conversion programs. This way, if a new version of the program is delivered through Customer Connection, you will know exactly what changes you have made. You can then reapply the changes to the new version of the program.

If your database is large, you may have data conversion programs that fail due to running out of space as you move data from one table to another. This problem can happen on all RDBMS platforms, but is more of a problem on those platforms using tablespaces. If your data conversion terminates abnormally with a space error, examine the Application Engine SQL statements that caused the problem. Determine where the data is coming from and how much will be moved. Have your database administrator adjust the allocated space accordingly. The data conversion can then be restarted.

If you get a data conversion error because a field does not exist on a table, and the field is not one you have customized, check your field renames. If a field that appears on a record that is deleted in the new PeopleSoft release but was not deleted in your compare and copy, your table will be out of sync with what is expected by data conversion. If you had deleted the record, the rename would not happen on the physical table and the field would have the old name. This is what the data conversion program expects. If you did not delete the record, the field was renamed during the altering of tables and the data conversion program will terminate abnormally. Edit the Application Engine SQL to use the name, which is now on your table, and then restart the data conversion.

See Appendix: “Using the Comparison Process.”

Restarting Data Conversion

Before restarting a data conversion step, rename the log file. Change Assistant uses the same log file name each time you start or restart an Application Engine program. This means that the restarted Application Engine program will replace the original log file if it is not renamed.

If your data conversion program fails, fix the problem on your Copy of Production and restart the program. When you set the data conversion step to Restart in your Change Assistant job, it will rerun the program using the `PROCESS_INSTANCE` and `RUN_CNTL_ID` from the initial run and the conversion will restart right after the last committed SQL command. Application Engine keeps track of data committed to the database in the table `PS_AERUNCONTROL`, keyed by `PROCESS_INSTANCE` and `RUN_CNTL_ID`.

See Finalizing the Database Structure.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-12-2: Running Data Conversion for Group 1

This step runs the `UPG_DATACONV` Application Engine program for Group 1. For additional documentation for Group 1, run the `UDATACNV` report.

Group 1 must execute successfully before any other groups (if applicable) can run. If there are other groups and you decide to run groups concurrently, Group 1 must complete before you launch any other groups.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-12-3: Running Data Conversion for Group 2

This step runs the UPG_DATACONV Application Engine program for Group 2. If you want to see additional documentation for Group 2, then run the UDATACNV report.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-12-4: Running Data Conversion for Group 3

This step runs the UPG_DATACONV Application Engine program for Group 3. If you want to see additional documentation for Group 3, then run the UDATACNV report.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-12-5: Running Data Conversion for Group 4

This step runs the UPG_DATACONV Application Engine program for Group 4. If you want to see additional documentation for Group 4, then run the UDATACNV report.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-12-6: Running Data Conversion for Group 5

This step runs the UPG_DATACONV Application Engine program for Group 5. If you want to see additional documentation for Group 5, then run the UDATACNV report.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-12-7: Running Data Conversion for Group 11

This step runs the UPG_DATACONV Application Engine program for Group 11. If you want to see additional documentation for Group 11, then run the UDATACNV report.

Group 11 must execute after all other groups complete successfully. If you decide to run groups concurrently, Group 11 must run after all other groups have completed.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-13: Backing Up After Data Conversion

Back up your database now. This enables you to restart your upgrade from this point, should you experience any database integrity problems during the remaining tasks in the upgrade process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-14: Finalizing the Database Structure

This section discusses:

- Understanding Final Database Structure
- Building the UPG SPL SYNCH Script
- Running the UPG SPL SYNCH Script
- Building the Alter with Deletes Scripts
- Altering Tables with Deletes
- Creating Indexes Again

- Creating Triggers
- Running the AE SYNCIDGEN Process
- Creating All Views

Understanding Final Database Structure

Now that Data Conversion is completed, this task will alter the tables to remove obsolete columns, and create final indexes and views.

Task 4-14-1: Building the UPG SPL SYNCH Script

This step generates the UPG_SPL_SYNCH.SQL script that contains SQL to alter existing tables. This SQL will alter tables using the Table Rename option.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-14-2: Running the UPG SPL SYNCH Script

In this step, you run the SQL script generated in the previous step.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-14-3: Building the Alter with Deletes Scripts

This step uses the previously created project ALLTABS and generates three SQL scripts: one that will alter tables to drop obsolete columns, one that will also create any remaining indexes that could not be created with the first alter, and one that will create triggers. The script names are:

```
ALLTABS_DEL_ALTTBL.SQL
ALLTABS_DEL_CRTIDX.SQL
ALLTABS_DEL_CRTRTG.SQL
```

Important! All indexes should create when the ALLTABS_DEL_CRTIDX.SQL script is run. When a unique index fails to create, it is probably due to a data conversion issue. If a unique index fails to create, you must resolve the issue and not simply remove the index. To prevent this issue, you can back up tables in the ALLTABS_DEL_ALTTBL.SQL script that will be dropping recfields that have data. This way, if you have an issue you may have the old fields and data you need to correct it.

Note. For DB2 z/OS sites, if this step takes an exceptionally long time, performing a RUNSTATS on the system catalog tablespace SYSDBASE may improve performance.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-14-4: Altering Tables with Deletes

This step executes the script ALLTABS_DEL_ALTTBL.SQL, which was generated in the previous step.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-14-5: Creating Indexes Again

This step executes the script ALLTABS_DEL_CRTIDX.SQL, which was generated in the previous step. All indexes should create at this time.

Important! Review the log to find any unique indexes that might have failed to create. All indexes should create at this time, so those errors are not acceptable and should be corrected. When a unique index fails to create, it is probably due to a data conversion issue.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-14-6: Creating Triggers

This step executes the script ALLTABS_DEL_CRTTRG.SQL, which was generated in a previous step.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-14-7: Running the AE SYNCIDGEN Process

This step executes the AE_SYNCIDGEN Application Engine program. Mobile applications use Sync IDs to give each row a unique identifier. For any tables with the Sync ID column set to the default value of zero, the AE_SYNCIDGEN program will populate the column with the next valid Sync ID value.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-14-8: Creating All Views

This step runs CREATEVW.DMS to re-create all views in the Copy of Production database. The script will try to create every view in Application Designer. If there is an error on one view, it will keep going until it gets to the end of the list.

Important! Review the log to find any views that failed to create. All views should create at this time, so those errors are not acceptable and should be corrected.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-15: Running Maintenance Pack Scripts

This section discusses:

- Understanding Running Maintenance Pack Scripts
- Running the Accounts Payable Script
- Running the Accounts Receivable Script
- Running the Contract Management Script
- Running the General Ledger Script
- Running the Order Management Script
- Running the Purchasing Script
- Running the Work Order Script
- Running the Strategic Sourcing Script
- Updating the Maintenance Log Table

Understanding Running Maintenance Pack Scripts

This task runs the scripts required for maintenance pack updates.

Task 4-15-1: Running the Accounts Payable Script

This step runs the DataMover commands delivered with PeopleSoft FSCM 9.0 Maintenance Pack 5 for accounts payable tables.

The script for your upgrade is:

MPAPX01.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-15-2: Running the Accounts Receivable Script

This step runs the DataMover commands delivered with PeopleSoft FSCM 9.0 Maintenance Pack 5 for accounts receivable tables.

The script for your upgrade is:

MPARX01.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-15-3: Running the Contract Management Script

This step runs the DataMover commands delivered with PeopleSoft FSCM 9.0 Maintenance Pack 5 for contract management tables.

The script for your upgrade is:

MPSCMTX01.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-15-4: Running the General Ledger Script

This step runs the DataMover commands delivered with PeopleSoft FSCM 9.0 Maintenance Pack 5 for PeopleSoft Enterprise General Ledger tables.

The script for your upgrade is:

MPGLX01.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-15-5: Running the Order Management Script

This step runs the DataMover commands delivered with PeopleSoft FSCM 9.0 Maintenance Pack 5 for PeopleSoft Order Management tables.

The script for your upgrade is:

MPOMX01.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-15-6: Running the Purchasing Script

This step runs the DataMover commands delivered with PeopleSoft FSCM 9.0 Maintenance Pack 5 for PeopleSoft Purchasing tables.

The script for your upgrade is:

MPPOX01.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-15-7: Running the Work Order Script

This step runs the DataMover commands delivered with PeopleSoft FSCM 9.0 Maintenance Pack 5 for work order tables.

The script for your upgrade is:

MPWOX01.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-15-8: Running the Strategic Sourcing Script

This step runs the DataMover commands delivered with PeopleSoft FSCM 9.0 Maintenance Pack 5 for PeopleSoft Strategic Sourcing tables.

The script for your upgrade is:

```
MPAUCX01.DMS
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-15-9: Updating the Maintenance Log Table

This step runs the DataMover script to update the Maintenance Log table with updates included with PeopleSoft FSCM 9.0 Maintenance Pack 5.

The script for your upgrade is:

```
MPFSCM9_MAINT_LOG5.DMS
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-16: Loading Data to Complete System Setup

This section discusses:

- Exporting Strings
- Importing Strings
- Exporting EDI Statements
- Importing EDI Statements
- Exporting Mass Change Data

- Importing Mass Change Data
- Exporting XML Service Information
- Importing XML Service Information
- Exporting Related Language System Data
- Importing Related Language System Data
- Exporting Application System Data
- Importing Application System Data
- Exporting Converted Application Base Data
- Importing Converted Application Base Data
- Exporting Notification Template Table
- Importing Notification Template Table
- Exporting Approval Framework System Data
- Importing Approval Framework System Data
- Exporting Common Portal System Options
- Importing Common Portal System Options
- Exporting Setup Data
- Importing Setup Data

Task 4-16-1: Exporting Strings

This script exports Strings data from the Demo database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

`DLUPX04E.DMS`

This data will be exported during Move to Production by the script `MVAPPEXP.DMS`.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-16-2: Importing Strings

This script imports Strings data into the Copy of Production database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

`DLUPX04I.DMS`

This data will be imported during Move to Production by the script `MVAPPIMP.DMS`.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-16-3: Exporting EDI Statements

This script exports EDI Statements from the Demo database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

`DLUPX05E.DMS`

This data will be exported during Move to Production by the script MVPRDEXP.DMS.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-16-4: Importing EDI Statements

This script imports the EDI Statements into the Copy of Production database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

`DLUPX05I.DMS`

This data will be imported during Move to Production by the script MVPRDIMP.DMS.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-16-5: Exporting Mass Change Data

This script exports Mass Change tables from the Demo database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

`DLUPX06E.DMS`

This data will be exported during Move to Production by the script MVAPPEXP.DMS.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-16-6: Importing Mass Change Data

This script imports Mass Change tables into the Copy of Production database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

```
DLUPX06I.DMS
```

This data will be imported during Move to Production by the script MVAPPIMP.DMS.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-16-7: Exporting XML Service Information

This script exports XML service data from the Demo database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

```
DLUPX13E.DMS
```

This data will be exported during Move to Production by the script MVPRDEXP.DMS.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-16-8: Importing XML Service Information

This script imports XML service data into the Copy of Production database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

```
DLUPX13I.DMS
```

This data will be imported during Move to Production by the script MVPRDIMP.DMS.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-16-9: Exporting Related Language System Data

This script exports system data from various application-related language tables in your Demo database into a Data Mover *.DAT file. In a later step, this data will be loaded into your Copy of Production. The script name for your upgrade path is:

```
DLEPLASYSE.DMS
```

Note. During Move to Production passes you can reuse the data files that are created by this export script. Preserve this DAT file, and set the Type of Upgrade property in the Change Assistant template to Initial Upgrade for this step.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Both	All	All	All Non-English

Task 4-16-10: Importing Related Language System Data

This script will delete old related language system data from related language tables. The script then imports the data exported by the scripts above. The script name for your upgrade path is:

DLEPLASYSI.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All Non-English

Task 4-16-11: Exporting Application System Data

This script exports system data from various application tables from the Demo database into a Data Mover *.DAT file. In a later step, this data will be loaded into the Copy of Production database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

DLEPSYSE.DMS

Note. During Move to Production passes, you can reuse the data files that are created by this export script. To do this, change the Type of Upgrade from Both to Initial Upgrade in the step properties and save the job.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-16-12: Importing Application System Data

This script imports the application system data, exported in the previous step, into the Copy of Production database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

DLEPSYSI.DMS

Note. Some of the data will be imported using the *ignore dups* option. These data loads will give the message “Error: duplicate SQL rows” and then give a “Successful completion” message. These error messages can be ignored because duplicate data is expected.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-16-13: Exporting Converted Application Base Data

To avoid running the ChartField Configuration process again in the Move to Production passes, this setup will export selected data updated by this process from your first Copy of Production Database. The tables exported in this script have been updated by some data conversions. The script name for your path is:

MVCGUPY27E.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	MTP	All	All	All

Task 4-16-14: Importing Converted Application Base Data

This script imports your ChartField Configuration data into the new Copy of Production database. The script name for your path is:

MVCGUPY27I.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	MTP	All	All	All

Task 4-16-15: Exporting Notification Template Table

This script exports the notification template information from the Demo database into a Data Mover *.DAT file. In a later step, this data will be loaded into the Copy of Production database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

DLGUPY39E.DMS

Note. During Move to Production passes, you can reuse the data files that are created by this export script. To do this, preserve this DAT file, and set the properties in the template for Initial Upgrade.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-16-16: Importing Notification Template Table

This script imports the system data, exported in the above step, into the Copy of Production database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

```
DLCGUPY39I.DMS
```

Note. Run this script using bootstrap mode.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-16-17: Exporting Approval Framework System Data

This script exports the approval framework system data from the Demo database into a Data Mover *.DAT file. In a later step, this data will be loaded into the Copy of Production database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

```
DLCGUPY41E.DMS
```

Note. During Move to Production passes, you can reuse the data files that are created by this export script. To do this, preserve this DAT file, and set the properties in the template for Initial Upgrade.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-16-18: Importing Approval Framework System Data

This script imports the system data, exported earlier in this task, into the Copy of Production database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

```
DLCGUPY41I.DMS
```

Note. Run this script using bootstrap mode.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-16-19: Exporting Common Portal System Options

This script exports the contents of the Common Portal System Options table from the Demo database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

DLEOX01E.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-16-20: Importing Common Portal System Options

This script imports the Common Portal System Options data into your Copy of Production database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

DLEOX01I.DMS

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-16-21: Exporting Setup Data

This script exports setup data from the Demo database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

DLUPX16E.DMS

This data will be exported during Move to Production by the script MVAPPEXP.DMS.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-16-22: Importing Setup Data

This script imports setup data into the Copy of Production database. The script name for your upgrade path is:

DLUPX16I.DMS

This data will be imported during Move to Production by the script MVAPPIMP.DMS.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-17: Loading Stored Statements

This section discusses:

- Running the STORECP Script
- Running the STOREFP Script
- Running the STOREGL Script
- Running the STOREIN Script
- Running the STORELC Script
- Running the STOREMG Script
- Running the STOREPO Script

Task 4-17-1: Running the STORECP Script

STORECP.DMS loads stored statements for COBOL programs owned by the Product Configurator product.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	Product Configurator	All	All

Task 4-17-2: Running the STOREFP Script

STOREFP.DMS loads stored statements for COBOL programs owned by the Flow Production product.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	Flow Production	All	All

Task 4-17-3: Running the STOREGL Script

STOREGL.DMS loads stored statements for COBOL programs owned by the General Ledger product.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	General Ledger	All	All

Task 4-17-4: Running the STOREIN Script

STOREIN.DMS loads stored statements for COBOL programs owned by the Inventory product.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	Inventory	All	All

Task 4-17-5: Running the STORELC Script

STORELC.DMS loads stored statements for COBOL programs for Global products and is loaded for several products that support VAT processing.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	Billing General Ledger Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 4-17-6: Running the STOREMG Script

STOREMG.DMS loads stored statements for COBOL programs owned by the Manufacturing product.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	Manufacturing	All	All

Task 4-17-7: Running the STOREPO Script

STOREPO.DMS loads stored statements for COBOL programs run by the Purchasing product.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	Purchasing	All	All

Task 4-18: Updating Language Data

This section discusses:

- Understanding Updating Language Data
- Run the TSRECPOP Script

Understanding Updating Language Data

In this task, you run scripts to modify data in PeopleSoft PeopleTools-related language tables.

Note. For DB2 z/OS customers, Oracle recommends that you run RUNSTATS against the system catalog tables at this time.

Task 4-18-1: Run the TSRECPOP Script

In this step, the TSRECPOP script initializes and modifies the data in PeopleSoft PeopleTools-related language architecture tables.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 4-19: Completing PeopleTools Conversion

The PeopleTools Upgrade Driver Application Engine program, PTUPGCONVERT, runs additional PeopleTools upgrade data conversions. The program then reads the table PS_PTUPGCONVERT, selecting all rows with a group number of 02 and ordering them by the sequence number on the row. A list of Application Engine library sections that must be run for data conversion is returned. The program then calls each section in the order of the sequence number. Review the report generated by PTU CONV.SQR for details on the conversions run in this step.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-20: Updating Object Version Numbers

In this task, you run the VERSION Application Engine program. This ensures that all of your version numbers are correct and, if not, resets them to 1.

Note. Do not update statistics after you complete this task.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-21: Completing the Service Operation Upgrade

This step runs a DataMover script to delete duplicate service operation handlers and routings.

The script name is:

`mpcox01.dms`

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-22: Running the Final Audit Reports

This section discusses:

- Run the Final DDDAUDIT Report
- Run the Final SYSAUDIT Report
- Create the FNLALTAUD Project

- Run the Final Alter Audit
- Review the Final Audits
- Run a Final SETINDEX Report
- Run a Final SETTABLE Report

Task 4-22-1: Run the Final DDDAUDIT Report

DDDAUDIT is an SQR that compares your production SQL data tables with the PeopleSoft PeopleTools record definitions to uncover inconsistencies. You can expect some errors from this report. You will review the output from the report in another step.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-22-2: Run the Final SYSAUDIT Report

SYSAUDIT is an SQR that identifies *orphaned* PeopleSoft objects. For example, SYSAUDIT will identify a module of PeopleCode that exists but does not relate to any other objects in the system. SYSAUDIT also identifies other inconsistencies within your database.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-22-3: Create the FNLALTAUD Project

In this step, you create the FNLALTAUD project and use it to run your final Alter Audit. Creating this new project now ensures that all the records in your system are audited, including SQL tables. This project also includes any custom records that you have created in your system.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-22-4: Run the Final Alter Audit

Run the PeopleSoft PeopleTools alter record process on all tables in your system to check whether the PeopleSoft PeopleTools definitions are synchronized with the underlying SQL data tables in your database. This process is called an Alter Audit. An Alter Audit compares the data structures of your database tables with the PeopleSoft PeopleTools definitions to uncover inconsistencies. The Alter Audit then creates an SQL script with the DDL changes needed to synchronize your database with the PeopleSoft PeopleTools definitions.

The Alter Audit script is built using the FNLALTAUD project created in the previous step.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-22-5: Review the Final Audits

The Alter Audit process creates SQL scripts that correct any discrepancies between your PeopleSoft PeopleTools record definitions and the database system catalog table definitions. Review the Alter Audit output and correct any discrepancies noted by running the generated scripts with your platform-specific SQL tool. The script names are:

FNLALTAUD_ALTTBL.SQL

FNLALTAUD_CRTIDX.SQL

Note. The Alter Audit process also creates the script FNLALTAUD_CRTTRG.SQL, which re-creates all database triggers. You do not need to run this script, since all database triggers were created in a previous task.

See Finalizing the Database Structure.

Note. For Informix sites, if your database has Application Functions, you use SQL to drop and re-create these functions and their associated indexes, even though the underlying tables and indexes have not changed.

Note. For Microsoft SQL Server and DB2 UNIX platforms, if your database has tables containing the MSSCONCATCOL or DBXCONCATCOL column, you will see SQL alter the tables and re-create their associated indexes, even though the underlying tables and indexes may not have changed.

Review the output from the SYSAUDIT and DDDAUDIT reports and correct any discrepancies.

Your DDDAUDIT listing shows some expected discrepancies. Tables and views deleted from the Application Designer are not automatically deleted from the system tables. Oracle takes this precaution in case you have customized information that you want to preserve. Therefore, the report lists any tables and views that the new release does not have. Review these tables to verify that you do not wish to preserve any custom data, and then drop the tables and views.

Your SYSAUDIT report may have some errors due to references to obsolete PeopleSoft-owned objects. For instance, if a PeopleSoft Permission List is deleted, and you have a Role that still refers to that Permission, then it will appear on the SYSAUDIT report.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: Data Management for your new release.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 4-22-6: Run a Final SETINDEX Report

The SETINDEX SQR updates index overrides stored in the PSIDXDDLPARM table. The SQR updates the values stored in the PARMVALUE field with current values found in the system catalog. Running SETINDEX cleans up fragmentation issues that may have occurred during data conversion.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	DB2 z/OS Oracle	All

Task 4-22-7: Run a Final SETTABLE Report

The SETTABLE SQR updates table overrides stored in the PSRECDDLPARM table. The SQR updates the values stored in the PARMVALUE field with the current values found in the system catalog. Running SETTABLE will clean up fragmentation issues that may have occurred during data conversion.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	Oracle	All

CHAPTER 5

Complete Database Changes

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding Database Changes
- Configuring the Upgrade Environment
- Reapplying Customizations
- Setting Up Security
- Completing Portal Data Conversion
- Backing Up Before Manual Changes
- Completing ChartField Configuration
- Reviewing PeopleTools Functionality
- Preparing the Content Provider Registry
- Updating the Portal Options Data
- Setting Country Codes
- Completing Credit Card Encryption
- Upgrading PeopleSoft Planning
- Updating Approval Transactions
- Rebuilding Verity Search Indexes
- Reconciling Notification Templates
- Completing Manufacturing Setup
- Completing Promotions
- Defining Auto Numbering for Price Rules
- Completing Billing Setup
- Configuring Order Management
- Configuring Attachments
- Completing Customer Data
- Completing Strategic Sourcing Setup
- Completing Services Procurement Setup
- Configuring PayBill Management
- Preparing Treasury Setup

- Reviewing Electronic Layouts for Banks
- Completing Setup for Projects
- Setting Up Expenses
- Setting Sync IDs
- Setting Resource Management
- Setting VAT Processing
- Performing Payables Setup
- Completing Receivables Changes
- Completing Deduction Management Setup
- Updating eSettlements
- Updating the General Ledger
- Setting Up Commitment Control
- Completing Asset Management Setup
- Completing Contracts Setup
- Stamping the Database
- Reviewing Change Control
- Backing Up Before Testing
- Testing Your Copy of Production

Understanding Database Changes

Many changes were made in the previous chapters of this documentation. In this chapter, you complete these changes so that you can begin testing your Copy of Production. By testing your Copy of Production, you ensure that you can still operate day-to-day processes on your new PeopleSoft release.

Task 5-1: Configuring the Upgrade Environment

This section discusses:

- Configure Application Server
- Configure Portal

Task 5-1-1: Configure Application Server

Running Portal requires a fully functional application server domain. In this step, you configure your application server.

Note. If you configured your application server earlier in the upgrade, you can skip this step.

Tips for configuring and starting the application server:

- Make sure that the Application Server domain you configure points to the Target database for this pass of the upgrade.
- Set a different JSL port for each database instance.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools installation guide for your database platform.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-1-2: Configure Portal

PeopleSoft applications are accessed through the Portal. You need to grant users access to complete the upgrade process. You must install and configure the Portal to complete the upgrade.

Note. If you configured your Portal earlier in the upgrade, you can skip this step.

You also must define a password on the Node Definitions page for Single Signon to work properly. If you do not define a password, the signon page appears when trying to access a report directly, instead of the report itself. To avoid this issue, follow the procedure below to assign a password.

To assign a password:

1. Select PeopleTools, Integration Broker, Integration Setup, Nodes.
2. Click Search.
3. Select the database's default local node.
The default local node shows a *Y* in the Default Local Node column.
4. On the Node Definitions page, select *Password* in the Authentication Option field.
5. Enter a password in the Password field.
6. Enter the password again in the Confirm Password field.
7. Enter the default user in the Default User ID field.
8. Save the node definition.
9. Reboot the application server and web server.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools installation guide for your database platform.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-2: Reapplying Customizations

This section discusses:

- Understanding the Reapplication
- Performing Customized Object Adjustment
- Registering Portal Navigation Objects

Understanding the Reapplication

In this task, you work with your customized objects to ensure that they are properly integrated into your upgraded database.

Task 5-2-1: Performing Customized Object Adjustment

When you reviewed your upgrade compare reports, you decided whether to take the Source or Target version of the objects. If you took the Oracle-delivered version of an object instead of your own customized version, you may need to customize the new objects to get the blend of new standard features and your custom features. In complex cases, this may take several iterations. You need to make manual adjustments to the objects to apply these customizations.

Once you reapply all of your customizations, you should run the DDDAUDIT and SYSAUDIT reports to make sure that you did not introduce any problems into your system.

Reapply any Mass Change or EDI customizations.

See “Prepare Your Database,” Identifying Customizations.

Be aware that you must not overwrite Oracle-loaded data. The customizations, extracted during an earlier step, must be manually applied now.

In another step, you applied the Oracle-delivered record group assignments.

See “Apply Application Changes,” Loading Data for Data Conversion, Importing Record Groups.

If you maintain any custom record group assignments, reapply them to your Copy of Production database now.

During Move to Production passes, you will not need to reapply these customizations. The changes you make now will be copied to any subsequent Copy of Production database using Data Mover scripts.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 5-2-2: Registering Portal Navigation Objects

You must register your customized objects, such as menus and components, in order to access them in Portal. You can use the Registration Wizard or the Menu Import process to grant access to the appropriate components. Make sure that you register your components for all of your portals (for example, Customer, Supplier, Employee, and so forth). Also, make sure that you select the node name that matches the database. Do not use the Local node.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Application Designer for your new release, “Using the Registration Wizard.”

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: Internet Technology for your new release, “Administering Portals.”

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 5-3: Setting Up Security

This section discusses:

- Understanding Security
- Set Up Security
- Synchronize CREF Permissions
- Grant Access to Personalize Homepage

Understanding Security

In this task you perform steps to set up security, grant access to the user ID, set up permissions lists, and grant access to navigation and homepages.

Task 5-3-1: Set Up Security

This section discusses:

- Understanding Security Setup
- Creating Security Objects: eSettlements Customers

- Updating Permissions and Roles: Services Procurement Customers

Understanding Security Setup

Select the PeopleTools, Security folder now to add the new PeopleSoft PeopleTools and application menus, delete old menus, and set up appropriate operator security for your system.

Many menu additions and deletions have occurred. Examine the menu compare report and the PeopleSoft Demo database for details of the required security changes, then decide which of your roles and permission lists should have access to each of the new menus.

Many tasks in this chapter instruct you to select a specific menu within the new PeopleSoft release. To perform these tasks, set up appropriate security for each of the menus referenced in each of the tasks.

See the PeopleSoft Enterprise Portal Solutions PeopleBook: Enterprise Portal Application Technology for your new release, information on Oracle-delivered security.

Note. Move to Production: If you changed the user profiles in your production system after you froze your PeopleSoft PeopleTools, you must manually apply the changes to your Copy of Production database before the end of the final Move to Production.

Creating Security Objects: eSettlements Customers

In prior releases of eSettlements, the application had predefined User IDs, Roles and Permission Lists that were required; the PeopleSoft software no longer requires these security objects. However, if you choose to create your own user IDs, Roles, and Permission Lists you may want to refer to our security objects. Some example user IDs are: BUYER, SELLER, LBA, LSA, and MPHOST. Some sample Roles start with “EM_” and our Permission Lists begin with “EPMP”.

Updating Permissions and Roles: Services Procurement Customers

Services Procurement broke out the approval permission list, EPSP5000, into separate permissions for each type of approval. Permission list EPSP5000 was previously associated with the SP_APPROVER role that allowed approval access to several functional areas including requisitions, work orders, time, expenses, progress logs, and invoicing. The table below lists the break out of the EPSP5000 approval permission list (EPSP5000 through EPSP5050). It also shows several new permissions that were added as a result of new features.

8.4x Permission List	Renamed/New Permission List
EPSP5000	EPSP5000 – Services Requisition Approval EPSP5010 – Services Work Order Approval EPSP5020 – Services Time Approval EPSP5030 – Services Progress Log Approval EPSP5040 – Services Invoice Approval EPSP5050 – Services Expense Approval
	EPSP8500 – Services Procurement Providers
	EPSP5500 – Services Resource Identifier

8.4x Permission List	Renamed/New Permission List
	EPSP8600 – Supplier Administrator
	EPSP9500 – Services Integration Analyst

Three new approval roles have been added for the specific functions of approving time, expenses, and invoicing. Other roles have also been added as a result of new functionality. You will want to realign the permissions and roles for all your approval users and users of the new features.

8.4x Roles	Modified/New Roles
SP_APPROVER SP_PLOG_APPROVER* SP_WO_APPROVER*	SP_APPROVER SP_PLOG_APPROVER SP_WO_APPROVER SP_EXPENSE_APPROVER SP_TIME_APPROVER SP_INV_APPROVER
SP_ALL_COORDINATOR (8.4 SP2 Only)	OBSOLETE
SP_APPROVER_STEP2	OBSOLETE
SP_DEVELOPER	OBSOLETE
	SP_INTEGRATION_SUPERVISOR
	SP_RESOURCE_IDENTIFY
	SP_SUPPLIER_ADMINISTRATOR
	SP_PROVIDER_CONTACT_BY_LOC*
	SP_ROLEUSER_BY_OPRID*
	SP_invoice_approver_by_timepl*
	SP_provider_contact_by_timepl*
	SP_sup_inv_approver_byinvoice*

* Indicates the role is used for workflow routing purposes only. No permission lists are added to these roles in the specified release.

Note. The SP_APPROVER role should still be used for requisition approvals.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise 9.0 Services Procurement PeopleBook*.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 5-3-2: Synchronize CREF Permissions

This section discusses:

- Understanding Content Reference Permissions
- Running the Portal Security Synchronization Process

Understanding Content Reference Permissions

As part of the PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.4x Portal architecture, Portal Registry Structures reference permission lists. At this point, however, the Portal Registry Structures copied from the Demo database do not reference any permission lists on the Copy of Production database. This synchronization program will match the existing permission lists to the appropriate Registry Structures and update it.

Note. The user ID that invokes this process must have the security role Portal Administrator. Otherwise, the process may terminate abnormally.

Note. Your Process Scheduler must be running to perform this task.

Running the Portal Security Synchronization Process

Follow the steps below to run the Portal security synchronization process.

To run the security synchronization process:

1. From your browser, sign in to your Target database.
2. Select PeopleTools, Portal, Portal Security Sync.
3. Click Add a New Value.
4. Enter the run control ID *UPG_PORTAL_SYNC_BOTH*.
5. Click Add.
6. Keep the default value for the default portal registry name in the Portal Name field (for example: *EMPLOYEE*, *CUSTOMER*, or *SUPPLIER*.)
7. Click Save.
8. Click Run.
9. In the Process Scheduler page, check that you set your parameters correctly.
10. Click OK.
11. Click the Process Monitor link to monitor the program's process.
12. Repeat steps 6 through 11 for each Portal name used in the database for your specific applications.

With each repetition, in step 6 change the Portal Name field to one of the following: *EMPLOYEE*, *CUSTOMER*, *SUPPLIER*, *MOBILE*, and so on.

13. Review any messages received during the running of this process with your Portal Administrator.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: Internet Technology for your new release.

Note. If the permission lists for your upgrade user do not allow you access to a component, you will encounter this error when running the security synchronization process for that page: `Security synchronization failed for Portal Object`. This error may indicate other problems with the component or folder, but you should check your security first.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 5-3-3: Grant Access to Personalize Homepage

This section discusses:

- Understanding Access to Portal Homepage
- Updating Homepage Personalization Permission List
- Adding the Portal User Role

Understanding Access to Portal Homepage

You must complete this step if you use any of the Portal Pack products or pagelets. To add, remove, or change the layout of the homepage, you must grant homepage personalization security access to all non-guest users.

Updating Homepage Personalization Permission List

To update the homepage personalization permission list:

1. Using PeopleSoft Data Mover, sign in to the Target database.
2. Open the Data Mover script `PS_HOME\SCRIPTS\PORTAL_HP_PERS.DMS`.
3. Run this script against the Target database.
4. Close Data Mover.

Adding the Portal User Role

To add the Portal User Role to the user IDs:

1. Using PeopleSoft Data Mover, sign in to the Target database.
2. Open the Data Mover script `PS_HOME\SCRIPTS\PORTAL_ADD_ROLE.DMS`.
3. Run this script against the Target database.
4. Close Data Mover.

Note. You should grant the PAPP_USER role to all new user IDs for access to the homepage personalization. After running this script, manually remove the role PAPP_USER from any GUEST user ID, because a GUEST user should not be personalizing the common homepage.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 5-4: Completing Portal Data Conversion

This section discusses:

- Reviewing Pagelet and Collection Log
- Enabling Pagelet Publishing

Task 5-4-1: Reviewing Pagelet and Collection Log

This section discusses:

- Correct Logged Issues
- Run UPGPT846PP Again

This step explains how to correct logged issues for Navigation Collections, Portal Registry objects, and Pagelet Wizard objects.

Note. Perform this step only if there are logged issues that need to be resolved for Navigation Collections, Portal Registry Objects, or Pagelet Wizard objects reported from the UPGPT846PP process.

Correct Logged Issues

Review the log from running the data conversion UPGPT846PP Application Engine program in the task titled, "Completing PeopleTools Conversion." Correct the issues from the log using the instructions in the MAIN section comments of the UPGPT846PP program. These instructions were reported in the chapter 2 task "Converting PeopleTools Objects" in the "Report Conversion Details" step.

See "Apply Application Changes," Completing PeopleTools Conversion.

See "Apply PeopleTools Changes," Converting PeopleTools Objects, Report Conversion Details.

Run UPGPT846PP Again

In this step, you run the UPGPT846PP process again.

Note. The Application Engine process UPGPT846PP can be run repeatedly, if necessary, as you resolve data issues.

To run UPGPT846PP again:

1. Run the Application Engine conversion process UPGPT846PP with the upgrade user ID.

The program can be run from the command line with the following:

```
$PS_HOME\bin\client\winx86\psae -CD dbname -CT dbtype -CS dbservername -CO =>
```

```
oprid -CP oprpswd -R 1 -AI UPGPT846PP
```

2. Review the log file according to the instructions in the previous step.
3. If there are any remaining issues, correct them and rerun UPGPT846PP.
4. Repeat steps 2 and 3, if necessary, until there are no remaining issues for Navigation Collections, Portal Registry objects, or Pagelet Wizard objects.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-4-2: Enabling Pagelet Publishing

This step enables the creation of homepage pagelets for Navigation Collections and Pagelet Wizard. The script name for your upgrade path is:

```
PTPP_PORTAL_PACK.DMS
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-5: Backing Up Before Manual Changes

Back up your Copy of Production database now. This enables you to restart your upgrade from this point should you experience any database integrity problems during the remaining tasks in the upgrade process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-6: Completing ChartField Configuration

This section discusses:

- Running the Configuration Steps Report
- Performing Manual Configuration Steps

Note. If you did not make changes to the Standard or Advanced Configuration pages in your previous PeopleSoft release (for example, you were using the delivered ChartField configuration unchanged), then you can skip this task and proceed to the next task. If you made any changes to either of these pages, you must complete this task.

Task 5-6-1: Running the Configuration Steps Report

Follow the procedure below to run the Configuration Steps Crystal report.

To run the Configuration Steps Crystal report:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Design ChartFields, Reports, Configuration Steps.
2. Run the Configuration Steps Crystal report for CF Configuration ID: UPG_CFDBCOMP.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 5-6-2: Performing Manual Configuration Steps

These steps are outlined on the Configuration Steps report run in the previous step. These steps must be completed before using the system.

You can ignore the steps listed as Sequence #10010 (Alter Tables), #10020 (Create Indexes), and #10040 (Create Views). These tasks were performed earlier in the upgrade.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise 9.0 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook* “Configuring ChartFields.”

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 5-7: Reviewing PeopleTools Functionality

The PeopleSoft Enterprise PeopleBooks detail the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools functionality. There are many new features delivered in the new release that you may want to use. You should now review the PeopleSoft Enterprise PeopleBooks and PeopleTools Installation Guide to configure your environment properly. This may include, but is not limited to, configuring and starting a process scheduler, report server, and reviewing portal settings.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools installation guide for your database platform on your new release.

See Oracle's PeopleSoft Customer Connection (Implement Optimize + Upgrade, Upgrade Guide, Upgrade Documentation and Software, Release Notes).

You should review the following considerations:

- If you applied a PeopleSoft PeopleTools patch earlier in the upgrade, review the patch documentation and run any steps that you have not already performed during the upgrade.

Check your Change Assistant output directory if you do not know whether a script was already run during the upgrade process.

- You must reimplement any workflow that you want to use in the new release.
- Oracle has updated the styles that define the look of the user interface.

The classic (old) style sheet, as well as two new styles, are delivered with this release of PeopleSoft PeopleTools. The PeopleSoft PeopleTools system databases and PeopleSoft 8.4 applications use the classic style, whereas all other applications use the new dark blue style. After the PeopleSoft PeopleTools portion of the upgrade, Oracle sets the classic style as the default, but you can update to one of the new user interface styles.

See Appendix: "Changing the User Interface."

Note. The new user interface styles are supported by Internet Explorer release 5 and above and Netscape Navigator release 6 and above. If you are using any other browser or release, the system uses the classic style as the default.

- PeopleSoft PeopleTools uses Verity release 5.0 to implement free text search.

Verity 5.0 is not compatible with the version of Verity that was used in previous PeopleSoft PeopleTools releases. Check the necessary application patches that may be required to use the new version of Verity.

See PeopleSoft Customer Connection (Updates + Fixes, Required for Install or Upgrade).

- As a result, performing PS/nVision drill-down operations on reports that were created prior to upgrade would fail. This is mainly because drill-down hyperlinks are by design hard coded into PS/nVision reports. A simple search and replace utility has been provided that can be used to replace old hyperlinks with new ones. This Microsoft Excel macro is located at %PS_HOME%\EXCEL\UpdateNvsDrill.xls.
- Integration Broker was rewritten in PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.48.

If you use Integration Broker, you will need to perform setup configuration and review the explanation of metadata mapping.

See Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: Integration Broker, Appendix: "Understanding Migrated Integration Metadata," for your new release.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 5-8: Preparing the Content Provider Registry

You should perform this task if you use Enterprise Portal 8.4 or higher running on PeopleTools 8.4x with full or partial navigation load access method. This means you do not use a single link to access your content provider databases, but instead you load some or all of the portal registry structures from the content provider database into your Enterprise Portal database. PeopleSoft refers to Content Provider databases as the application databases that contain the transaction content. Your Copy of Production database is your Content Provider database for this task.

When you upgrade a content provider database, the registry structures are updated, old registry structures are removed, and new registry structures are added. These changes need to be copied to the Enterprise Portal database by updating the portal registry structures in your Enterprise Portal database to match what is in the Content Provider database. Follow the detailed instructions in the appendix referenced below.

See Appendix: “Upgrading the Content Provider Registry.”

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-9: Updating the Portal Options Data

In this step you update the PeopleTools Portal Options data.

Note. Only perform this step if your upgraded database is on PeopleTools 8.46 or greater.

This step sets the portal options prefix and Owner ID. These values are used when creating Pagelet Wizard definitions and Navigation Collection objects.

To set the Portal Options Prefix and Owner ID:

1. From your browser, sign on to your New Copy of Production database.
2. Select PeopleTools, Portal, Portal Utilities, System Options.
3. Update the value for the Registry Object Prefix with a 1- to 4-character prefix that is unique to your organization.

Note. Do *not* use PAPP, PAPX, PAPQ, PAPI, PRTL, EO, or PT. Do *not* use any product line specific prefix (such as CR, HC, EP, or CI). Do *not* use a blank value.

4. Enter the Owner ID value with your organization’s specific owner ID.

Note. The Owner ID is a translate value on the PeopleTools field OBJECTOWNERID. Do *not* use any delivered product Owner ID. If you do not have an Owner ID, then either create one, or leave the Owner ID value as a blank space.

5. Click Save.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	MTP	All	All	All

Task 5-10: Setting Country Codes

This section discusses:

- Understanding Country Codes
- Adding New Country Codes
- Modifying Existing Country Codes

Understanding Country Codes

The PeopleSoft system provides the 239 ISO 3166 compatible country codes as part of system data. However, the PeopleSoft system also provides an interface through which you can customize the country codes, either to add new ones or modify existing ones. Since the COUNTRY_TBL record is considered system data, it was repopulated with the current countries as defined by the PeopleSoft system. As a result, any additional countries you may have added and any other customizations you may have made to this table were deleted.

If you have customized country code entries, perform the following steps using the results from the SQL query in the task titled Reviewing Country Data.

See “Prepare Your Database,” Reviewing Country Data.

Task 5-10-1: Adding New Country Codes

Follow the steps below to add new country codes.

To add new country codes:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Location, Country.
2. Select the Add a New Value tab.
3. Enter the new country code and click Add.
4. Using the query results from the task titled Reviewing Country Data, enter the values for Description, Short Description, and 2-Character Country Code.

If the country is a European Union member, select the EU Member State check box.

See “Prepare Your Database,” Reviewing Country Data.

5. Select the Address Format tab.
6. Indicate the labels that you would want to appear to the users affiliated with this country.

The following example shows the labels for USA.

Note. The Available check box indicates whether the label is available for display to the user.

Home | Worklist | MultiChannel Console | Add to Favorites | Sign out

New Window | Help | Customize Page | Copy URL

Country Description | **Address Format**

Country: USA United States

Address Fields

Available	Label	Available	Label
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Address 1	Address 1:	<input type="checkbox"/> Number 1	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Address 2	Address 2:	<input type="checkbox"/> Number 2	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Address 3	Address 3:	<input type="checkbox"/> House Type	
<input type="checkbox"/> Address 4		<input type="checkbox"/> Field 1 Label	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> City	City:	<input type="checkbox"/> Field 2 Label	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> County	County:	<input type="checkbox"/> Field 3 Label	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> State	State:	<input type="checkbox"/> Postal Search	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Postal	Postal:		

Save Return to Search Notify Add Update/Display

Country Description | Address Format

Address Format page

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-10-2: Modifying Existing Country Codes

In this step, you will modify your existing country codes.

To modify existing country codes:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Location, Country.
2. Enter the country code you want to modify and click Search.
3. Update the necessary fields based on the query results from the task titled Reviewing Country Data.
See “Prepare Your Database,” Reviewing Country Data.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-11: Completing Credit Card Encryption

This section discusses:

- Understanding Credit Card Encryption
- Reviewing Credit Card Encryption Status
- Running Credit Card Encryption

Understanding Credit Card Encryption

In this task you will upgrade your existing credit card data. First, you must ensure that your credit card data has already been encrypted.

Task 5-11-1: Reviewing Credit Card Encryption Status

Before running credit card encryption, you must check to see if the credit card data has already been encrypted as part of a release bundle applied to an earlier release.

To credit card encryption status:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Upgrade Credit Card Numbers.
2. Add a Run Control ID.
3. If the Generate Random Key button is disabled, some of the data has already been converted.

This conversion could result by implementing a bundle containing the new encryption functionality or by previously performing a partial upgrade conversion. In this case, the encryption key is already set and the existing data is encrypted with it, so you can not generate a new key.

4. If the key is disabled, skip the following step titled Running Credit Card Encryption.
5. If the key is active, complete the remaining steps in this task.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-11-2: Running Credit Card Encryption

The latest release of this product provides more secure credit card encryption. Therefore, all stored credit card numbers within the system must be upgraded to use the triple-DES algorithms and 168-bit encryption keys.

To run credit card encryption:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Upgrade Credit Card Numbers.
2. Click the Generate Random Key button.

Note. If this button is disabled, some of the data is already converted, as a result of implementing a bundle containing the new encryption functionality or of previously performing a partial upgrade conversion. In this case, the encryption key is set and the existing data is encrypted with it, so you can not generate a new key.

3. Click the Run button.

This action will either encrypt or re-encrypt each field in the grid depending on the state of the current value.

4. Once all values are set to *No Action* the upgrade has completed.

Note. If the process fails for any reason or if you see value other than *No Action* after it completes, you can restart the process using the Process Scheduler Restart functionality and it will continue from where it stopped. If you cannot restart the process this way, then start the process from the beginning by clicking Run on this page. The process will bypass any values that are already processed.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-12: Upgrading PeopleSoft Planning

This section discusses:

- Understanding PeopleSoft Demand Planning and Inventory Policy Planning Upgrade
- Preparing PeopleSoft Planning Upgrade
- Installing the Planning Upgrade Program
- Running the Upgrade Extract Program
- Importing Data into New Database

Understanding PeopleSoft Demand Planning and Inventory Policy Planning Upgrade

This task only applies to existing PeopleSoft Demand and Inventory Policy Planning customers who have *not* implemented EPM 8.8x Supply Chain Planning.

Task 5-12-1: Preparing PeopleSoft Planning Upgrade

In this task the “old” database refers to your old Demand Planning and Inventory Policy Planning 8.x database, and your “new” database refers to the new release FSCM database.

The steps listed below must be performed before you continue on with this task.

- Data Transfers:

Complete all in process data transfers. All data transfers in PeopleSoft Demand Planning must be complete before the upgrade process begins. The system does not convert transfer data to the new database.

- Period-end Processing:

It is strongly recommended that you convert your system immediately after a period-end process has completed.

- Production Freeze:

Freeze production on your old databases during the step “Run the Upgrade Extract Program” later in this task.

- Add Users:

Add all of your existing Demand Planning users into the FSCM database now. PeopleSoft User IDs must be defined without spaces in the name. During the conversion of the existing data, the system removes excess spaces in User IDs so that the IDs will match.

See Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: Security Administration, for your PeopleTools release.

- User Data Codes:

Be sure you configure your user data codes. You must recreate the user data codes currently existing in your planning system. User data codes must match the ones in your current planning system exactly or the system cannot create data. Some required information is not available in the old system so this manual process needs to be completed before the data conversion. This information cannot be modified once a user data code is in use. Each user data code that is converted must be created here first.

Note. PeopleSoft Demand Planning provides only ten pre-defined user period codes that can be used. Seven of these are numeric, two are characters, and one is a date code. Review the upgraded calculations codes and inquiry display templates and modify them to include the user period codes that were converted.

For PeopleSoft Demand Planning select Demand Planning, Define Forecast Elements, Forecast Views, Define User Data Codes in the FSCM database to recreate user codes.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise Demand Planning 9.0 PeopleBook* “Setting Up the PeopleSoft Demand Planning Forecasting System.”

For PeopleSoft Inventory Policy Planning, select Inventory Policy Planning, Define Policy Elements, Policy Sets, Define User Data Codes in the FSCM database to recreate user codes.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise Inventory Policy Planning 9.0 PeopleBook* “Setting Up PeopleSoft Inventory Policy Planning.”

- Mass Maintenance:

Mass maintenance select criteria based on template items are not converted from your old release and are defined as system data in your new release.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Both	Demand Planning Inventory Policy Planning	All	All

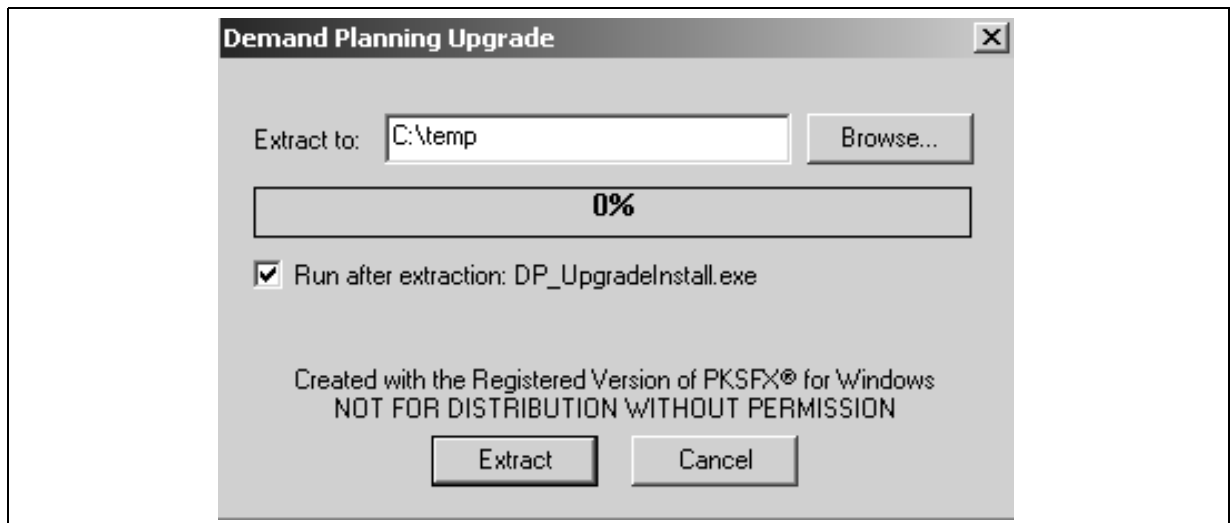
Task 5-12-2: Installing the Planning Upgrade Program

In this step you install the upgrade program.

Note. You must install the upgrade program on the same machine your PeopleSoft Demand Planning and Inventory Policy Planning 8.x software is currently loaded.

To install the upgrade program:

1. From the setup directory where you installed the new Financials/Supply Chain Management release, run the DP_UpgradeSetup.EXE.
2. The following page appears:

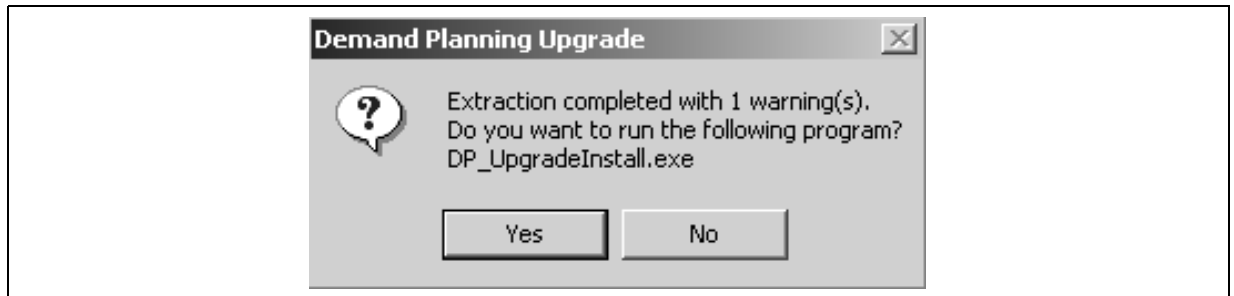


Demand Planning Upgrade Installer page

3. Select Extract to install the upgrade program and create the upgrade directory.

Note. You must extract this program to the same machine on which your PeopleSoft Demand Planning and Inventory Policy Planning 8.x software is currently loaded.

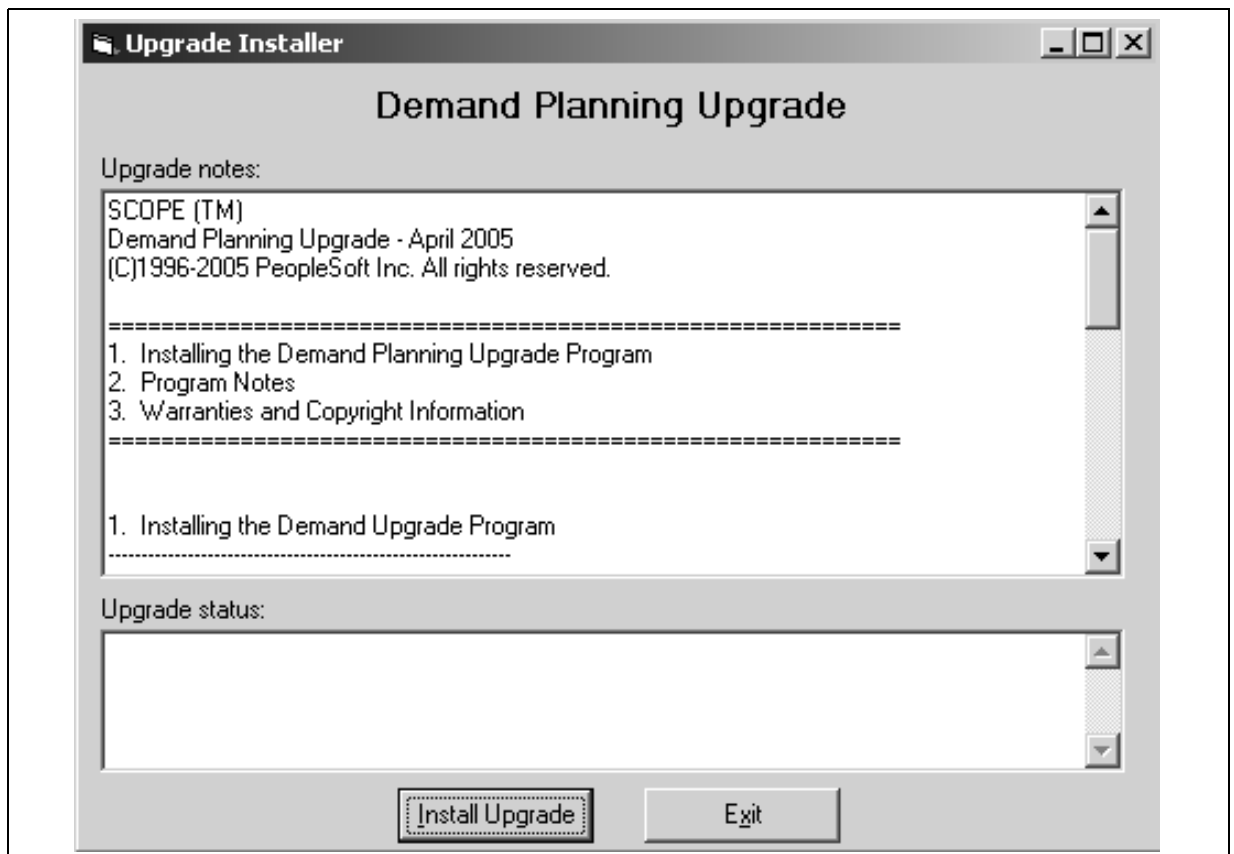
The following dialog box appears:



Demand Planning Upgrade Installer dialog box

4. Select Yes.
5. Select Install Upgrade to complete the installation of the upgrade software.

The upgrade program, UPGRADE.EXE is located in C:\PROGRAM FILES\PEOPLESFT APPLICATIONS\DEMAND PLANNING\UPGRADE after the installation is complete.



Upgrade Installer page

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Both	Demand Planning Inventory Policy Planning	All	All

Task 5-12-3: Running the Upgrade Extract Program

This section discusses:

- Understanding the Upgrade Extract Program
- Configuring Run Options
- Configuring User Array Mapping
- Configuring Demand Planning User Data Mapping
- Configuring IP User Data Mapping
- Configuring Units of Measure
- Completing Demand Planning Upgrade Program

Understanding the Upgrade Extract Program

In this step you extract and configure the old PeopleSoft Demand Planning and Inventory Policy Planning data.

Important! Freeze all production and make a complete backup of the PeopleSoft Demand Planning and Inventory Policy Planning databases now.

The program you run below, takes configuration information provided by you, reads the data from your current PeopleSoft Demand Planning and Inventory Policy Planning databases and saves the data into flat files using the rules you defined for the program. Later in the upgrade, these flat files are configured into your new Financials/Supply Chain Management database.

Run the UPGRADE.EXE program located in C:\PROGRAM FILES\PEOPLESOFT APPLICATIONS\DEMAND PLANNING\UPGRADE.

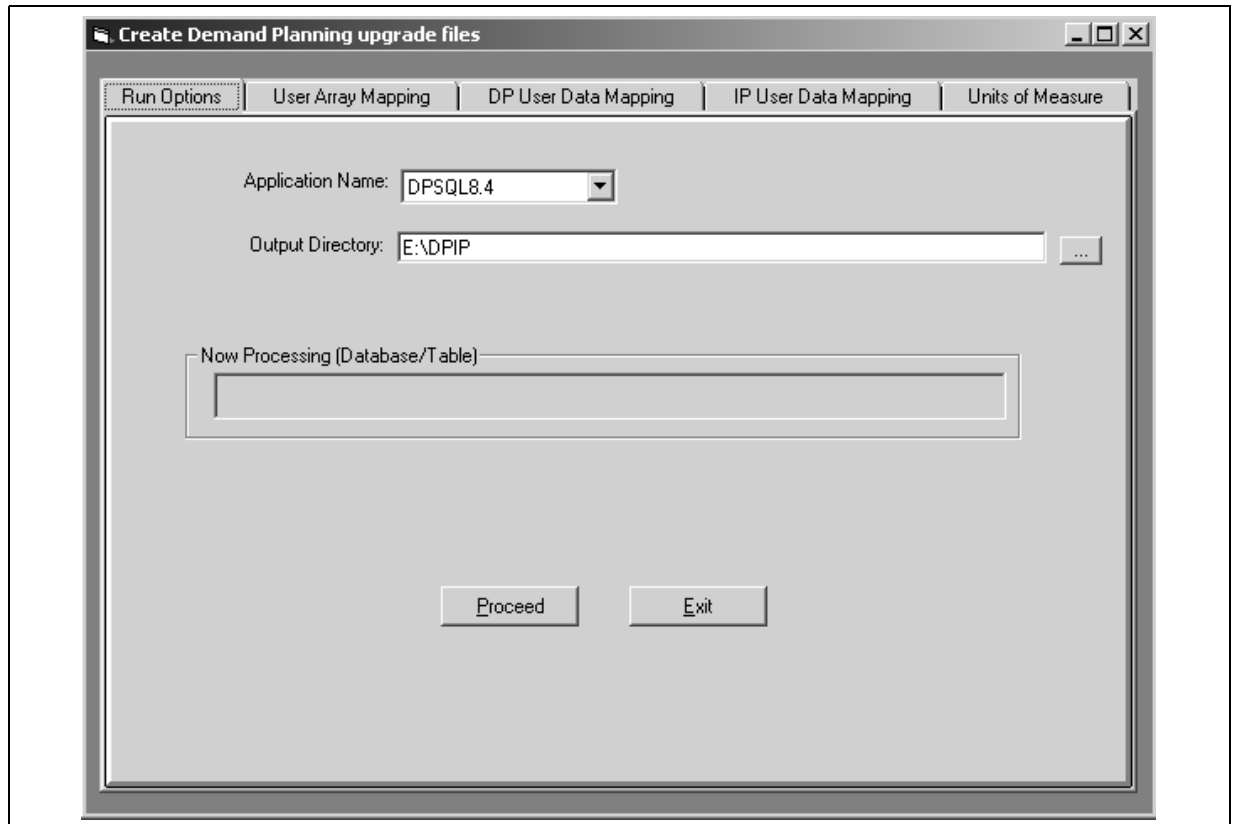
Continue working with the program for the remainder of the step.

Configuring Run Options

To configure Run Options:

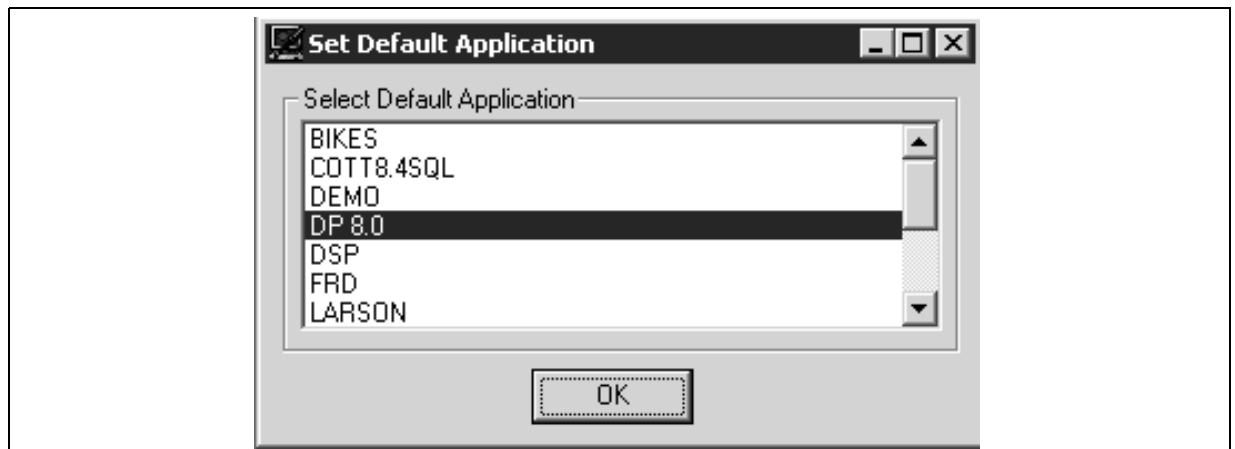
1. Select the Run Options tab.

The following page appears:



Create Demand Planning upgrade files page

2. Enter the application name that points to the production databases from which the system extracts data (the source database).



Set Default Application dialog box

The drop-down list box provides a list of all the applications currently defined on the machine on which the upgrade program is run.

3. Enter the output directory where you want the extracted data files to be placed for use later in the step “Import Data into New Database.”

You can browse to a different location other than the default, using the ellipses.

Configuring User Array Mapping

The User Array Mapping tab allows you to map data types to the new fields that have the same data types as their existing data. The data types for the new user period fields are pre-configured, which is different from previous versions of PeopleSoft Demand Planning. The program attempts to match these user array codes to the user period data fields by matching data types. The system inserts mapped field names into the description of the user period field the array code was mapped to. In the example below, the system determined it could map the user array code ACTUALFCST to user period data UD01 and the ACT_ADJ array code to the UD02 field.

1. Select the User Array Mapping Tab.

The following page appears:

Create Demand Planning upgrade files

Run Options | **User Array Mapping** | DP User Data Mapping | IP User Data Mapping | Units of Measure

8.x User Array Codes	
User Field	Data Type
ACTUALFCST	Numeric
ACT_ADJ	Numeric
ACT_STAT	Numeric
BUDGETQTY	Numeric
BUDGETVAL	Numeric
FCST_ACT	Numeric
LASTYEAR	Numeric
NEXTYEAR	Numeric
OUTLOOK	Numeric

User Period Data Fields:

UD01 - Numeric:

UD02 - Numeric:

UD03 - Numeric:

UD04 - Numeric:

UD05 - Numeric:

UD06 - Numeric:

UD07 - Numeric:

UD08 - Text:

UD09 - Text:

UD10 - Date:

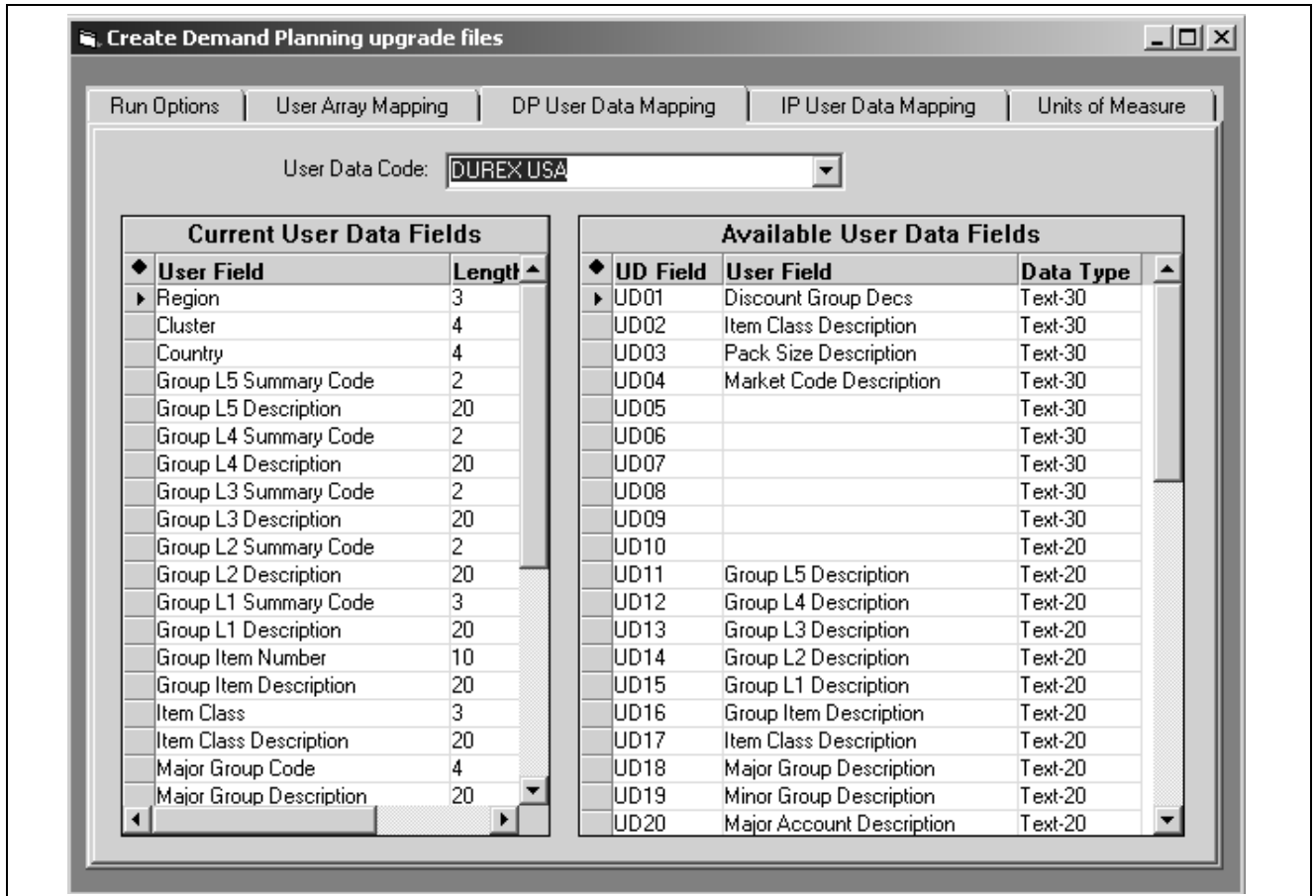
Create Demand Planning upgrade files page: User Array Mapping tab

2. Enter information on this tab to tell the system which user array codes to map into the new user period fields.
3. You can define up to ten user period data fields in the new system.
4. If you want to change the mapping, position the mouse over the User Field column in the grid.
5. Right-click and drag the box into the description of the UD0xx field to which you want to map.

Configuring Demand Planning User Data Mapping

Enter information here to inform the system of which user-defined fields are mapped into the new user-defined fields in the new PeopleSoft Demand Planning release. This tab allows you to map the user-defined fields to the new fields that have the same data types as their existing data.

The data types for the user-defined fields in the new release are pre-configured, as seen in the example below. The upgrade attempts to match the user-defined fields currently in use to the new user-defined fields by matching field sizes and data types. The mapped field descriptions are inserted into the User Field box of the UDxx field they are mapped to. In the example below, it is determined that the Discount Group Decs field could be mapped into the UD01 field and the Item Class Description into the UD02 field.



Create Demand Planning upgrade files page: DP User Data Mapping tab

To configure Demand Planning User Data Mapping:

1. Enter information here so your user-defined fields are mapped to the new user-defined fields.
2. If you want to change the mapping, position the mouse over the User Field column in the Current User Data Fields grid.
3. Right-click and drag the box into the User Field column of the UD0xx field to which you want to map.

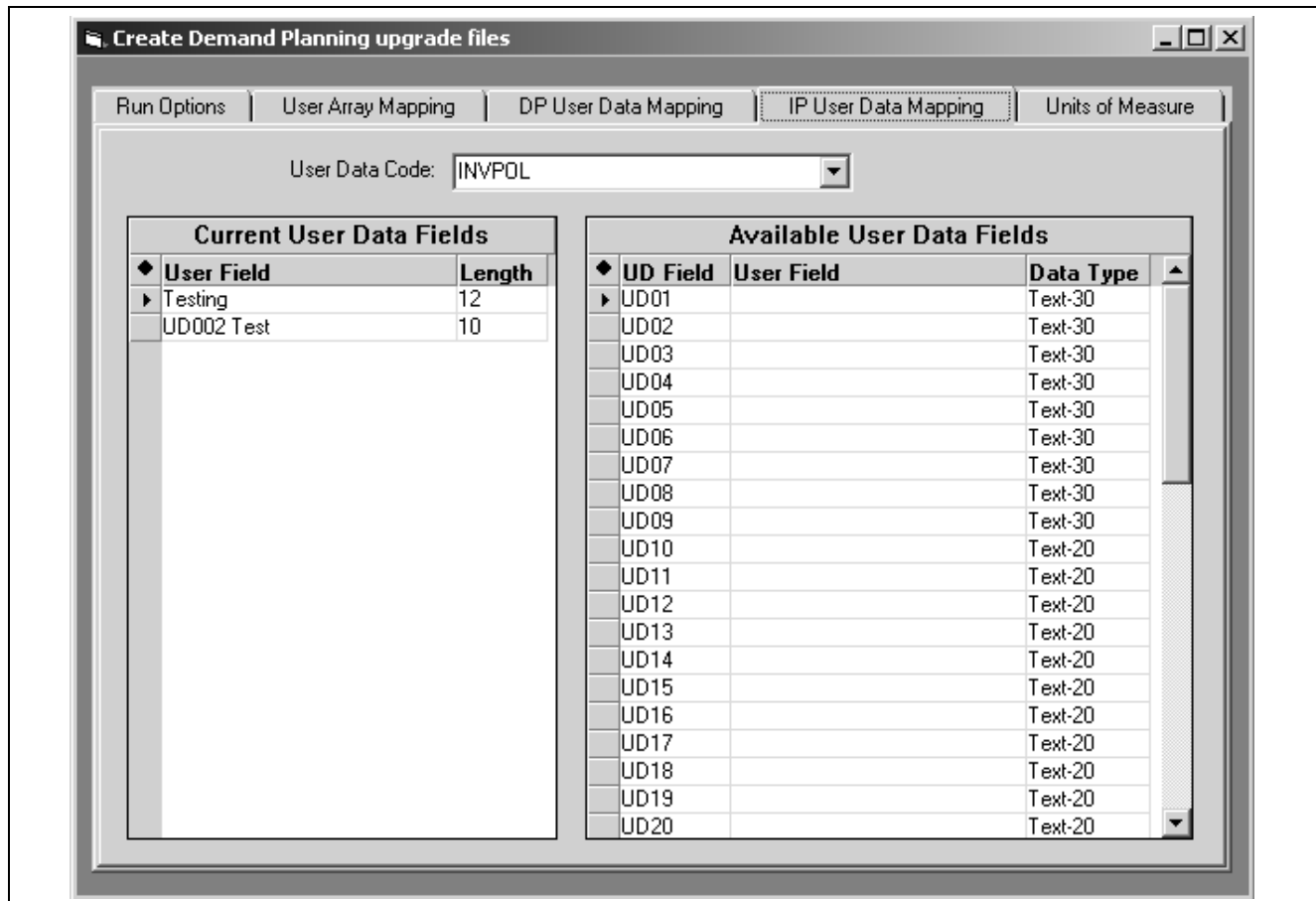
Configuring IP User Data Mapping

The information entered on this tab directs the system to which user-defined fields are mapped into the new user-defined fields.

Note. This step is for Inventory Policy Planning customers only. If you do not have Inventory Policy Planning you can skip this step.

This tab enables you to map user-defined files to the new fields that have the same data types as their existing data. The data types for the user-defined fields are pre-configured. This is different than in previous PeopleSoft releases.

The Current User Data Fields grid displays all user-defined fields currently in use. The program tries to match the fields to the new user-defined fields by matching field sizes and data types. The mapped field descriptions are inserted into the User Field box of the UDxx field to which they are mapped.



Create Demand Planning upgrade files page: IP User Data Mapping tab

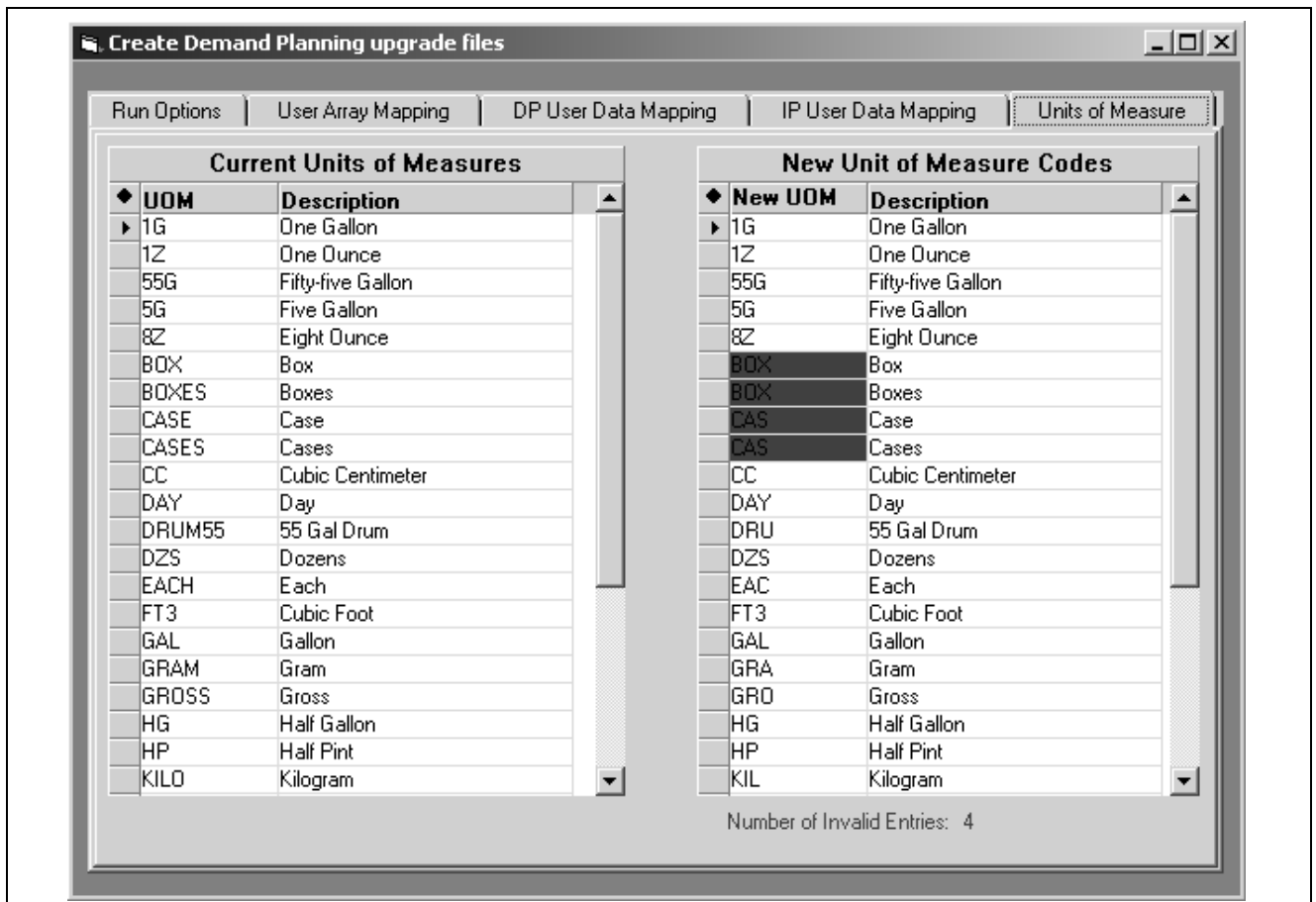
To change the IP User Data Mapping:

1. Position the mouse over the User Field column in the Current User Data Fields grid.
2. Right-click and drag the box into the User Field column of the UD0xx field to which you want to map.

Configuring Units of Measure

On the Unit of Measure tab you can configure this conversion so that duplicates can be corrected before data is converted into the new database. In this tab you can view and enter the required unit of measure codes. The system displays the existing codes in the Current Units of Measures grid and the new truncated versions in the New Unit of Measure codes grid. You can change any of the codes in the New Unit of Measure Codes grid. Any duplicated codes are flagged in red.

The new release of PeopleSoft Demand Planning uses the standard PeopleSoft unit of measure field. This field is three characters long, which is different from your original Demand Planning/Inventory Policy Planning release.



Create Demand Planning upgrade files page: Units of Measure tab

To configure units of measure:

1. Edit the new codes until you are satisfied with them.
2. Ensure that the value for the Number of Invalid Entries field is equal to 0.

Note. All data in PeopleSoft Demand Planning and Inventory Policy Planning records that contain units of measure are mapped to the new units of measure field.

Completing Demand Planning Upgrade Program

Once all of your configuration data has been entered, continue with the data extraction.

On the Run Options tab, select Proceed to continue. You can extract data multiple times. If the path name has not changed, the old extract files are overwritten with new ones. As the extraction process runs, a screen appears with the names of the application tables as they are extracted.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Source	Both	Demand Planning Inventory Policy Planning	All	All

Task 5-12-4: Importing Data into New Database

In this step you import the extracted data from the text files created earlier into the new Financials/Supply Chain Management database.

To import the data:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, DP/IP Upgrade.
2. Add a new run control ID or access an existing one.

The following page appears:

Import Upgrade Data

Run Control ID: ST
[Report Manager](#)
[Process Monitor](#)

File Path: E:\DP\IP

☒ DP_ADJ_HISTORY
☒ DP_ADJHISTUSAGE
☒ DP_CALCCODEARRS
☒ DP_CALCCODES
☒ DP_CALENDARS
☒ DP_CALPATTERNCD
☒ DP_CALPERIODS
☒ DP_CALTIMECODES
☒ DP_CALWEIGHTS
☒ DP_CFGVLFLDDSP
☒ DP_CONFIGFIELDS
☒ DP_CONFIGLEVELS
☒ DP_CONFIGVLFLD
☒ DP_CONFIGVIEWS
☒ DP_CONTROLGRPS
☒ DP_CSUMGRP_HDR
☒ DP_CSUMGRP_FLTR
☒ DP_CTLGRPWRKQUE
☒ DP_EVENTLINES
☒ DP_EVENTS
☒ DP_EVENTTYPES

File Name: PS_DP_ADJ_HISTORY.txt
File Name: PS_DP_ADJHISTUSAGE.txt
File Name: PS_DP_CALCCODEARRS.txt
File Name: PS_DP_CALCCODES.txt
File Name: PS_DP_CALENDARS.txt
File Name: PS_DP_CALPATTERNCD.txt
File Name: PS_DP_CALPERIODS.txt
File Name: PS_DP_CALTIMECODES.txt
File Name: PS_DP_CALWEIGHTS.txt
File Name: PS_DP_CFGVLFLDDSP.txt
File Name: PS_DP_CONFIGFIELDS.txt
File Name: PS_DP_CONFIGLEVELS.txt
File Name: PS_DP_CONFIGVLFLD.txt
File Name: PS_DP_CONFIGVIEWS.txt
File Name: PS_DP_CONTROLGRPS.txt
File Name: PS_DP_CSUMGRP_HDR.txt
File Name: PS_DP_CSUMGRP_FLTR.txt
File Name: PS_DP_CTLGRPWRKQUE.txt
File Name: PS_DP_EVENTLINES.txt
File Name: PS_DP_EVENTS.txt
File Name: PS_DP_EVENTTYPES.txt

☒ Select All
☐ Clear All
☒ Perform a Destructive Load

Import Upgrade Data page

3. Enter the directory where the data extract files are located.

Note. These files must be accessible by the Process Scheduler server in order for the import to succeed. Therefore the files must either reside locally to the server or be on an accessible shared directory.

4. Select all check boxes for those tables you want to import.

By default these are unchecked. This enables you to rerun loads when errors occur. Use the Select All and Deselect All buttons to select or clear all boxes.

5. By default, the data import is a destructive load (meaning all tables that are loaded are first cleared of existing data).

To preserve existing data, or to load data in multiple steps, the Perform a Destructive Load check box is available. When you select this check box, the tables are completely cleared before the load begins. When the check box is clear, the system does not delete existing rows.

Important! Verify that the Perform a Destructive Load check box is set appropriately for what you want accomplished.

6. Select Run when you are ready to execute the import.

7. After the import has finished, check the error files generated during the import process.

You will find the error files in the same directory as the data extract files. Fix any errors and rerun the import process only for the table that had data corrected.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Demand Planning Inventory Policy Planning	All	All

Task 5-13: Updating Approval Transactions

This section discusses:

- Understanding Updating Transactions
- Converting Approval Transactions
- Reviewing Approval Conversion

Understanding Updating Transactions

The workflow process for Strategic Sourcing users has changed extensively in this release. If you were using workflow prior to this release, see the reference below for information on implementing approvals.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise 9.0 Strategic Sourcing PeopleBook* “Using Workflow in PeopleSoft Enterprise Strategic Sourcing”

For eProcurement and Services Procurement users, in this task, you run a process that retrieves all pending requisitions and work orders that were processed through your prior release's approval process and converts these transactions to work with the new approval process. Once complete, the original work lists are marked complete and any pending orders will have new work list routings at the same step where the previous release left off.

As each requisition is processed, the comments from the prior release are consolidated into a single entry and pushed into the new approval process. The consolidated comment has a current timestamp, but the original timestamps are preserved in the text of the new comment. Pending orders are processed for all steps that were approved in the previous release. For example, in a three-step process, if the first two steps have been approved, only the third step will continue to remain pending.

Once all pending transactions have been converted, the non-pending transactions are archived. You can view this information from the Archive Viewer, which you can access by selecting Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Approvals, Approval Archive Viewer.

Task 5-13-1: Converting Approval Transactions

The URL definitions for URL Identifier EMP_SERVLET must be updated before running the Approvals Post Upgrade step. This URL is used to generate email notifications for pending activity. A missing or incorrect URL causes the Approvals Post Upgrade process to error out. Select PeopleTools, Utilities, Administration, URLs to configure this and any other URLs.

Perform the following steps to convert any pending requisitions and work orders to the new approval process.

To convert approval transactions:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Approvals Post Upgrade.
2. Create a new run control.
3. Submit the process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement Strategic Sourcing eProcurement	All	All

Task 5-13-2: Reviewing Approval Conversion

For eProcurement customers, if monetary criterion is used, ensure that the Currency field is populated, since it was not required in prior releases. Steps no longer contain “skip” and “stop” settings. This logic should be reflected in the step criteria by using the “between” operator.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement Strategic Sourcing eProcurement	All	All

Task 5-14: Rebuilding Verity Search Indexes

In this task, you will rebuild your Verity search indexes.

Note. In this PeopleSoft release, the indexes CS_DOCUMENTS_ADH and CS_DOCUMENTS_PO have been combined into one index, CS_DOCUMENTS. You may need to update your application server and process scheduler configurations to reflect this change.

To rebuild Verity search indexes:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Search Indexes, Build Search Index.
2. If a run control does not exist, add a run control/index combination for every index you want to rebuild, if a run control does not exist.
3. Submit the process with the build option *Create New/Rebuild* selected.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-15: Reconciling Notification Templates

In this task, you will reconcile updates to component and generic notification templates with changes that you made to customize these templates. You should review the notification text and variables.

To access component notification template information, select PeopleTools, Workflow, Notifications, Notification Templates.

To access component notification template variables, select PeopleTools, Workflow, Notifications, Template Variables.

To access generic template information, navigate to PeopleTools, Workflow, Notifications, Generic Templates.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-16: Completing Manufacturing Setup

In this task, you use the output from report PUEPK310 generated in the task titled “Identifying Manufacturing Data” to assist you in manually updating your routing operations to account for the yield percentage information formerly stored with the Planning items attributes. The yield by operation functionality now allows you to define your yield percentage information by operation when you are defining your routings.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise 9.0 Manufacturing PeopleBook*.

To update operation yield information:

1. Select Manufacturing Definitions, Resources and Routings, Routings, Define Routings.
2. Enter the item whose routing you want to update.
3. Enter the yield percentage information in the yield column for the appropriate operations.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Manufacturing	All	All

Task 5-17: Completing Promotions

This section discusses:

- Updating Checkbook Definitions
- Setting Up Default Prefixes
- Updating Tree Statistics
- Verifying Payment Authorization Data

Task 5-17-1: Updating Checkbook Definitions

This section discusses:

- Understanding Checkbook Definitions
- Updating Checkbook Definitions
- Updating Checkbook Formulas

Understanding Checkbook Definitions

The columns, “Actual Unit Handling” and “Actual Unit Value” are obsolete with this release. The assumption is that Unit Handling and Unit Value amounts would be paid to a customer or an alternate pay-to-customer and the amounts would be included in another one of the “actual” columns, such as “Actual Credit Amounts” or “Actual Payment Amount.” You may choose to add another “actual” column to your checkbook or formula definition. Using the results from the pre-upgrade report PUEPJ153 generated in the task “Preparing Promotions,” determine which checkbook definitions and checkbook formulas you want to update.

Updating Checkbook Definitions

To update checkbook definitions:

1. Select Promotions, Analysis, Define Checkbook.
2. Enter a valid setID and Checkbook ID from the report results.
3. Click Search.
4. Select the Columns tab.
5. Insert a new checkbook column by clicking the Plus (+) sign at the bottom of the page and entering the number of rows you want to add in the resulting prompt box.
6. If needed, select a new checkbook column from the Value field drop-down list box and define all necessary data for this new column.
7. Click Save.
8. Repeat steps 2 through 7 for each checkbook definition you want to update.

Updating Checkbook Formulas

To update checkbook formulas:

1. Select Promotions, Analysis, Define Checkbook Formulas.
2. Enter a valid Formula ID from the report results.
3. Click Search.
4. Select the Terms tab.
5. Insert a new formula term by clicking the Plus (+) icon at the bottom of the page and entering the number of rows you want to add in the resulting prompt box.
6. If needed, select a new formula term from the Value field drop-down list box and define all necessary data for this new term.
7. Click Save.
8. Repeat steps 2 through 7 for each checkbook formula you want to update.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Promotions Management	All	All

Task 5-17-2: Setting Up Default Prefixes

If you want to use the default prefix capability with the Pricing Load process, perform the following steps to set it up.

To set up default prefixes:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, Promotions Management, Promotions Options.
2. Enter a valid Promotions Management setID.
3. Click Search.
4. Select the Pricing Options tab.
Note the Price Rule Prefix value.
5. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Codes and Auto Numbering, Auto Numbering.
6. Enter a valid setID and select Product Price Set as the number type.
7. Click Search.
8. Find the start sequence that matches the Price Rule Prefix from the Pricing Options page.
Note the value in the Last Number Issued field.
9. Click Add.
10. Select Pricer Price Rule as the number type.
11. Click Add.
12. If an entry for Pricer Price Rule does not already exist, enter the field name *EOEP_RULE_ID*.
13. Enter the start sequence, maximum length, description, and last number issued information.

If you wish to continue auto numbering from where the system left off, enter the same Price Rule Prefix from the Pricing Options page and the same Last Number Issued from the Auto Numbering page for the Product Price Set number type.

Note. If you choose to use the same Price Rule Prefix on the Pricing Options page, it is required that your last number issued for the Pricer Price Rule number type not be less than the one you noted from the Product Price Set number type.

14. If necessary, select the Default check box to indicate that this information should be used to construct the default prefix.
If needed, you can enter more prefixes, but only one can be the default.
15. Click Save.
16. Click Add.
17. Select Pricer Price List as the number type.
18. Click Add.
19. If an entry for Pricer Price List does not already exist, enter the field name *PRICE_LIST_ID*.
20. Enter start sequence, maximum length, description, and last number issued information.
21. If necessary, select the Default check box to indicate that the information should be used to construct the default prefix.

If needed, you can enter more prefixes, but only one can be the default.

22. Click Save.
23. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, Promotions Management, Promotions Options.
24. Enter a valid Promotions Management setID.
25. Click Search.
26. Select the Pricing Options tab.
27. Select one of the prefixes for Price List Prefix and for Price Rule Prefix that you created in the Auto Numbering page.
28. Click Save.
29. Repeat these steps as necessary for every Promotions Management setID in your system.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Promotions Management	All	All

Task 5-17-3: Updating Tree Statistics

Follow the steps below to optimize the performance of your Product Tree structures.

To update tree statistics:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Promotions Management, Update Tree Statistics.
2. Create a run control ID if needed.
3. Add a row for every setID/Customer Tree and setID/Product Tree combination in your system.
4. Click Run to submit the update process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Promotions Management	All	All

Task 5-17-4: Verifying Payment Authorization Data

The merchandising type (or adjustment type, if maintaining a National Allowance) is a required field when creating payment authorizations in the new PeopleSoft Promotions Management release. During the upgrade process, the merchandising type field was automatically populated on the existing rows of the payment authorization and payment history tables (TD_PAYMENT_TBL and TD_PAYMENT_HIST). The merchandising type field was updated by selecting a merchandising type from the customer promotion or an adjustment type from the national allowance. If the promotion included more than one merchandising activity or adjustment, then the upgrade process looked for a merchandising activity with a lump sum adjustment and populated the payment authorization and payment history tables with the lump sum merchandising type. If a lump sum adjustment was not found, the upgrade program looked for a merchandising activity with a bill back adjustment and then an off-invoice adjustment.

Use the results from query UPG_TDK156 generated in “Preparing Promotions,” to verify the results of the upgrade process. This ensures the correct merchandising type was populated on the payment authorization and payment history tables.

Note. When verifying payment authorization data, you may retrieve more rows than exist in your query results. This occurs because data is added to the payment authorization table for each customer-specific promotion merchandising activity during data conversion.

To verify payment authorization data:

1. Select Promotions, Payments, Authorize Payments.
2. Enter a setID and Customer ID from the query results.
3. To view all payment authorizations, select the Include Authorized Promotions, Include Closed Promotions, and Include Off-Invoice Activities check boxes.
4. Click Search to view the Merch Type that was populated by the upgrade process for each Promotion Code in the Promotions grid.
5. Repeat steps 2 through 4 for every entry in the query results.

If you want to make any adjustments to the data that was updated in the upgrade process, you can create a payment exception for a negative amount to back out the necessary authorization amount for the current merchandising type and add a new payment authorization for a different merchandising type. You can only back out an authorization amount that does not yet have claims processed against it.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Promotions Management	All	All

Task 5-18: Defining Auto Numbering for Price Rules

Any user implementing Enterprise Pricer needs to perform this task.

A Price List can be attached directly to one or more related business objects (for example, customer, customer group, region and so forth). When a Price List attached to a related business object is saved, the system automatically creates a hidden Price Rule, which connects the Price List and the related business objects. You must have auto numbering activated for Price Rules for this functionality to work correctly.

To verify and set up auto numbering for Price Rules:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Codes and Auto Numbering, Auto Numbering.
2. Select Pricer Price Rule for Number Type.
3. Click Search.
4. If data is returned, verify that there is one row that has the Default? field activated.
5. If no data is returned, you do not have auto numbering set up for Price Rules.

Follow the instructions below to set up auto numbering for Price Rules.

- a. Click the Add a New Value tab.
- b. For Number Type, select Pricer Price Rule.
- c. For Field Name, enter *EOEP_RULE_ID*.
- d. Enter a 3-character value in the Start Seq field along with values for Max Length, Description, Last Number Issued.
- e. Select the Default? option.
- f. Save the auto numbering rule.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-19: Completing Billing Setup

This section discusses:

- Understanding Billing Upgrade
- Creating Recommended Manual Indexes
- Processing Tax Information
- Defining Payment Terms for Paid Invoices
- Configuring VAT Default

Understanding Billing Upgrade

The Billing RMA Adjustment program has been rewritten from SQR to Application Engine. Additionally, all RMA transactions coming from Order Management and Inventory are now processed through the Billing Interface.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise 9.0 Billing PeopleBook*.

Task 5-19-1: Creating Recommended Manual Indexes

Billing has published recommended index modifications that may apply to your installation. These index options are dependent on your installation and therefore cannot be included in the delivered application. For the latest information access Customer Connection and find report ID 1556219000.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Billing	All	All

Task 5-19-2: Processing Tax Information

Invoices taxed prior to the current PeopleSoft release through integration with third-party vendors will not have secondary tax information available. This information is lumped under the district jurisdiction. These invoices were not upgraded to have secondary tax information. Therefore, when these invoices are credited after the upgrade to this PeopleSoft release, the tax calculation process will not use the tax rates saved on these invoices in the PeopleSoft database. The tax calculation process will let the tax vendors determine the tax rates to use in tax calculation for the credited invoices. These rates will not be sent back to the PeopleSoft system. The tax calculation for credited invoices created prior to this PeopleSoft release will be using functionality from the prior releases.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Billing	All	All

Task 5-19-3: Defining Payment Terms for Paid Invoices

A new option defined at the Billing business unit level allows you to define a payment term for invoices that are fully paid and that do not have a discount for early payment. This new option ensures that the discount for early payment is not applied during the Accounts Receivable payment application process. If you do not define a payment term, outstanding credits could occur in Accounts Receivable.

To define payment terms for paid invoices:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, Billing, Billing Options.
2. Enter a setID value.
3. Select a value from the prompt dialog box and enter it in the field Pay Terms for Fully Paid Bill.
4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 for every valid setID.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Billing	All	All

Task 5-19-4: Configuring VAT Default

VAT defaults are now retrieved based on a hierarchy (product/identifier, product group/identifier group, customer location, etc.).

For example, if the product on the bill line has a default VAT product group, the system will automatically use this group to retrieve VAT defaults instead of what is saved on the bill line. Therefore, there is no need for the VAT product group on the bill line. If the product on the bill line does not have a default VAT product group, the system will go to the next level in the hierarchy to retrieve the VAT defaults.

In cases where the bill lines have charge codes instead of products, the system will automatically try to retrieve VAT defaults from the charge code's default VAT group instead of using what is stored on the bill line. Again, there would be no need to have the VAT product group on the bill line. If the charge code on the bill line does not have a default VAT group, the system will go to the next level in the hierarchy to retrieve the VAT defaults.

Finally, bill lines that have a product group, but have a blank or generic or free-form identifier (where the identifier is not defined in the PeopleSoft system), will not have the product group removed from the lines during the data conversion. During retrieval of VAT defaults, the system will try to use first the identifier and then the group saved on the bill line. Therefore, this group must be defined as a generic group and VAT defaults should be defined for this group if necessary.

Using the results from report PUCGK005 generated in the Chapter 1 task titled Completing Billing Tasks, you need to determine whether the VAT product group is the default product group of the product on the indicated bill line. If so, you do not need to do anything. Otherwise, you need to ensure that the bill line gets the appropriate VAT default information by doing one of the following:

- Maintaining the VAT default information on the bill lines (select Billing, Maintain Bills, Standard Billing, or Express Billing).
- Defining the product's default product group with the appropriate defaults. The default VAT product group for a product can be found by selecting Products, Identify Product Details, Assign Product Group. VAT defaults can be defined for the product group from Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Products, Product Groups Table.
- If the line is for a charge code, define a default VAT group for the charge code and define appropriate VAT defaults for the charge code group. VAT groups for charge codes can be defined by selecting Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Billing, Setup, Charge Code VAT Group. The VAT defaults can be defined for the groups in this location as well. Associate a default VAT group for a charge code by selecting Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Billing, Setup, Charge Code.
- For other types of identifiers that are defined without a group (such as discounts and surcharges), define appropriate VAT defaults for the discount or surcharge. These can be defined by selecting Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Billing, Setup, Discount & Surcharge.
- Define appropriate VAT defaults for the product or charge code. For product VAT defaults, define them through Products, Identify Product Details, Definition. For charge codes, select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Billing, Setup, Charge Code.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise 9.0 Global Options and Reports PeopleBook*.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Billing	All	All

Task 5-20: Configuring Order Management

This section discusses:

- Repricing Orders with Product Kits
- Adding Order Source Codes
- Defining AutoNumbering for Reservation Backorder
- Defining AutoNumbering for Alternate Sources of Supply
- Defining Default Hold Reason Code
- Defining Hold Code Security by Role
- Updating Orders from Contracts
- Identifying Renamed Pricing IDs

Task 5-20-1: Repricing Orders with Product Kits

As of this PeopleSoft release, product kit components and configured kit components are now considered in estimated shipment/freight calculations. For existing sales orders with product kit components, the shipping weight and volume and the quantity fields were calculated as part of data conversion. However, the estimated shipment/freight was not automatically upgraded because doing so may have a financial effect on previously quoted sales orders. To obtain the correct estimated shipment/freight calculation for existing product kits, the orders will need to be repriced online or via a batch job.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Order Management	All	All

Task 5-20-2: Adding Order Source Codes

In this PeopleSoft release, contracts have been more closely integrated into the Order Management module. Source code values *CA* and *RCA* are now used to identify orders (CA) and returns from Orders (RCA) that have originated from Contracts Administration. Vendor Managed functionality has been added to Inventory and those generated orders will be identified by a source code value of *VMI*. Additionally, Customer Relationship Management has been more closely integrated into the Order Management module. The source code value *CRM* is used to identify orders (CRM) that have originated from Customer Relationship Management. You need to update the order source codes to include *CA*, *RCA*, *VMI*, and *CRM* as valid source codes, if you have not done so already.

To add order source codes:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Order Management Foundation, Order Source Codes.
2. Add the source code *CA* as follows:
 - a. Select Add New Value.
 - b. For each setID, enter *CA* in the Source Code field.
 - c. Click Add.
 - d. Enter *01/01/1900* as the Effective Date.
 - e. Enter *Contracts Order* as the description.
 - f. Click Save.
3. Add the source code *RCA* as follows:
 - a. Select Add New Value.
 - b. For each setID, enter *RCA* in the Source Code field.
 - c. Click Add.
 - d. Enter *01/01/1900* as the Effective Date.
 - e. Enter *Auto Create from RMA/Contracts* for the description.
 - f. Click Save.
4. Add the source code *VMI* as follows:
 - a. For each setID, enter *VMI* in the Source Code field.
 - b. Click Add.
 - c. Enter *01/01/1900* as the Effective Date.
 - d. Enter *Vendor Managed Inventory Orders* for the description.
 - e. Click Save.
5. Add the source code *CRM* as follows:
 - a. Select Add New Value.
 - b. For each setID, enter *CRM* in the Source Code field.
 - c. Click Add.
 - d. Enter *01/01/1900* for the Effective Date.
 - e. Enter *CRM Orders* for the description.
 - f. Click Save.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Order Management	All	All

Task 5-20-3: Defining AutoNumbering for Reservation Backorder

This section discusses:

- Understanding Reservation Backorder Auto-Numbering
- Setting Up Auto-Numbering for Reservation Backorder Plans
- Setting Up Auto-Numbering for Reservation Backorder Rules

Understanding Reservation Backorder Auto-Numbering

You can choose how to fulfill your orders using reservation backorder rules and plans. If you want to auto-number these plans and rules, rather than defining them explicitly, set up the automatic numbering scheme for each type. Complete the following steps to set up rules and plans.

Setting Up Auto-Numbering for Reservation Backorder Plans

To verify and set up auto-numbering for reservation backorder plans:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Codes and Auto Numbering, Auto Numbering.
2. For Number Type, select Back Order / Reservation Plan.
3. Click Search.

If no data is returned, you do not have auto-numbering set up for reservation backorder plans.

4. To set up auto-numbering for reservation backorder plans:
 - a. Click Add a New Value.
 - b. Enter a valid setID.
 - c. For Field Name, select *TRFT_RULE_CD*
 - d. Enter a three-character value in the Start Seq field.
 - e. Add values for Max Length, Description, and Last Number Issued.
 - f. Select the *Default* option.
 - g. Save the auto-numbering rule, if applicable.
 - h. Repeat these steps for every setID.

Setting Up Auto-Numbering for Reservation Backorder Rules

To verify and set up auto-numbering for reservation backorder rules:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Codes and Auto Numbering, Auto Numbering.
2. For Number Type, select *Back Order / Reservation Rule*.
3. Click Search.

If no data is returned, auto-numbering is not set up for reservation backorder rules.

4. To set up auto-numbering for reservation backorder Rules:
 - a. Click Add a New Value.
 - b. Enter a valid setID.
 - c. For Number Type, select *Back Order / Reservation Rule*.

- d. Click Add.
- e. For the Field Name, select *TRFT_SET_ID*.
- f. Enter a three-character value in the Start Seq field.
- g. Enter values for Max Length, Description, and Last Number Issued.
- h. Select the Default option, if applicable.
- i. Save the auto-numbering rule.
- j. Repeat these steps for every setID.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Order Management	All	All

Task 5-20-4: Defining AutoNumbering for Alternate Sources of Supply

This section discusses:

- Understanding Alternate Source of Supply Auto-Numbering
- Setting Up Auto-Numbering for Supply Plans
- Setting Up Auto-Numbering for Alternate Sources of Supply Rules

Understanding Alternate Source of Supply Auto-Numbering

You can choose to source your orders based on purchase order, requisition, material stock request, or production order. To determine how to source your orders, you need a sourcing arbitration plan. To control what sources are available to your orders, you need defined sourcing rules. If you want to auto-number these plans and rules (rather than explicitly defining names for them), set up the automatic numbering scheme for each type (plans and rules).

Complete the steps that follow to set up and verify your auto-numbering schemes.

Setting Up Auto-Numbering for Supply Plans

To verify and set up auto-numbering for alternate sources of supply plans:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Codes and Auto Numbering, Auto Numbering.
2. For Number Type, select *Alt Source of Supply Plan*.
3. Click Search.
If no data is returned, you do not have auto-numbering set up for Alternate Sources of Supply Arbitration Plans.
4. To set up auto-numbering for Alternate Sources of Supply Arbitration Plans:
 - a. Click Add a New Value.
 - b. Enter a valid setID.

- c. For Number Type, select *Alt Sources of Supply Plan*.
- d. Click Add.
- e. For the Field Name, select *TRFT_RULE_CD*.
- f. Enter a three-character value in the Start Seq field.
- g. Enter values for Max Length, Description, Last Number Issued.
- h. Select the Default option.
- i. Save the auto-numbering rule, if applicable.
- j. Repeat the steps for each setID.

Setting Up Auto-Numbering for Alternate Sources of Supply Rules

To verify and set up auto-numbering for Alternate Sources of Supply Rules:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Codes and Auto Numbering, Auto Numbering.
2. For Number Type, select *Alt Sources of Supply Rule*.
3. Click Search.

If no data is returned you do not have auto-numbering set up for Alternate Sources of Supply Rules.

4. To set up auto-numbering for Alternate Sources of Supply Rules:
 - a. Click Add a New Value.
 - b. Enter a valid setID.
 - c. For Number Type, select *Alt Sources of Supply Rule*.
 - d. Click Add.
 - e. For the Field Name, select *TRFT_SET_ID*.
 - f. Enter a three-character value in the Start Seq field.
 - g. Enter values for Max Length, Description, Last Number Issued.
 - h. Select the Default option.
 - i. Save the auto-numbering rule, if applicable.
 - j. Repeat these steps for each setID.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Order Management	All	All

Task 5-20-5: Defining Default Hold Reason Code

This section discusses:

- Defining a Hold Reason Code
- Setting the Hold Reason Code as Default

Defining a Hold Reason Code

A default hold reason code value must be set for automation hold processing for each Order Management business unit. This user-defined default value is used whenever a system generated hold code is applied. Before the default value can be set, the reason code value must be added to the list of valid reason codes.

See PeopleSoft Enterprise Order Management 9.0 PeopleBook, Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Management Business Units, Setting Up Order Management Business Units, Establishing Hold Processing.

To add a new reason code value:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Codes and Auto Numbering, Reason Codes.
2. Select the Add a New Value tab.
3. Enter a setID value.
4. Select Reason Type Order/Quote Hold.
5. Enter a value in the Reason Code field.
6. Click Add.
7. Enter an effective date and description.
8. Click Save.
9. Repeat steps 4 through 8 for every valid setID.

Setting the Hold Reason Code as Default

After you have entered at least one Order/Quote Hold reason code, you can set the default value on the Order Management business units.

To set the default hold reason code:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, Order Management, Order Management Definition.
2. Enter an Order Management business unit.
3. Click Search.
4. Click the Hold Processing link at the bottom of the page.
5. In the Automatic Hold group box, select a value for the Hold Reason Code field.
6. Click Save.
7. Repeat steps 2 through 6 for every valid business unit.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Order Management	All	All

Task 5-20-6: Defining Hold Code Security by Role

In previous releases, no security was available for the application or removal of holds associated with quotes and orders. Now, you must assign hold codes to user roles to control the holds that a role can manage.

See PeopleSoft Enterprise Order Management 9.0 PeopleBook, Implementing PeopleSoft Order Management, Implementing Order Management Options, Defining Hold Code Security by Role.

To define hold code security by role:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Security, Hold Security by Role.
2. Click the Add a New Value tab.
3. Enter a setID.
4. Enter a role name.
5. Click Add.
6. Add a row for each hold code value that the role can manage.
 - a. Select the Add Authority check box if the role has the authority to add quote and order holds.
 - b. Select the Release Authority check box if the role has the authority to release quote and order holds.
 - c. Select the Delete OM Hold check box if the role has the authority to delete quote and order holds.
7. Click Save.
8. Repeat steps 3 through 7 for each valid setID.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Order Management	All	All

Task 5-20-7: Updating Orders from Contracts

For orders that originate from Contracts Administration, the new source codes added in the previous step must be added to the source code exclusion list. Orders originating from Contracts Administration should not have freight, pricing, tax, or VAT calculated during the order completion process. Adding these source codes to the source code exclusion list allows the transaction to be excluded from processing by those sections of the order completion process.

To update orders from Contracts:

1. Select Order Management, Electronic Commerce, Source Code Exclusions.
2. For the source code *CA*:
 - a. Select Add New Value.
 - b. For each setID, enter *CA* in the Source Code field.
 - c. Add a row for every valid order type code (sales order or quote) and every exclusion type (Freight, Price Adjustment, Tax, and VAT).
 - d. Click Save.
3. For the source code *RCA*:
 - a. Select Add New Value.
 - b. For each setID, enter *RCA* in the Source Code field.

- c. Add a row for every valid order type code (sales order or quote) and every exclusion type (Freight, Price Adjustment, Tax, and VAT).
- d. Click Save.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Order Management	All	All

Task 5-20-8: Identifying Renamed Pricing IDs

Report UVEPY100 identifies the exclusive pricing IDs that have been renamed during data conversion.

To identify renamed exclusive pricing IDs:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Create Upgrade Reports.
2. Run report Exclusive Pricing IDs Renamed Report, UVEPY100.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Order Management	All	All

Task 5-21: Configuring Attachments

This section discusses:

- Understanding Attachments
- Configuring an Attachment Server
- Converting Purchasing Attachments
- Converting Order Management Attachments

Understanding Attachments

The attachment handling functionality for PeopleSoft Purchasing, Order Management, eProcurement, Services Procurement, and Strategic Sourcing has changed in this release to utilize more of the built-in PeopleTools attachment functionality. The URL Maintenance functionality is no longer used for these products. If you used attachments prior to this upgrade, you will need to perform some additional configuration to enable the new functionality.

Task 5-21-1: Configuring an Attachment Server

If you use attachments with other products, you may already have servers set up as a result of the upgrade. You need to confirm that a server has been selected as your default server and that your attachments reside on that server. If you did not use attachments with other products, you have two choices; you can either configure an FTP server to store your attachments, or you can have your attachments stored within the database (referred to as the database server in the following text).

For upgrading attachments an FTP server must be used.

To review or configure a defined attachment server, select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, File Attachments, Administer File Attachments. Your defined servers will appear on this page if they are already defined. You can use any of the servers as your attachment server. If you select an FTP server, you will need to move your attachments from their current location to the PATHNAME indicated on the page for the FTP server. Alternatively, you could configure your current attachment location as an FTP server (your system administrator should help you with this task).

If you do not have any servers defined, you may want to define an FTP server or a database server as your attachment server. If you select the database server, the remaining information appears by default when you add it to the list; no additional configuration is required. If you select an FTP server, you will need to know the FTP user name and password, the FTP server name, and the FTP directory location if it is not the FTP login default. This information should be obtainable from your system administrator.

Once your servers are defined, choose one server as the Active Server. An FTP server must be the active server for upgrading attachments. After upgrading attachments either the FTP or the database server can be the active server. The Active Server is used as the location for any new attachments after the upgrade is completed. Note only attachments from this point forward are affected. Any previously attached files will continue to be accessed from the server on which they were stored.

Note. The term *Active Server* defines the specific server that can now create attachments. Other servers may be operational and can be used for retrieving existing attachments.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Purchasing eProcurement Services Procurement Strategic Sourcing Order Management	All	All

Task 5-21-2: Converting Purchasing Attachments

This section discusses:

- Understanding Converting Attachments
- Converting Existing Attachments
- Converting Remaining Attachments

Understanding Converting Attachments

In this step, you convert the PeopleSoft Purchasing attachments to the new naming convention. Before to running this step, all attachments must be stored on the attachment server designated as the Active Server. A routine will attempt to automatically create a link to your attachments using the new Attachment Architecture. You will run a report that returns any attachments that could not be automatically converted due to illegal characters in the filename. You will then follow a set of instructions to manually convert these attachments to the new naming conventions.

Converting Existing Attachments

To convert existing attachments:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, PO Attachment Upgrade.
2. Create a new run control.
3. Submit the process.

Converting Remaining Attachments

To convert remaining attachments:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Create Upgrade Reports.
2. Run the Attachment Exceptions report, UVCGY202.SQR.
The report lists the name of the unconverted attachment, the reason why it could not be automatically converted, and what type of document it may be attached to, along with the document identifier.
3. For every entry in the report, follow the appropriate steps below.
4. For Contracts, select Purchasing, Procurement Contracts, Add/Update Contract.
 - a. Select the Find an Existing Value tab.
 - b. Enter the setID and ContractID provided in the report.
 - c. Click Search.
 - d. Click the Comments hyperlink at the top of the page to access your header comments.
 - e. Click the comment bubble icon in the line grid to access your line comments.
5. For Purchase Orders, select Purchasing, Purchase Orders, Add/Update PO.
 - a. Select the Find an Existing Value tab.
 - b. Enter the Business Unit and PO ID provided in the report.
 - c. Click Search.
 - d. Click the comments hyperlink at the top of the page to access your header comments.
 - e. Click the comment bubble icon in the line grid to access your line comments.
6. For Receipts, select Purchasing, Receipts, Add/Update Receipt.
 - a. Select the Find an Existing Value tab.
 - b. Enter the Business Unit and Receipt Number provided in the report.
 - c. Click Search.
 - d. Click the Comments hyperlink at the top of the page to access your header comments.
 - e. To access line comments, select the Links and Status tab.

- f. Click the comment bubble icon in the line grid.
7. For Requisitions, select Purchasing, Requisitions, Add/Update Requisition.
 - a. Select the Find an Existing Value tab.
 - b. Enter the Business Unit and Requisition ID provided in the report.
 - c. Click Search.
 - d. Click the Comments hyperlink at the top of the page to access your header comments.
 - e. Click the comment bubble icon in the line grid to access your line comments.
8. For RFQs, select Purchasing, Request for Quotes, Add/Update RFQ.
 - a. Select the Find an Existing Value tab.
 - b. Enter the Business Unit and Requisition ID provided in the report.
 - c. Click Search.
 - d. Click the Comments hyperlink at the top of the page to access your header comments.
 - e. Click the comment bubble icon in the line grid to access your line comments.
9. For RTVs, select Purchasing, Return to Vendor, Add/Update RTV.
 - a. Select the Find an Existing Value tab.
 - b. Enter the Business Unit and Return to Vendor ID provided in the report.
 - c. Click Search.
 - d. Click the Header Comment hyperlink at the bottom of the page to access your header comments.
 - e. Click the comment bubble icon in the line grid to access your line comments.
10. From the appropriate comments page, click the Attach button.
11. Enter the current directory location and name of your attachment. Or, you can use the Browse button to provide the information.
12. Click Upload.

You will return to the Comments page.
13. Click OK.
14. Save your document once all the attachments are reattached to the document.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Purchasing	All	All

Task 5-21-3: Converting Order Management Attachments

This section discusses:

- Understanding Converting Attachments
- Converting Remaining Attachments

Understanding Converting Attachments

In this step, you run a report that returns any converted attachments with invalid file names that contain illegal characters. A set of manual steps is provided to convert invalid file attachments to the new naming conventions. The report that you run in this step based on server information you created for your Active Server, also updates information about the successfully converted attachments used by the file attachment utility.

The following subdirectories are tied to the indicated Order Management components and indicate where the attachments for those components will reside on your Active Server. You must migrate your attachments to their appropriate locations on the Active Server for these attachments to be accessible within the online system:

Component	Description	Subdirectory
CUST_ATT	Customer Attachments	Customer
ORDENT_FORM	Order Entry Form	SalesOrder
PROD_ATT	Product Attachments	Product
RMA_FORM	RMA Header	RMA
SCON_HDR_ATT	Buying Agreement Header Attachment	BuyingAgreement
SCON_LINE_ATT	Buying Agreement Line Attachment	BuyingAgreement

Converting Remaining Attachments

To convert remaining attachments:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Create Upgrade Reports.
2. Run the Attachment Exceptions report, UVEPP105.SQR.
This report lists the name of the converted attachment and the invalid file name.
3. For every entry in the report, complete the following appropriate steps.
4. For Buying Agreements, select Order Management, Buying Agreements, Create/Update Buying Agreement.
 - a. Select the Find an Existing Value tab.
 - b. Enter the SetID and Buying Agreement ID provided in the report and click Search.
 - c. For Buying Agreement Header Attachments, click the Attachments link from the Header Menu drop-down list box to access Header Attachments.
 - d. For Buying Agreement Line Attachments, select the line number provided in the report and then click the Attachments link from the Line Menu drop-down list box to access Line Attachments.
5. For Customers, select Customers, Customer Information, General Information.
 - a. Select the Find an Existing Value tab.
 - b. Enter the SetID and Customer ID provided in the report and click Search.
 - c. Click the Attachments link from the General Info Links drop-down list box to access Attachment Information.
6. For Orders, select Order Management, Quotes and Orders, Create/Update Order.

- a. Select the Find an Existing Value tab.
 - b. Enter the business unit and order number provided in the report and click Search.
 - c. For Order Header Attachments, click the Notes/Attachments link from the Header Menu drop-down list box to access Header Notes/Attachment.
 - d. For Order Line Attachments, select the line number provided in the report and then click the Notes/Attachments link from the Line Menu drop-down list box to access Line Notes/Attachment.
 - e. For Order Schedule Attachments, select the line number provided in the report and then click the Shipment Scheduleslink.
 - f. Select the schedule number provided in the report.
 - g. Click the Notes/Attachments link from the Schedule Menu drop-down list box to access Schedule Notes/Attachment.
7. For Products, select Products, Identify Product Details, Attachments.
 - a. Enter the SetID and Product ID provided in the report.
 - b. Click Search.
 8. For RMA, select Customer Returns, Create/Update RMA.
 - a. Select the Find an Existing Value tab.
 - b. Enter the business unit and RMA number provided in the report and click Search.
 - c. For RMA Header Attachments, click the Header Notes/Attachmentslink to access the RMA Header Notes/Attachments page.
 - d. For RMA Line Attachments, click the RMA Linelink for the line number provided in the report.
 - e. Click the Line Notes/Attachmentslink to access the RMA Line Notes/Attachments page.
 9. Modify the invalid entry to a valid filename.
 10. Save the page.
 11. Rename the attachment to match the name you updated on the attachments page.
 12. Migrate the attachment to the attachment server using the table in the previous step as a guideline for where the attachment should be located.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Order Management	All	All

Task 5-22: Completing Customer Data

This section discusses:

- Understanding the Trading Partner Code
- Running the Trading Partner Code Report

- Updating the Trading Partner Code

Note. This step applies only if you have Federal customers. Skip this task if you do not have any Federal customers.

Understanding the Trading Partner Code

Two new fields have been added to the CUSTOMER record: a flag indicating whether the customer is a federal customer and a trading partner code field. These fields will need to be mapped appropriately for your Federal customers. The data conversion would have set the Federal indicator flag to *yes* if either the IPAC interface flag (previously the OPAC interface flag) was set to *yes* or there was an agency location code defined for the customer. These customers now need to have the appropriate trading partner six-digit numeric code defined for them.

Task 5-22-1: Running the Trading Partner Code Report

First you run a report to produce a list of customers who are missing trading partner codes.

To run the trading partner code post-upgrade report:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Create Upgrade Reports.
2. Run the report Federal Customers Missing Trading Partner Code UVCGJ104.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-22-2: Updating the Trading Partner Code

Now that you have a list of the customers who are missing a trading partner code, you need to update the code itself.

To update the trading partner code:

1. Select Customers, Customer Information, General Information.
2. On the General Info page, enter the trading partner code for each customer.
3. Save the entry.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-23: Completing Strategic Sourcing Setup

This section discusses:

- Defining User Lists for Event and Plan Approvals
- Defining Sourcing Approval Processes
- Defining Auto Numbering for Sourcing Plan ID

Task 5-23-1: Defining User Lists for Event and Plan Approvals

This PeopleSoft release introduces a plan approval process. You must use this process if you are creating and submitting any sourcing plans. You also need to re-create your user list definition for the Event Approval process. You must complete this step before you define the Event and Plan Approval processes in the next step.

To define a user list:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Approvals, Maintain User Lists.
2. Add a user list called *Event Approver* if it does not already exist.

User List Definition

User List: Event Approver

*Description: Sourcing Event Approver

User List Source

☒ Role Role Name: Event Approver

☐ SQL Definition

☐ Query

☐ Application Class

User List Definition page

3. Enter a description if it does not already exist.
4. Select the Role option.
5. Enter *Event Approver* or a custom role name you have created for your organization in the Role Name field.
6. Click Save.
7. Repeat steps 1 through 6 substituting *Plan Approver* for *Event Approver*.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Strategic Sourcing	All	All

Task 5-23-2: Defining Sourcing Approval Processes

Once you have defined your approval user lists, you need to create approval process definitions to which these user lists will be associated. In this step, you will define the approval process definitions that use the user lists you created in the previous step.

Note. You must create approval process definitions for each default setID that corresponds to a Sourcing business unit.

To define the sourcing approval processes:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Approvals, Set Up Process Definitions.
2. Add a new approval process definition for each setID.

For the event submittal process to work, this approval process ID must be Event Approval and the Definition ID must be the setID for which you are creating the approval process. However, you may customize the criteria information to fit your business needs. You may define different approval criteria for paths and steps. You may or may not want to define criteria at every level, depending on your business process.

The screenshot displays the 'Setup Process Definitions' interface. At the top, there are tabs for 'Definition Criteria', 'Alert Criteria', 'Save As', 'Approval Process Viewer', and 'Preview'. The main form includes the following fields and options:

- Process ID:** Event Approval
- Definition ID:** SHARE
- Effective Date:** 01/01/1900
- Description:** (empty text box)
- *Admin Role:** Event Administrator
- *Status:** Active
- Priority:** 1
- ☐ **Default Process Definition**
- ☐ **User Auto Approval**
- ☐ **Route to Requester**

Below the main form, there are three expandable sections:

- Stages:** Shows 'Stage 1' with a description of 'Stage 1'.
- Paths:** Shows a path for 'Commodity Business Unit' with a 'Static' source.
- Steps:** Shows a step for 'Commodity Type and Amount' with an 'Approver User List' of 'Event Approver'.

At the bottom, there are links for 'Expand/Collapse All'.

Setup Process Definitions page

3. Enter the *Admin Role*.
4. Click the Definition Criteria link to update criteria type.

Criteria Definition page

5. Click OK to return back to the Setup Process Definitions page and then click Save.
6. In the Paths section, click the Path Details link to add path information, if any.
7. Click the Criteria link to add the criteria for the approval path, if any.
8. Click OK to return to the Approval Path Definition page.
9. Click the OK button to return to the Setup Process Definitions page and then click Save.
10. In the Steps section, click the Step Details link to add approval step details.
11. Click the Criteria link to enter the approval criteria for the step.
12. Click OK to return to the Approval Path Definition page.
13. Click OK to return to the Setup Process Definitions page and then click Save.
14. To insert additional stages, paths or steps, click the add (+) button related to the appropriate section and repeat steps 4 through 13 to add details and criteria where needed.
15. Create the Plan Approval process definition by repeating steps 1 through 14 substituting *Plan Approval* for *Event Approval*.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Strategic Sourcing	All	All

Task 5-23-3: Defining Auto Numbering for Sourcing Plan ID

Complete the following steps to define and verify your auto-numbering schemes for sourcing plans.

To verify and define auto-numbering for sourcing plans:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Codes and Auto Numbering, Auto Numbering.
2. From the Number Type drop-down list, select *Sourcing Plan ID*.
3. Click Search.

If no data is returned, you do not have auto-numbering set up.

4. To set up auto-numbering:

- a. Click Add a New Value.
- b. Enter a valid setID.
- c. From the Number Type drop-down list, select *Sourcing Plan ID*.
- d. Click Add.
- e. For the Field Name, select *AUC_PLAN_ID*.
- f. Enter a three-character value in the Start Seq field.
- g. Enter values for Max Length, Description, and Last Number Issued.
- h. Select the Default option.
- i. Save the auto-numbering rule.
- j. Repeat the steps for each setID.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Strategic Sourcing	All	All

Task 5-24: Completing Services Procurement Setup

This section discusses:

- Understanding the sPro Upgrade
- Running the PostUpgrade sPro Queries
- Reviewing the PostUpgrade sPro Queries
- Activating HCM Integration in sPro
- Defining Service Type for Project Role
- Defining Default Business Unit
- Defining Requester Defaults
- Defining Service Coordinator Defaults
- Defining User List for Approvals
- Defining Work Order Approval Process
- Setting Up Bid Factors
- Defining Bid Factor Mapping
- Setting Auto Numbering for Timesheets
- Setting Auto Numbering for Progress Logs
- Reconciling sPro Notification Templates
- Reviewing Time and Progress Log Templates

Understanding the sPro Upgrade

In this release, expenses have been decoupled from time. Additionally, work order amounts are now broken into labor and expense amounts for better tracking against tolerance checks. For customers upgrading from previous releases, tolerance checking is still based on the total work order amount. Furthermore, where expenses have been entered, users navigating to the work order page will see “Expense Amount Not Available” because the data conversion process is not able to determine how much should be allocated to labor versus expenses for tolerance checking purposes.

The appearance of requisition and work order skills matrix/competencies information has also changed in this release. For existing transactions, the competencies will appear and will be stored in the long text field and the skills matrix grid will be blank. For new transactions, all the competencies will be stored in the skills matrix grid.

Work order will track distributions by percentage or actual allocation in the new release. During the upgrade process, the default value Percent Allocation was automatically assigned to all existing work orders so that you can continue to use your existing transactions going forward.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise Services Procurement 9.0 PeopleBook*.

Task 5-24-1: Running the PostUpgrade sPro Queries

In this step, you will run the Services Procurement post-upgrade queries.

To run the post-upgrade sPro queries:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Viewer.
2. Run the following queries:

```
sPro Time Template for OT Rules, UPG_SPQ707
sPro Time Template Calendars, UPG_SPP708
sPro Activity by Service Type, UPG_SPP710
sPro Activities by Service, UPG_SPQ711
sPro Service Activities, UPG_SPP714
sPro Service Activity X-Ref, UPG_SPP715
sPro WO Approval Process, UPG_SPP716
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 5-24-2: Reviewing the PostUpgrade sPro Queries

This section discusses:

- Reviewing Query UPG_SPQ707
- Reviewing Query UPG_SPP708
- Reviewing Query UPG_SPP710
- Reviewing Query UPG_SPQ711

- Reviewing Query UPG_SPP714
- Reviewing Query UPG_SPP715
- Reviewing Query UPG_SPP716

Reviewing Query UPG_SPQ707

This report lists all the time templates that use overtime. The previous overtime rules are no longer used. Use the output of this query in conjunction with query UPG_SPP708 results to recreate new time reporting rules in the task titled Reviewing Time and Progress Log Templates.

See *PeopleSoft Services Procurement 9.0 PeopleBook* .

Reviewing Query UPG_SPP708

This report lists all the time reports grouped by time reporting period. You use this information to create calendars and time reporting rules, and to attach them to the appropriate time templates in the task titled Reviewing Time and Progress Log Templates. All new time reporting transactions require this setup.

Reviewing Query UPG_SPP710

This informational report lists the activities, by service type, that were added as part of the upgrade process for customers who are not integrated with PeopleSoft Project Costing. Before this release, project activities were used in the timesheets. Now, non-project activities need to be defined and mapped to service types. The upgrade process converted all the existing activities on timesheets to activities by service type.

Reviewing Query UPG_SPQ711

This informational report lists the activities by service that were added as part of the upgrade process. Before this release, project activities defined as *Milestone* were used to create deliverables-based work orders with a settlement option of *Milestone*. Now, milestone activities are defined in PeopleSoft Services Procurement and are associated with a service. Then, work orders use these activities. The upgrade process inserted milestone activities used by the work order into activities by service for the service used by the work order.

Reviewing Query UPG_SPP714

This informational report lists all of the service activities defined in the system. In the previous release, resource-based activities were defined as project activities for PeopleSoft Services Procurement customers who are not integrated with PeopleSoft Project Costing. Similarly, deliverables-based activities with a settlement option of *Milestone* were also defined as project activities.

These activities are now defined in PeopleSoft Services Procurement as service activities. The upgrade process inserted these original activities into the services activities table with new activity IDs to avoid possible duplicates. This report lists the new activity ID along with the original activity description. You can use the results of this query, along with the results from query UPG_SPP715, to cross-reference the new service activities with the original project activities.

Reviewing Query UPG_SPP715

This is an informational report mapping the old project activity IDs to the new service activity IDs that were created during the upgrade process.

You can use the results of this query along with the results from query UPG_SPP714 to cross-reference the new service activities with the original project activities.

Reviewing Query UPG_SPP716

This report lists the setIDs for which work order approval process definitions must exist.

You will use the results of this query to create work order approval process definitions in the task titled Defining Work Order Approval Process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 5-24-3: Activating HCM Integration in sPro

This task applies to customers who currently use or will use PeopleSoft Services Procurement with PeopleSoft Enterprise Human Capital Management (HCM) integration. If you are using PeopleSoft Services Procurement and do not plan to integrate with PeopleSoft HCM, you may skip this task.

PeopleSoft Services Procurement is now integrated with PeopleSoft HCM to use common employee and job information. If you are currently using PeopleSoft Services Procurement and PeopleSoft HCM *and* you want to take advantage of the sPro/HCM integration features after the upgrade is complete, you will need to review or update HCM-related fields on your existing requisitions and work orders as described in this step.

For existing requisitions, you have two options:

- Leave the HCM fields blank for existing requisitions. These can be overridden or filled when a work order is created or submitted. Even if you select the HCM Person Integration option on the Services Procurement Installation Options page after the upgrade, the requisition is not affected.
- Enter values in the HCM fields on existing requisitions through scripts. The PeopleSoft system is unable to provide scripts because many of the HCM fields are business unit-dependent and certain fields are regulated by region.

In addition, for existing work orders, if the HCM integration is switched on after upgrade:

- You will be asked to enter values in the required HCM fields when submitting work orders if existing work orders are in open status and are not yet submitted.
- You will need to update the HCM fields on the SPF_WORDERREC_1 table through your own custom scripts if existing work orders have been submitted or approved. When a work order is released, the system checks to see if the HCM option is selected. If it is selected, then a message is published to HCM when a work order is released. Because no HCM data exists, HCM will return an error.
- Finally, you will also need to take action on work orders that have already been released because there are no corresponding Person and Job entries exist in HCM for the service provider associated with the work order. These work orders can be reassigned, replaced or cancelled, or closed or terminated. Services Procurement sends messages to HCM when these actions occur. However, you will need to manually create the HCM Person and Job entries and then update the SPB_PERSON_TBL table, the SPF_WORDERREC_1 table (for resource-based work orders), or the SPF_WO_TRK_RSRC table (for deliverable-based work orders).

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise Services Procurement 9.0 PeopleBook*.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 5-24-4: Defining Service Type for Project Role

You may skip this step if your system is not integrated with PeopleSoft Purchasing or if your system does not use purchasing contracts.

During the pre-upgrade step, PUEPK702 was executed, identifying which service type should be the default for each project role. Use the results of that report to select default service types for each project role.

To select a default service type for each project role:

1. Select Services Procurement, Define Services Procurement.
2. Select Service (Project Role) Setup under the Service Setup folder.
3. Select Service Types by Service.
4. For each project role indicated in the report results, do the following:
 - a. Enter the project role and click Search.
 - b. Select the Default Service Type check box for the service type that corresponds to the project role in the report results.

Note. If your system is integrated with PeopleSoft Enterprise HCM and the “Enable HCM Terminology?” check box on the Services Procurement installation options page is checked, you can only have one service type per project role.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 5-24-5: Defining Default Business Unit

If you have previously defined a default business unit for your users, you may skip this step. A default business unit is used throughout Services Procurement to derive setIDs for specific setup data or transactions. To select a service type while defining service requester or service coordinator defaults, a default business unit must first be defined in the user preferences. If you have not defined a default business unit for your users, you should do so.

To define a default business unit:

1. Select Services Procurement, Maintain Users, Maintain User Preferences.
2. Enter the User ID whose preferences you want to modify and click Search.
3. Click the Overall Preference link.

4. Enter a default business unit.
5. Click Save.
6. Repeat for each user.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 5-24-6: Defining Requester Defaults

A service requester may have some information that does not often vary when he or she creates requisitions and work orders. Defining requester defaults will auto-populate the requester's most commonly used information on the work order and requisition at the time it is created. In this step you define those defaults.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise Services Procurement 9.0 PeopleBook*.

To define requester defaults:

1. Select Services Procurement, Maintain Users, Service Requester Defaults.
2. Enter the requester's user ID of the user you want to update in the Requester User ID field.
3. If a service is defined without an entry in the Service Type field, select the service type applicable for the Service.
4. Select the May Enter Work Order and May Extend Work Order check boxes to allow the user to add new work orders.
5. Select the Authorized to Source to Preferred Suppliers check box if the user is authorized to do so.
6. Click Save.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 5-24-7: Defining Service Coordinator Defaults

A service coordinator may have certain information that does not often vary when he or she creates work orders. Defining service coordinator defaults will automatically enter the service coordinator's most commonly used information on the work order when it is created. In this step, you will define those defaults.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise Services Procurement 9.0 PeopleBook*.

To define service coordinator defaults:

1. Select Services Procurement, Maintain Users, Service Coordinator Defaults.
2. Enter the Service Coordinator's User ID of the user you want to update.

3. Enter the information provided by default when a work order is created.
4. If a service is defined without an entry in the Service Type field, select the service type applicable for the service.
5. Enter the Notification options.
6. Select the May Enter Work Order or May Extend Work Order check boxes to allow the user to add or extend work orders.
7. Select the Authorized to Delegate check box if the user is authorized to do so.
8. Select the Authorized to Change Sourcing Rules check box if the user is authorized to do so.
9. Click Save.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 5-24-8: Defining User List for Approvals

In this release, a work order approval process has been introduced. You must use this process if you are creating and submitting work orders. First you must define a user list for the approval process and then continue to the next step to define the work order approval process.

To define the approval user list:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Approvals, Maintain User Lists.
2. Add a new user list called *WorkOrder Approver* if it does not already exist.

User List Definition

User List: WorkOrder Approver

***Description:** WorkOrder Approver

User List Source

☐ Role
☒ **SQL Definition** **SQL Object Identifier:** SP_ROLE_SUPERVISOR_BY_OPRID
☐ Query
☐ Application Class

☒ **Include Users as Input**
☐ **Transaction Keys as Input**

User List Definition

3. Enter the description of the User List.
4. Select SQL Definition.

5. Enter *SP_ROLE_SUPERVISOR_BY_OPRID* or a custom SQL object that you have created for your organization in the SQL Object Identifier field.

Note. The SQL Object *SP_ROLE_SUPERVISOR_BY_OPRID* has been provided as a working sample. However, you may wish to create your own SQL object in Application Designer to define a different approval user list.

This SQL provides a list of users who will approve the work orders.

6. Select the Include Users as Input check box.
7. Click Save.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise 9.0 Services Procurement PeopleBook*.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 5-24-9: Defining Work Order Approval Process

Once you define your approval user list, you need to create a work order approval process definition and associate the user list to that definition. In this step, you will define the work order approval process using the user list created in the previous step. Evaluate the results from query UPG_SPP716 to determine the setIDs for which new work order approval process definitions should be created.

You need to create new approval process definitions for only those setIDs that do not have an existing approval process. Do not create new approval process definitions for those setIDs that already have one.

Note. If you want to add any new step or criteria to an existing approval process definition, do not make any change to the existing definition. Save the existing definition with a new effective date and continue with your modifications.

To define the work order approval process:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Approvals, Set Up Process Definitions.
2. Add a new approval process definition for each setID.

This approval process ID must be *SP_WORKORDER* and the Definition ID must be the setID you are creating the approval process for in order for the work order submittal process to work. However, the criteria information may be customized to fit your business needs. You may define different approval criteria for alerts, paths, and steps. You may or may not want to define a criteria at each and every level, depending on your business process.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise 9.0 Services Procurement PeopleBook*.

See the example:

Setup Process Definitions

[Definition Criteria](#) | [Alert Criteria](#) | [Save As](#) | [Approval Process Viewer](#) | [Preview](#)

Process ID: SP_WORKORDER ***Admin Role:** SP_ADMINISTRATOR ☐ **Default Process Definition**
Definition ID: US001 ***Status:** Active ☒ **User Auto Approval**
Effective Date: 01/01/1900 **Priority:** 1 ☐ **Route to Requester**
Description:

Stages Find | View All First 1 of 3 Last

***Stage Number:** 1 **Description:** Original Work Order

Paths Find | View All First 1 of 1 Last

Description: Original WorkOrders ***Source:** Static [Details](#) | [Criteria](#)

Steps Customize | Find | View All First 1 of 1 Last

Description	Approver User List	Details	Criteria
10 Approver	WorkOrder Approver	Details	Criteria

[Expand/Collapse All](#)

Setup Process Definitions page

3. Enter the Admin Role.
4. Click the Alert Criteria link to add criteria for alerts.

Criteria Definition

***Criteria Type:** User Entered

☒ **All Criteria Needed to Satisfy**

User Entered Criteria Find | View All First 1 of 1 Last

Description: Original WorkOrders

Field Criteria

Record: SPF_WORDERREC **Field Name:** SP_WO_TYPE

*Criteria Operator	Value	Value
1 Equals	0	

Monetary Criteria

Amount Record: SPF_WORDERREC **Amount Field:** POAMOUNT

Currency Field: CURRENCY_CD

Operator: Greater Than

Amount: 1,000.000 **Amount:**

Currency Code: USD

Rate Type:

OK Cancel Apply

Criteria Definition page

5. Click the OK button to return back to the Setup Process Definitions page and then click Save.
6. In the Paths section, click on the Paths Details link to add path information.

Approval Path Definition

[Criteria](#)

Approval Path: Path1

*Step Source: Static

Description: Original WorkOrders

Long Description:

☐ Skip Prior Steps for Requester

Timeout Options					Customize	Find	First	1 of 1	Last
	*Escalate Option	Hours	Days	Reassign To	User List				
1	Notify Participant				<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/> <input type="button" value="+"/> <input type="button" value="-"/>				

OK Cancel

Approval Path Definition page

7. Click the Criteria link to add the criteria for the approval path, if any.
8. Click the OK button to return back to the Approval Path Definition page.
9. Click the OK button to return to the Setup Process Definitions page and then click Save.
10. In the Steps section click on the Step Details link to add approval step details.

Approval Step Definition

[Criteria](#) | [Self-Approval Criteria](#)

Sequence Number: 10

Description: Approver

Approvers

Approver User List: WorkOrder Approver

Approver Role Name: SP_APPROVER

Approver Requirements

☐ All Approvers Required

☒ Some Approvers Required Number of Approvers Needed: 1

Approver Requirements

☐ Self Approval

Reviewers

Reviewer User List:

OK Cancel

Approval Step Definition page

11. Click the Criteria link to enter the approval criteria for the step.
12. Click the OK button to return to the Approval Step Definition page.
13. Click Save.
14. Repeat the above steps to insert additional stages under the same approval process definitions for work order reassignments, extensions, and replacements by changing the value for the field SP_WO_TYPE in the field criteria scroll on the Criteria Definition page (E = extension, O = original, P = replacement, R = reassign).

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 5-24-10: Setting Up Bid Factors

In this step, you will create a new bid factor.

To set up bid factors:

1. Select Services Procurement, Define Services Procurement.
2. Select Bid Factor Setup under the Sourcing Setup folder.
3. Click on the Bid Factor Setup link.
4. Add the bid factor listed in the table below for each valid setID.

Bid factors are required for deliverables-based requisitions and work orders. The minimum required information includes Bid Factor Code, Effective Date, Status, Type, Description, and Question. Sample description and question are shown, but you may customize them to your business process.

Bid Factor Code	Status	Type	Sample Description	Sample Question
AMOUNT	Active	Monetary	Amount	What is the amount?

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 5-24-11: Defining Bid Factor Mapping

In this step you will define bid factor mappings for each setID.

To define bid factor mappings:

1. Select Services Procurement, Define Services Procurement.

2. Select Bid Factor Setup under the Sourcing Setup folder.
3. Click on the Bid Factor Mapping link.
4. For each setID, map the Services Procurement attribute “Amount” to the AMOUNT bid factor code created above. The AMOUNT bid factor should be mapped for the sourcing functionality to work properly.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise 9.0 Services Procurement PeopleBook*.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 5-24-12: Setting Auto Numbering for Timesheets

If you have not already done so, set up the automatic numbering scheme for the PeopleSoft Services Procurement Timesheet number type.

To set auto-numbering for timesheets:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Codes and Auto Numbering, Auto Numbering.
2. Enter a valid setID and select *Services Procurement Timesheet* from the Number Type drop-down list.
3. Click Add a New Value.
4. For the Field Name, select the default *TIME_SHEET_ID*.
5. Enter the start sequences, maximum length, description, and last number issued information.
6. Click Save.
7. Repeat steps 2 through 6 for every setID.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 5-24-13: Setting Auto Numbering for Progress Logs

If you have not already done so, set up the automatic numbering scheme for the Service Progress Logs number type.

To set auto-numbering for progress logs:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Codes and Auto Numbering, Auto Numbering.
2. Enter a valid setID and select *Service Progress Logs* from the Number Type drop-down list.

3. Click Add a New Value.
4. For the Field Name, select the default *PLOG_ID*.
5. Enter the start sequences, maximum length, description, and last number issued information.
6. Click Save.
7. Repeat steps 2 through 6 for every setID.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 5-24-14: Reconciling sPro Notification Templates

The notification templates for the following components have been modified:

- SPF_BID
- SPF_BIDRESPONSE
- SPF_CBID_RSP_COMP
- SPF_CLIBID_COMP
- SPF_CBID_RSP_COMP
- SPF_RBID_RSP_COMP
- SPF_SUBMITTAL
- SPF_INV_APPROVE
- SPF_INV_MANAGE
- SPF_REQ_LN_STTS – templates FILLED and CANCEL2

The notification templates for the following components are new:

- SPA_APR_ROSTER
- SPA_EXP_APR_ROSTER
- SPA_EXPENSE2
- SPA_MANAGE_PLOGS
- SPA_TIME (replaces SPS_TIME_ENTRY2)
- SPA_TIME_APPROVAL
- SPF_DEFN_REQ_RATES
- SPF_WO_APPR_CMP
- SPF_WORDER_ROSTER
- SPF_WORK_ORDER_CMP (replaces SPF_WORDERCOMP)

Reconcile the notification template text and the notification template variables for the components listed previously.

To access the notification template information:

1. Sign in as Administrator.
2. Select PeopleTools, Workflow, Notifications, Notification Templates.

To access the notification template variable information:

1. Sign in as Administrator.
2. Select PeopleTools, Workflow, Notifications, Template Variables.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise 9.0 Services Procurement PeopleBook*.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 5-24-15: Reviewing Time and Progress Log Templates

This section discusses:

- Updating Set Control Value for Time Template Record Group
- Creating Calendars for Time Reporting
- Creating Time Reporting Rules
- Associating Calendars and Rules to Time Templates

Updating Set Control Value for Time Template Record Group

In the current release, the Services Time Reporting feature was enhanced to meet a broader set of reporting needs. Time templates are now grouped by SetID rather than business unit. Existing service templates were modified during the upgrade to convert business units to setIDs. Evaluate the results from the pre-upgrade query, UPG_SPP706, against the upgraded data to ensure that your service templates meet your requirements. For each business unit that was converted to a setID as identified in the query, you will need to manually change the setID for the service time templates record group (SP_12) to be the same as the set control value.

To manually change the setID for each converted business unit:

1. Sign in as Administrator.
2. Select PeopleTools, Utilities, Administration, TableSet Control.
3. Enter the set control value (for example, business unit) in the search criteria.
4. Find the service time templates record group, SP_12.
5. Change the existing setID value to the value of the set control value.
6. Click Save.
7. Repeat steps 3 through 6 for each business unit identified in the UPG_SPP706 query results.

Creating Calendars for Time Reporting

If you have not set up any calendars, you will need to create them and associate them to the time template. You will use the results from the post-upgrade query UPG_SPP708 to assist you in creating the calendars.

To create a calendar:

1. Sign in as an Administrator.
2. Select Services Procurement, Define Services Procurement.
3. Select System-Wide Definitions from the General Setup folder and click on the Calendar Builder link.
4. Create a new calendar.
5. Enter a description, begin date, end date, and long description.
6. Enter the fiscal year if different from the default value.
7. Select the calendar type based on the distinct time periods from query UPG_SPP708 (for example daily, weekly, bi-weekly, and so forth). Note additional options may be available, depending on the calendar type you select.
8. Click Generate to populate the Detail Periods grid.
9. Click Save.
10. Repeat for each distinct time period as identified in the query results.

Creating Time Reporting Rules

This step is optional if you have time templates that do not use overtime.

The current release uses time reporting rules for calculating different payouts. If your previous time templates are set up for overtime reporting, you will need to create new time reporting rules for each setID identified in the two post-upgrade queries UPG_SPQ707 and UPG_SPP708 to allow you to continue to report overtime. These new time reporting rules will replace the previous overtime reporting rules. Refer to the sample data provided in the new release Demo database for a time reporting rule that uses daily overtime.

To set up time reporting rules:

1. Sign in as Administrator.
2. Select Services Procurement, Define Services Procurement.
3. Select Time and Expense Setup from the Settlement Setup folder.
4. Click Time Reporting Rules.
5. Create a new time reporting rule ID for each overtime rule and setID listed in the query results from UPG_SPQ707 and UPG_SPP708.

Based on your time reporting needs, some of the previous overtime rules may be consolidated into the new time reporting rule.
6. Enter values for effective date, description, and default TRC (time reporting code).
7. Select the rule scope of *Date*, *Day of Week*, or *Time Period*.
8. Select the rule type of *Time Quantity* or *TRC List*.
9. Enter the information as it appears for the rule scope selected in the grid.
10. Click Save.

Note. If you do not have TRCs set up for Overtime, you must first define the overtime TRC.

Associating Calendars and Rules to Time Templates

Use the results from query UPG_SPP708 to review and attach calendars and time reporting rules to the appropriate time templates.

To review and associate calendars to time templates:

1. Sign in as Administrator.
2. Select Services Procurement, Define Services Procurement.
3. Select Time and Expense Setup from the Settlement Setup folder.
4. Click Service Time/Progress Template.
5. Enter the name of the template that you want to edit.
6. To attach the calendar, select the Service Calendar by clicking the search icon.
7. To associate a time reporting rule, select the Time Reporting Rule ID by clicking the search icon.
8. Enter the remaining information as needed.
9. Click Save.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise Services Procurement 9.0 PeopleBook*.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Services Procurement	All	All

Task 5-25: Configuring PayBill Management

This section discusses:

- Updating PayBill Management Product ID

Task 5-25-1: Updating PayBill Management Product ID

In this step, you will update the Pay/Bill Management product ID for each contract profile.

To update the Pay/Bill Management product ID:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Staffing, Orders, Contract Profile.
2. Enter the Business Unit you want to update.
3. Click the Search button in the Product ID field and select the appropriate value from the Search Results list.
4. Repeat this step for each contract profile.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Pay/Bill Management	All	All

Task 5-26: Preparing Treasury Setup

This section discusses:

- Rerunning Auto Position Process
- Updating Market Exchange Codes
- Setting Up New Facilities
- Setting Up Document Sequencing
- Adding the Issue Date for Securities
- Adding CUSIP for Security
- Generating SQL for Fee Codes

Task 5-26-1: Rerunning Auto Position Process

In this step, you will rerun the Auto Position processes for all deals. This action will process every deal to calculate the cash flows, position, and accounting events, which will reflect changes to the deals during the upgrade.

To re-run the Auto Position processes:

1. Select Deal Management, Capture Deals, Deal Position Update.
2. Select the Process All Outstanding Deals option and run the process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Deal Management Risk Management	All	All

Task 5-26-2: Updating Market Exchange Codes

In the new release, a Country field has been added to the Market/Exchange Codes page. You need to populate this field appropriately with the name of the country to which the market or exchange belongs.

To update market/exchange codes:

1. Select Setup Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Market/Exchange Codes.

2. Select each market/exchange and populate the Country fields appropriately.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Cash Management Deal Management Risk Management	All	All

Task 5-26-3: Setting Up New Facilities

This section discusses:

- Creating New Facilities
- Updating Existing Instruments

Creating New Facilities

In the new release, two new facility types are introduced: commercial paper and line of credit. To use the new functionality, you must create new facilities using the new facility types.

To create new facilities:

1. Select Deal Management, Administer Deals, Facilities for Issuing Debt.
2. Add a new facility, selecting the appropriate facility type.

Updating Existing Instruments

Before the new release, commercial paper and line of credit deals were not explicitly defined. To enable this new feature, the commercial paper or line of credit attribute check boxes must be selected for existing instruments.

To update existing instruments:

1. Select Deal Management, Administer Deals, Define Instruments.
2. Select the instrument to be updated.
3. On the Instrument Detail tab, select either the commercial paper or line of credit attribute at the bottom of the page.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Deal Management	All	All

Task 5-26-4: Setting Up Document Sequencing

If you have document sequencing enabled, you need to make sure the document type field is populated for each accounting template.

To update the accounting template with a document type:

1. Select Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Templates.
2. Open the appropriate accounting template and specify a documentation type for the template.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Deal Management	All	All

Task 5-26-5: Adding the Issue Date for Securities

The Issue Date field needs to be populated for all upgrade paths.

To add issue dates for securities:

1. Select Deal Management, Administer Deals, Securities.
2. Open the appropriate security and add an issue date.
3. Click Save.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Deal Management	All	All

Task 5-26-6: Adding CUSIP for Security

CUSIP IDfield is a new, required field in the new release. It must be populated for all securities.

Note. Complete this step only if you license PeopleSoft Deal Management.

To update the CUSIP IDfield:

1. Select Deal Management, Administer Deals, Securities.
2. Open the appropriate security and add the CUSIP.
3. Click Save.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Deal Management	All	All

Task 5-26-7: Generating SQL for Fee Codes

Because the transaction tables were updated, you must regenerate the SQL for fee codes.

To generate the SQL:

1. Select Set Up Financials/ Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Fee Codes.
2. Open the appropriate Fee Code.
3. Click on Generate SQL.
4. Click Save.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Cash Management	All	All

Task 5-27: Reviewing Electronic Layouts for Banks

In the new release, Electronic Layouts have been added to Collection and Payment Methods on External Accounts. After the initial upgrade, you should review the layouts for each payment method for each account. Payments may be settled through either Pay Cycle Manager or the Financial Gateway, and at least one layout must be the default layout that will be used for all logic provided by default.

To update Electronic Layouts for banks:

1. Select Banking, Bank Accounts, External Accounts.
2. Select the Collection Methods – Review the Electronic Layout grid.
3. Add new Electronic Layouts or modify existing layouts, if applicable.
4. Select the Payment Methods – Review the Electronic Layout grid.
5. Add new Electronic Layouts or modify existing layouts, if applicable.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Cash Management Deal Management Risk Management	All	All

Task 5-28: Completing Setup for Projects

This section discusses:

- Setting Up Analysis Type and Analysis Group
- Linking Project Status to Process Status

- Setting Unit of Measure for Hours and Days
- Setting Project Calendar
- Running Summary Refresh
- Calculating Team Member Duration
- Setting Default Project Manager Role
- Reviewing Rate Template Mapping

Task 5-28-1: Setting Up Analysis Type and Analysis Group

Many analysis types and analysis groups are integral to project processes. The upgrade delivers any additions or changes to the required analysis types and analysis groups under the projects-owned setIDs of SHARE, MODEL and MFG. However, other setIDs were not updated because of the risk of overwriting any changes you may have made to these user-configurable variables. You will need to analyze the system-defined analysis types and analysis groups found under the SHARE setID and determine which additions or changes to migrate to any other setID that you use for Projects processing.

Access these tables, using the navigation show, to perform further analysis:

- Projects Analysis Groups – PS_PROJ_AN_GRP_TBL: Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Project Costing, Transaction Options, Analysis Groups.
- Projects Analysis Types – PS_PROJ_ANTYPE_TBL: Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Project Costing, Transaction Options, Analysis Types.
- Projects Analysis Group Mapping – PS_PROJ_AN_GRP_MAP: Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Project Costing, Transaction Options, Analysis Groups.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Project Costing	All	All

Task 5-28-2: Linking Project Status to Process Status

This section discusses:

- Assigning a Processing Status to Each Status Type
- Defining Project Status Defaults
- Creating Project Status Based on Project Processing Status

Assigning a Processing Status to Each Status Type

The processing status of a project is now based on the project status. For each status type defined in the system, you need to assign a processing status to that status type. If you do not have any status types defined in your system, you may skip this step.

To assign a processing status to each status type:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Project Costing, Project Options, Status Types. Make sure you are in Change History mode.

The Status Types page appears:

The screenshot shows the PeopleSoft 'Status Types' page. On the left is a navigation menu with 'Status Types' highlighted. The main content area is titled 'Status Types' and shows a form for editing a status type. The form includes fields for 'Effective Date' (01/01/1900), 'Status' (Active), 'Status Description' (Approved), and 'Processing Status' (Active). There are also sections for 'Status Control' with 'Analysis Type' and 'Control Action' fields. At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Save', 'Return to Search', 'Previous in List', 'Next in List', 'Notify', 'Add', 'Update/Display', 'Include History', and 'Correct Histc'.

Status Types page

- For each defined status type, select the appropriate processing status.
You will receive an informational message indicating that you are changing the project to Processing Status linkage on an existing effective-dated row. You can ignore this message.
- Click OK and then save your changes.
- When you have finished updating each existing status type, you should have at least one status type with a processing status of *Active*, one with a processing status of *Pending*, and one with a processing status of *Inactive*. If you do not have a status type with any one of these three processing statuses, you must create a new status type with the processing status that is missing.

Defining Project Status Defaults

For each SetID defined in the system, define the default project status for new projects. If you do not have any status types defined in your system, you may skip this step.

To define project status defaults:

- Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Project Costing, Project Options, Project Status Defaults.

The Project Status Defaults page appears:

Project Status Defaults page

2. For each processing status, select a default project status.

Creating Project Status Based on Project Processing Status

Project status is now required in the Project Costing process. Therefore, you should create project statuses for all existing projects that do not have a project status. Base the project status on the processing status of the project.

To create project statuses based on project processing status:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Project Costing Post-Upgrade.

The Project Costing Post Upgrade page appears:

Project Costing Post Upgrade page

2. Create a new run control.
3. Click Run.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Project Costing	All	All

Task 5-28-3: Setting Unit of Measure for Hours and Days

In this task, you will set the unit of measure for hours and days at the Projects Business Unit level. Several new analytics and reports calculate the number of hours or days within a project. Therefore, you must establish the unit of measure for hours and days. The Hours Unit of Measure for each Projects Business Unit, MHR, is also provided by default during the upgrade process. The Days Unit of Measure, MDY, is also provided by default. If these default settings are correct in your installation, you may skip this step.

If MHR is not the correct unit of measure for hours or MDY is not the correct unit of measure for days, you need to update the Projects Business Unit table using the database query or update tool of your choice. Update the value *xxx* in the UOM_HOURS field and *yyy* in the DAYS_UOM field in the PS_BUS_UNIT_TBL_PC table. *XXX* represents the unit of measure you have defined for hours and *YYY* represents the unit of measure you defined for days.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Project Costing	All	All

Task 5-28-4: Setting Project Calendar

To use the PeopleSoft Program Management scheduling functionality, a Project Calendar must be assigned to all Projects and Project Business Units. The Project Calendar may be any Business Calendar that defines the daily scheduled hours and all holidays. The upgrade process sets the Project Calendar to “01.” If your standard Business Calendar is “01,” then skip this step.

Note. Complete this step only if you license PeopleSoft Projects and PeopleSoft Program Management.

If your standard Business Calendar is not “01,” update the Projects Business Unit Options table and the Projects tables using the database query or update tool of your choice. Use the table information in this table to update your tables and fields:

Table	Field	Value
PS_BUS_UNIT_OPT_PC	HOLIDAY_LIST_ID	‘xxxxxxxxxx’ represents the Business Calendar you have defined for scheduling.
PS_PROJECT	HOLIDAY_LIST_ID	‘xxxxxxxxxx’ represents the Business Calendar you have defined for scheduling.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Project Costing Program Management	All	All

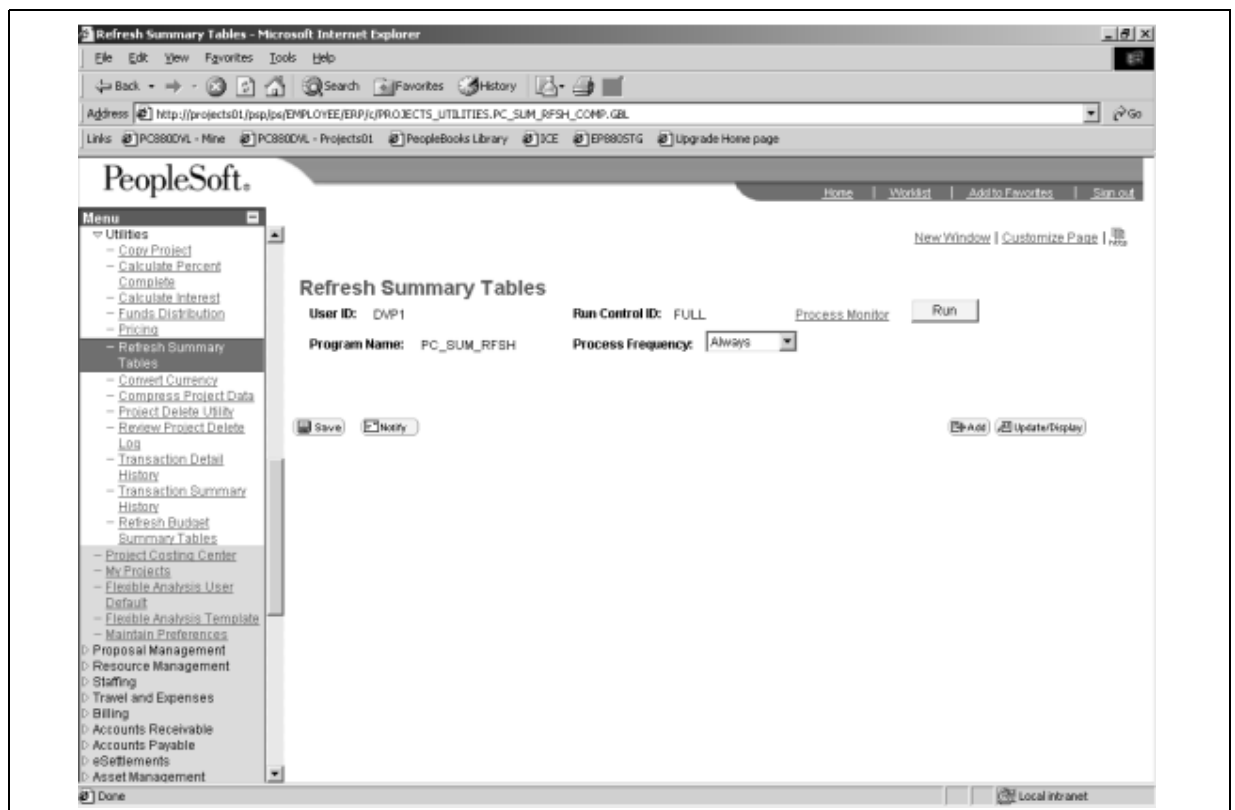
Task 5-28-5: Running Summary Refresh

To clear out any anomalous data that may be present in your system and to make sure the flexible analysis works correctly, you must run a full refresh on the summary tables.

To run summary refresh:

1. Select Project Costing, Utilities, Refresh Summary Tables.
2. Add a new run control ID, or use an existing one.

This example shows the Refresh Summary Tables page:



Refresh Summary Tables page

3. Click Run.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Project Costing	All	All

Task 5-28-6: Calculating Team Member Duration

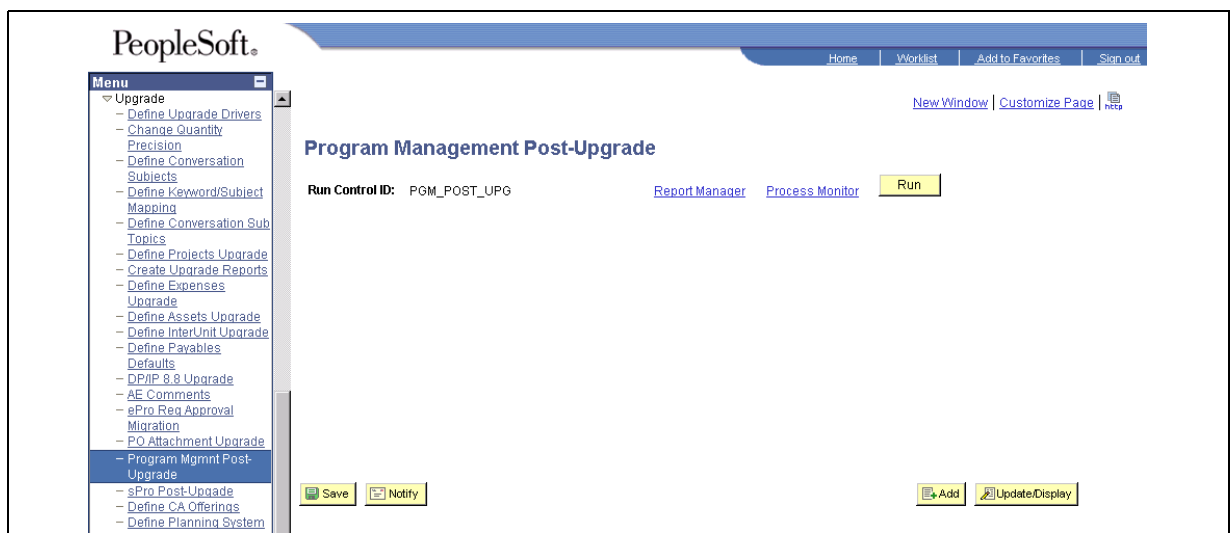
To use the Program Management resource scheduling functionality, the duration of each team member's role on a project must be calculated. This duration is used in the Master Resource Schedule feature. If you are not planning to use resource scheduling, you may skip this step.

Note. Complete this step only if you license PeopleSoft Projects and Program Management.

To calculate team member duration:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Program Mgmt Post-Upgrade.

The Program Management Post-Upgrade page appears:



Program Management Post-Upgrade page

2. Add a new run control ID.
3. Click Run.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Project Costing Program Management	All	All

Task 5-28-7: Setting Default Project Manager Role

In this step, you will set the default project manager role at the Project Business Unit Options level. During the upgrade conversion, all existing project business units were updated with the default project manager role: PROJ MANAGER. If this is the appropriate default role for project managers, you may skip this step.

If your installation uses a different role for project managers, you should update each project business unit option with the appropriate default project manager role.

To update the default project manager role:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, Project Costing, Project Costing Options.
2. Update the Project Manager Role field with the appropriate role for your installation.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Project Costing Program Management	All	All

Task 5-28-8: Reviewing Rate Template Mapping

In the new release, *Rate Templates* are converted to *Rate Sets*. During this conversion the original Rate Template IDs were either renamed to new Rate Set IDs or split into new Rate Sets, which are then contained in a new Rate Plan. The cross-reference between Rate Templates and Rate Sets/Rate Plans is retained in the UPG_PC_RT_TMP table.

To review rate template mapping:

1. Use the query tool of your choice to display all rows in UPG_PC_RT_TMP table.
2. Use the following table to review the mapping:

Field	Definition
BUSINESS_UNIT	Business Unit
PC_TEMPLATE_ID	Original Rate Template ID
TEMPLATE_TYPE	Rate Template Type
TEMPLATE_ID	New Rate Set ID
RATE_PLAN	New Rate Plan ID

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Project Costing	All	All

Task 5-29: Setting Up Expenses

This section discusses:

- Setting Cash Advance Sources
- Updating Country Code

Task 5-29-1: Setting Cash Advance Sources

In the new PeopleSoft release, a check box has been created to identify the default cash advance source for cash advance adjustments and ATM advances. This functionality was combined in previous PeopleSoft releases.

A default for any cash advance sources will not automatically be created for either cash adjustments or ATM advances from a credit card. After the upgrade you will need to manually set a default for both types of transactions.

To set defaults for Cash Advance Sources:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Expenses, Management, Cash Advance Source.
2. If you have already created all of your Cash Advance Sources click Search to display a list of those Cash Advance Sources.
Select the Cash Advance Source you wish to update. See step 4.
3. If you have not created your Cash Advance Sources yet, then select the Add a New Value tab to add your Cash Advance Sources.
4. Once you have accessed the Cash Advance Source page you will see two check boxes representing the available defaults.

The Adjustment Advance Default for a Cash Advance Source that applies to Cash Advances that will be created to recover money from an expense report that resulted in money due.

The Credit Card Default is selected for Cash Advance Source that applies to Cash Advances that will be created to reconcile cash advances on a credit card that have been populated from the credit card vendor.

5. Click Save.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Expenses	All	All

Task 5-29-2: Updating Country Code

In this step you review the default value for Country in the Expense Location Definition.

To review the Country defaults:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Expenses, Location, Expense Location.
2. Enter the setID and Expense Type values from the Expense Location Report, PUEPJ652.SQR, generated earlier in the upgrade.
3. Review each Expense Location and Country value.
4. Modify if needed.
5. Click Save.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Expenses	All	All

Task 5-30: Setting Sync IDs

Sync IDs for PeopleSoft Mobile Time and Expense provide a unique key to a record that can be used by the sync server to identify data rows online and on a mobile device. Before Mobile Time and Expense can be functional, you must run the Sync ID utility to populate all records in the database with the Sync ID field.

Note. To complete this task, you need to use PeopleSoft Internet Architecture. If you do not have your PeopleSoft Internet Architecture environment established for this upgrade pass, the task can be postponed until you have established your PeopleSoft Internet Architecture environment. You will need to complete this task for your functional testing, as well as the Move to Production pass.

To run the Sync ID utility:

1. In the appropriate SQL Tool for your platform, run the following statement:

```
UPDATE PSXLATITEM SET SYNCID = 0
```

This will clear out the duplicate SYNCIDs from this Translate table.

2. Open Application Designer.
3. Select File, Save Project As...
4. Enter *MTE_RELATED_CONTENT*.

5. Click OK.
6. Navigate to the Insert menu.
7. Select Definitions into Project.
8. Select *HTML* in the Definitions Type drop-down list box.
9. Insert the following HTML objects into the project:

```
TE_ADD_NEW_EXPENSE
TE_ALERT_AREA_MSG
TE_EXP_RPT_SIG
TE_GEN_INFO_HTML
TE_GROSS_UP_EST
TE_RS_RETURN
TE_START_EXP
TE_START_RS
TE_TIME_RPT_SIGNATURE
TE_TITLE_BAR
```

10. Select *Style Sheets* in the Definitions Type drop-down list box.
11. Insert the following Style Sheet objects into the project: *PSSTYLEDEF*.
12. Save the project and confirm that all objects listed previously are in the Project MTE_RELATED_CONTENT.
13. Run the Sync ID utility by selecting PeopleTools, Utilities, Administration, Set SyncIDs.
14. Select Set Sync IDs.

This process will take a while to complete.

Note. Once the Sync IDs are set, the application servers must be recycled by a System Administrator. Please have the System Administrator shut down all application servers, delete all cache, and restart all application servers.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Mobile Time and Expense	All	All

Task 5-31: Setting Resource Management

This section discusses:

- Upgrading Appointments
- Updating Data for Resource Creation
- Loading Holidays

Note. If you do not license Resource Management, you can skip this task.

Note. To complete this task, you need to use PeopleSoft Internet Architecture. If you do not have your PeopleSoft Internet Architecture environment established for this upgrade pass, the task can be postponed until you have established your PeopleSoft Internet Architecture environment. You will need to complete this task for your functional testing as well as the Move to Production pass.

Task 5-31-1: Upgrading Appointments

In earlier releases of PeopleSoft Resource Management, appointment objects did not exist. In addition to defining start time and duration, an appointment can also define a recurrence pattern. An appointment represents either an assignment or other scheduled task. It is also used to maintain Exchange/Outlook calendar links.

This step creates appointment objects for existing assignments and other scheduled task entries. Since existing scheduled task entries do not have defined recurrence patterns, the upgrade inserts separate appointments for every non-assignment calendar type.

To run the upgrade appointments process:

1. Launch the browser and sign on to your database using PeopleSoft Internet Architecture.
2. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Resource Management, Calendar, Upgrade Appointments.
3. Add a new Run Control ID.
4. Verify that the Process as an upgrade check box is selected.
5. Click Save.
6. Click the Run button to access the Process Scheduler Request page.
7. Select the appropriate Server Name and click OK to run the process.
8. You can check the Process Monitor to verify that the process ran to completion.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Resource Management	All	All

Task 5-31-2: Updating Data for Resource Creation

The process for creating a Resource was modified in the new release to include additional information about the Resource. In order for the Create Resources process to run correctly, a default currency and bill rate must be included on the Resource Management Installation page.

To update the installation default information:

1. Launch your browser and sign onto your database using PeopleSoft Internet Architecture.
2. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Install, Installation Options.

3. Select the Resource Management link in the Product Options group list box.
4. Scroll down to the Reporting Options/Billing Rates group list box.
5. Add a default Bill Rate in the Billing Rate editing box.
6. Select your desired Currency Code from the Currency Code drop-down list box.
7. Add a default currency conversion Rate Type in the Rate Type edit box.
8. Click Save.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Resource Management	All	All

Task 5-31-3: Loading Holidays

In earlier releases of PeopleSoft Resource Management, when the holidays process ran it created holiday entries in the resource calendar with a `TASK_TYPE` of *HOLIDAY*. In the new release a new `TASK_TYPE` of *SCHEDULED_HOLIDAY* has been introduced. You must run the Load Holidays process at the end of the upgrade to properly assign holidays to the correct task category.

This step deletes all calendar entries where the task type is set to *HOLIDAY* for the future date and creates new entries in the calendar with new task type as *SCHEDULED_HOLIDAY*.

To run the Load Holiday process:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Resource Data, Load Holidays.
2. Add a new Run Control ID.
3. Click Save.
4. Click the Run button to access the Process Scheduler Request page.
5. Select the appropriate Server Name and click OK to run the process.
6. Check the Process Monitor to verify that the process ran to completion.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Resource Management	All	All

Task 5-32: Setting VAT Processing

This section discusses:

- Reviewing New VAT Functionality

- Updating the VAT Entity
- Reviewing VAT Accounting Information
- Updating VAT Defaults
- Updating VAT Entity Report Options

Task 5-32-1: Reviewing New VAT Functionality

Many new VAT-related features have been included in the new PeopleSoft release, including VAT on Services and a new VAT defaulting structure. You should perform all the steps outlined in the appendix “Reviewing New VAT Functionality” prior to completing the remaining steps in the Setting VAT Processing task.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-32-2: Updating the VAT Entity

In the new PeopleSoft release, you are able to specify your VAT accounting scheme on the VAT Entity. This may be used on your VAT return if necessary.

To update the VAT entity:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, VAT and Intrastat, Value Added Tax, VAT Entity.
2. On the Identification page, review the value in the new VAT Accounting Scheme field and correct if necessary.

The data conversion will set this field based on the value you previously had defined for Declaration Point, as seen in the table below:

Previous VAT Entity Declaration Point	New VAT Accounting Scheme Value
Declaration at Invoice or Delivery	Non-cash (Accrual)
Declaration at Payment	Cash Accounting

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-32-3: Reviewing VAT Accounting Information

This section discusses:

- Reviewing VAT Distribution Account Types
- Reviewing VAT Codes and Accounting Information

- Reviewing VAT Report Definitions

Reviewing VAT Distribution Account Types

New VAT Distribution Types used by Payables, Receivables, Billing Asset Management, and Expenses have been added for VAT accounting and reporting. The new types were introduced to allow additional types of VAT accounting entries to be created.

Account Type	Description	PeopleSoft Applications	VAT Reporting	Accounting
VIC	VAT Input Credit: Identifies input VAT credit transaction lines in the VAT transaction table. These lines are flagged as VICR on the source transactions in PeopleSoft Payables.	Payables	Yes	No
VICR	VAT Input Recoverable Credit: Identifies the accounting entry for a credit against recoverable input VAT. When a VAT transaction is loaded in PeopleSoft Payables to the transaction table, it is stored with the VAT distribution account type of VIC.	Payables	No	Yes
VICB	VAT Input Rebate Credit: Identifies accounting entries for credits against input VAT rebate amounts.	Payables	No	Yes
VICN	VAT Input Non-Recoverable Credit: Identifies the accounting entries for a credit against non-recoverable input VAT.	Payables	No	Yes

Account Type	Description	PeopleSoft Applications	VAT Reporting	Accounting
VOCP	VAT Output on Purchase Credit: Identifies the accounting entry for a credit against output VAT when you record both input and output VAT for a purchase. It also identifies those transaction lines in the VAT transaction table.	Payables	Yes	Yes
VOIP	VAT Output Intermediate on Purchase: Identifies the accounting entry for intermediate output VAT when you record both input and output VAT for a purchase. It also identifies those transaction lines in the VAT Transaction table.	Payables	Yes	Yes
VOWP	VAT Output on Purchase Write off: Identifies the accounting entry created for a write-off against output VAT when you record both input and output VAT for a purchase. Also identifies those transaction lines in the VAT transaction table.	Payables	Yes	Yes

You may want to see a complete list of VAT Distribution types and how they are used.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise 9.0 Global Options and Reports PeopleBook*.

Reviewing VAT Codes and Accounting Information

VAT accounting information must be added for the new VAT Distribution Account Types. For some of the new VAT Distribution Account Types, this new accounting information will have been added automatically by the upgrade process based on accounts and ChartFields currently specified for input VAT and output VAT on purchases. Review the accounting information that the system has added to ensure that it is correct. For the rest of the VAT Distribution Account Types, you must enter the appropriate account and ChartField information.

Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, VAT and Intrastat, Value Added Tax, VAT Code. On the Account Information page, review and update the accounting information to be used for these new types of VAT accounting entries.

Reviewing VAT Report Definitions

You need to review your VAT report definitions.

To review VAT report definitions:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, VAT and Intrastat, Value Added Tax, VAT Report Definition.
2. For each VAT report definition you have set up, determine whether you need to add the new VAT Distribution Account Types, and if so, where they should be included.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 5-32-4: Updating VAT Defaults

In the new PeopleSoft release, a new declaration point, Declaration at Accounting Date, has been added. You may specify this new declaration point as the default for both goods and services throughout the VAT defaulting hierarchy. You may also specify that VAT be recorded on advance payments when the declaration point for the advanced payment is accounting date.

To update VAT defaults:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, VAT and Intrastat, Value Added Tax, VAT Defaults.
2. Select the VAT Driver value *VAT Entity Registration*.
3. For each VAT Entity, for each country, complete the following steps:
 - a. Select the *VAT on Adv Pay — Acctg in AP* check box if you want VAT to be recorded on advance payments in Accounts Payable when the declaration point for the advance payments is set to At Accounting Date.
 - b. Clear the *VAT on Adv Pay — Acctg in AP* check box if you do NOT want VAT to be recorded on advance payments in Accounts Payable when the declaration point for the advance payments is set to At Accounting Date.
 - c. Select the *VAT on Adv Pay — Acctg in AR* check box if you want VAT to be recorded on advance payments in Accounts Receivable when the declaration point for the advance payments is set to At Accounting Date.
 - d. Clear the *VAT on Adv Pay — Acctg in AR* check box if you want VAT to be recorded on advance payments in Accounts Receivable when the declaration point for the advance payment is set to At Accounting Date.
4. Return to the search page for VAT defaults.
5. For each of the following VAT drivers, for each country, set the default VAT Declaration Point for Goods to *At Accounting Date* (optional):
 - VAT Entity Registration
 - Order Management Business Unit

- Billing Business Unit
 - Receivables Options
 - Asset Management Business Unit
 - Purchasing Options
 - Payables Options
 - Customer
 - Customer Location
 - Vendor
 - Vendor Location
 - Bill Source
 - Bill Type
 - Voucher Origin
 - Control Group
6. For each of the following VAT drivers, for each country, set the default VAT Declaration Point for Services to *At Accounting Date* (optional):
- VAT Entity Registration
 - Order Management Business Unit
 - Receivables Options
 - Purchasing Options
 - Payables Options
 - Customer
 - Customer Location
 - Vendor
 - Vendor Location
 - Bill Source
 - Bill Type
 - Voucher Origin
 - Control Group

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-32-5: Updating VAT Entity Report Options

In the new PeopleSoft release, a new VAT Transaction report has been added which assists in reconciling and auditing your VAT return. This report is based on the existing VAT report definitions and is run from the existing VAT Return and Report run control component. However, before you can run this report for any given VAT Entity, you must link the report to the VAT Entity.

To link the VAT report to the VAT entity:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, VAT and Intrastat, Value Added Tax, VAT Entity.
2. For each VAT Entity, for each registration country, complete the following:
 - a. Select the VAT Report Details link.
 - b. Within the VAT Reports scroll area, click on the plus button to add a new row.
 - c. For the new row, select *Application Engine* for Process Type.
 - d. Select *LC_RPT_VAT* for the process name.
 - e. Click OK to return to the main VAT Entity page.
3. Click Save.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-33: Performing Payables Setup

This section discusses:

- Setting Up Match Rules and Rule Control
- Setting Up Document Association Rules
- Running the Matching Process
- Identifying Renamed Voucher Build Codes
- Running Document Tolerance Checking
- Setting Up Agency Location Codes
- Configuring New Vendor Fields
- Updating Open Liability
- Updating Manual Drafts
- Setting Up Pay Cycle Bank Replacement Rules
- Specifying Reschedule Payment Data
- Selecting Vendor Set Controls

- Recreating Federal Payment Schedule
- Setting Up Withholding
- Setting Definitions Terms and Templates
- Verifying Procurement Withholding ChartFields
- Configuring OnDemand Processing

Task 5-33-1: Setting Up Match Rules and Rule Control

This section discusses:

- Understanding Setting Up Match Rules and Rule Control
- Adding a New Match Rule Type
- Adding or Updating Match Rules
- Adding or Updating Match Rule Control

Understanding Setting Up Match Rules and Rule Control

If you have added or customized Match Rules, you would have documented your customizations when you executed match rules and transactions.

See “Prepare Your Database,” Executing Match Rules and Transactions.

You must now add your new or customized Match Rules back after data conversion.

In the current release, the rules have to be tied to a rule type. The delivered rule types are DATA ENTRY, MERCH - QTY, MERCH - UNIT, MERCH - AMT, SUMMARY-GLOBAL, and SYSTEM. If, for your customized rule, none of these rule types is applicable, then you can create a new rule type and tie the customized rule to this new rule type.

Adding a New Match Rule Type

To add a new match rule type:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Procurement Options, Vouchers, Match Rule Type.

The Match Rule Type page appears:

Match Rule Type

Match Rule Type: DATAENTRY

***Description:**

☒ **Workflow Flag**

☒ **Send Email Notification** **Notification Reminder Days:**

▼ User List Source

☒ **Role** **Role Name:**

☐ **SQL Definition** **SQL Object Identifier:**

☐ **Query** **Query Name:**

Allowed Match Actions Customize | Find | View All | First 1-2 of 2 Last

Action	Allow on Rule Control	Allow on Workbench		
Exception	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Override	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		

Save
 Return to Search
 Previous in List
 Next in List
 Notify
 Add
 Update/Display

Match Rule Type page

2. Enter a description for the new match rule type.

See PeopleSoft Enterprise Source-To-Settle Common Information 9.0 PeopleBook, “Defining Procurement Options,” Establishing Matching and Document Association Options.

Adding or Updating Match Rules

To add or update match rules:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Procurement Options, Vouchers, Match Rules.
2. To update an existing match rule ID, enter the match rule ID and click Search.
3. To add a new match rule ID, click Add.

This example shows the Rule Definition page:

Rule Definition | Workbench | Workflow

Match Rule ID: 110 **Description:** Unmatched receipt doesn't meet assoc rule

Long Description: Available receipts (not matched, not on hold, and not cancelled) for the purchase order specified on the voucher line, however no document association was made

Rule Properties

Match Rule Type: Data Entry

Match Rule Level: Line Summary **Match Level Data Record:** AP_VCHR_LN_SUM

Match Rule SQL Object: AP_MTCH_110 [Edit SQL](#)

☐ Use Tolerance at Rule Control

Message

Message Set Number: 7500 **Message Number:** 216 [View Message](#)

Rule Applies To

Association Name	Description		
VPR	VOUCHER-PO-RECEIVER	+	-

Rule Definition page

See PeopleSoft Enterprise Source-To-Settle Common Information 9.0 PeopleBook, “Defining Procurement Options,” Establishing Matching and Document Association Options.

Adding or Updating Match Rule Control

To add or update Match Rule Control:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Procurement Options, Vouchers, Match Rule Control.

The Match Rule Control page appears:

Match Rule Control

SetID: SHARE Match Rule: STANDARD

*Description: Standard match rules *Currency Code: USD

Long Description: Match rules for Amount Only orders, two way, three way, ERS three-way, four way, receipt only and ERS receipt only matching.

Match Rule Configuration Find First 1 of 1 Last

Effective Date: 01/01/1900 Delete Rules Clear Rules Populate Rules +

Match Rules Customize Find View All First 1-10 of 38 Last

	Delete	Match Rule ID	Description	If Rule is True Take Action	*Continue to Next Rule	
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	RULE_S100	Invalid Match Control ID	Exception	Continue If False	+ -
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	RULE_S110	Credit Adjustment Quantity > PO Matched Quantity	Exception	Continue If False	+ -
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	RULE_S111	Credit Adjustment Amount > PO Matched Amount	Exception	Continue If False	+ -
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	RULE_S120	Credit Adjustment Quantity > Receiver Match Qty	Exception	Continue If False	+ -
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	RULE_S121	Credit Adjustment Amount > Receiver Match Amount	Exception	Continue If False	+ -

Match Rule Control page

- Add or update any customizations that you made to the Match Rule Control.

See PeopleSoft Enterprise Source-To-Settle Common Information 9.0 PeopleBook, “Defining Procurement Options,” Establishing Matching and Document Association Options.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 5-33-2: Setting Up Document Association Rules

This section discusses:

- Adding and Updating Document Association Rules
- Associating a Document Association With a Business Unit
- Configuring Payables Installation Options

Note. Receipt Aware Criteria is renamed in this release to Document Association Rules.

Adding and Updating Document Association Rules

If you have added or customized Receipt Aware Criteria, you would have documented your customizations when you executed match rules and transactions.

See “Prepare Your Database,” Executing Match Rules and Transactions.

You must now add your new or customized Receipt Aware Criteria back after data conversion.

To add or update Document Association rules:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Procurement Options, Vouchers, Document Association Rules.
2. Enter the SetID and Document Association of the rule you want to update and click Search.
3. Click Add to add a new Document Association Rule.

The Document Association Rules page appears:

Document Association Rules

SetID: SHARE

Document Association: STANDARD

Description: Standard Association Rules

Document Association		Rule	Voucher	Receiver	Amount Only	User Criteria
1		Equal	Quantity	Qty Accept	<input type="checkbox"/>	User Criteria
2		Equal Sum	Quantity	Qty Accept	<input type="checkbox"/>	User Criteria
3		Equal	Quantity	Qty Accept	<input type="checkbox"/>	User Criteria
4		Equal Sum	Quantity	Qty Accept	<input type="checkbox"/>	User Criteria
5		User Criteria	Quantity	Qty Accept	<input type="checkbox"/>	User Criteria

Buttons: Save, Return to Search, Previous in List, Next in List, Notify, Add, Update/Display

Document Association Rules page

Associating a Document Association With a Business Unit

Once Document Association rules are established, they have to be tied to the Payables business unit. This association is critical because if not configured correctly, Document Association (Receipt Association) will not work during matching.

To associate a Document Association with a business unit:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, Payables, Payables Definition.
2. Select the business unit that needs to have a Document Association and click Search.

The Matching page appears:

Definition Tax Options Voucher Build **Matching** Payments Numbering Summary Invoice

Business Unit: US001 US001 NEW YORK OPERATIONS

Matching Criteria

Document Association: STANDARD Standard Association Rules

Match Delay Days: 0

☒ Matching for Voucher Approval

☒ Copy Gross Amount to Voucher

Matching page

3. Select the Document Association that you want to associate to this business unit.

4. Save the page.

Configuring Payables Installation Options

In this release, the system is delivered with three Association definitions:

- VPR
- VP
- VR

The name of this delivered group is DEFAULT. You need to attach the *DEFAULT* group to the PeopleSoft Payables installation options. This is important because if not configured at the installation level, matching will occur without applying any rules.

To attach the DEFAULT group to the Payables installation options:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Install, Installation Options.
2. Click the Payables link.
3. Select the Document Association Group DEFAULT.

The Payables page appears:

The screenshot shows the 'Payables' tab selected. The 'Posting Method' is set to 'Summary Control'. Under 'Federal Government Options', 'Enable Federal Payment' is unchecked. There are input fields for 'Transportation Start Number', 'Other Start Number', 'Manual Start Number', 'End Number', and 'Last ID Number'. 'Enable Date Calc Basis' is unchecked. 'Enable CCR' is unchecked. 'Use SIC Code Functionality' and 'Use NAICS Code Functionality' are unchecked. Under 'Payment Options', 'Enable Late Charge' and 'Evaluate Discount Rate' are checked. Under 'Document Association Group', the 'Document Association Group' is set to 'DEFAULT'.

Payables page

4. Click Save.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 5-33-3: Running the Matching Process

To view the existing vouchers that are currently in *Exception* or *Overridden* status on the Matching Workbench, you need to run the matching process against those vouchers. After you set up the match rules and document association rules, you should run the matching process to pick up all the vouchers that are currently in *Ready*, *Exception*, or *Overridden* status. After the matching process runs successfully, you can view vouchers on the Matching Workbench component. You must run the matching process for all the business units.

To run the matching process:

1. Select Accounts Payable, Batch Processes, Vouchers, Matching.
2. Add a new run control.
3. Enter a description.
4. Set the Match action to *Matching*.
5. From the Options drop-down list box, select *All Business Units*.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 5-33-4: Identifying Renamed Voucher Build Codes

This section discusses:

- Understanding Renamed Voucher Build Codes
- Identifying Voucher Build Codes
- Deleting Old Voucher Build Codes

Understanding Renamed Voucher Build Codes

Due to the elimination of the key field VCHR_BLD_DEFN, there is a chance that the same Voucher Build Code is used more than once within the same setID. Voucher Build Codes with these criteria need to be renamed during the Upgrade Data Conversion process. The upgrade data conversion process renames the Voucher Build Codes that creates this duplicate scenario, beginning with UP8800 up to UP8899.

SetID Before Conversion	Voucher Build Definition Before Conversion	Voucher Build Code Before Conversion	SetID After Conversion	Voucher Build Code After Conversion
ALLBU	PO	STANDARD	ALLBU	UP8800
ALLBU	RECV	STANDARD	ALLBU	UP8801
ALLBU	PO	ITEM	ALLBU	UP8802
ALLBU	RECV	ITEM	ALLBU	UP8803

Identifying Voucher Build Codes

In order to identify which Voucher Build Codes are now duplicated and renamed, run the following queries to use when reapplying your Voucher Build Criteria with the new Voucher Build Codes. The renamed Voucher Build Codes should be added back into the system with the new Voucher Build Codes using the output of these queries to establish your parameters as they were before the upgrade process.

To reapply Voucher Build Codes:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager.
2. Run the following queries:


```
UPG_APK01
UPG_APK02
```
3. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Procurement Options, Vouchers, Voucher Build Criteria.
4. Use the output from UPG_APK01 to populate the Purchase Order Criteria Grid.
5. Use the output from UPG_APK02 to populate the Receiver Criteria Grid.

The example below shows the Voucher Build Code Definition page.

Voucher Build Code Definition page

Deleting Old Voucher Build Codes

After entering the new Voucher Build Codes according to the related queries, the old renamed Voucher Build codes may be deleted from the system.

Note. This step is optional. The system will not be affected if you leave the renamed Voucher Build Codes in the system.

Run the following SQL to delete the Renamed Codes from the system:

```
DELETE FROM PS_VCHR_BLD_CODE WHERE VCHR_BLD_CODE LIKE 'UP88%';
DELETE FROM PS_VCHR_BLD_PO WHERE VCHR_BLD_CODE LIKE 'UP88%';
DELETE FROM PS_VCHR_BLD_RECV WHERE VCHR_BLD_CODE LIKE 'UP88%';
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 5-33-5: Running Document Tolerance Checking

Review the Document Tolerance definition set on Define Doc Tolerance by selecting Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Procurement Options.

To identify exception vouchers to be processed, select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager and run the following query against your database:

UPG_APY02

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 5-33-6: Setting Up Agency Location Codes

In this release, a new Non-Treasury Disbursed agency edit is included per JFMIP requirements. If your Agency Location Codes are not eight digits in length and are not all numeric, then the new Non-Treasury Disbursed flag will be set to *Y* during the upgrade process.

To set up Agency Location Codes:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Agency Location Codes, Agency Location.
2. Verify that the Non-Treasury check box is properly set as shown below.

If the ALC codes are all numeric and eight digits in length, then the Non-Treasury flag will be set to *N*. Otherwise it will be set to *Y*.

The example below shows the Agency Location page:

Agency Location

Enter any information you have and click Search. Leave fields blank for a list of all values.

Find an Existing Value
Add a New Value

SetID: = SHARE Q
Agency Location Code: begins with
Non-Treasury Disbursed ALC ☐

Search Clear Basic Search Save Search Criteria

Search Results

View All First 1-7 of 7 Last

SetID	Agency Location Code	Non-Treasury Disbursed ALC
SHARE	11000002	N
SHARE	12345	Y
SHARE	19000001	N
SHARE	NONDRSB	Y

Agency Location page: Find an Existing Value tab

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 5-33-7: Configuring New Vendor Fields

In the new release, there are three new fields and a new Federal page within Vendor Setup and Maintenance. These fields are not upgraded since there is no existing data to bring forward into them. If you have applicable values for these three new fields then you have to either manually enter the values here or include them in a vendor customized upgrade process you may use for vendor clean up and upgrade processing.

To configure new Vendor fields:

1. Select Vendors, Vendor Information, Add/Update, Vendor.
2. Select the Federal tab.
3. If you have applicable values, manually enter the values here or include them in a vendor customized upgrade process that you may decide to use for vendor clean up and upgrade processing.

The three new fields, Federal Vendor, Trading Partner, and Agency Location Code are seen in the example below. The Federal Vendor and Trading Partner fields are informational only. The Agency Location Code field is used in conjunction with IPAC payment processing.

Note. The new Federal Vendor page is only visible if Enable Federal Payments has been selected on the Installation Payables page.

The example below shows the Federal Vendor Page:

The screenshot displays the 'Federal' tab of the Vendor Information page. At the top, there are tabs for Summary, Identifying Information, Address, Contacts, Location, and Federal. Below the tabs, the vendor details are shown: SetID: SHARE, Vendor: SCM0000004, and ERNIE'S BIKE SHOP. The 'Location' section shows 'Location: MAIN' and 'Description: MAIN'. The 'Federal Specific Vendor Detail' section includes 'Effective Date: 01/01/2000' and 'Active'. The 'Pay Schedule Type' section has a 'Default' dropdown and a 'Pay Schedule Type' dropdown. The 'Date Calculation Basis' section has a 'Default' dropdown and a 'Date Calculation Basis' dropdown. The 'Federal Vendor Information' section includes a 'Federal Vendor' checkbox, a 'Trading Partner' field, and an 'Agency Location Code' field with the value '11000002' and a search icon.

Federal Vendor page: Federal tab

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 5-33-8: Updating Open Liability

Numerous changes were made to the Open Liability, Vendor Aging, and AP/GL Reconciliation reporting process in the new release. You need to re-create any run controls you have previously set up for these sets of reports, as they have not been upgraded. Select Accounts Payable, Reports, Voucher Reconciliation.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 5-33-9: Updating Manual Drafts

If you use manual drafts, the upgrade will create Payment Advice rows for all manual drafts that are created. In this release, whenever a manual draft is created, a Payment Advice row will be created for the purpose of Payment inquiry.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 5-33-10: Setting Up Pay Cycle Bank Replacement Rules

In this release, the bank replacement rules have changed. Earlier in the upgrade, you prepared a list of the existing rules. These rules did not get upgraded and need to be set up again and attached to the Pay Cycle Definition to be activated. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Procurement Options, Payments, Define Bank Replacement Rules to see how the rules are now defined:

This example shows the Bank Replacement Rule page:

Bank Replacement Rule

SetID: SHARE

Rule ID: NEW_RULE

Description: Demo New Bnk Rules

Bank Replacement Rules Find | View All First 1 of 1 Last

*Effective Date: 01/30/2003 Status: Active

Replace All Payments

Select	Bank SetID	Bank Code	Bank Account	Pay Method	Currency
<input type="checkbox"/>	share	trbnk	chck	chk	usd

Replace Bank with another Bank Find | View All First 1 of 1 Last

Select	Bank SetID	Bank Code	Bank Account	Pay Method
<input type="checkbox"/> Replace				
With				

Replace by Currency Find | View All First 1 of 1 Last

Select	Currency	Bank SetID	Bank Code	Bank Account	Pay Method
<input type="checkbox"/> Replace					

Replace by Individual Payment Limit Find | View All First 1 of 1 Last

Select	Bank SetID	Bank Code	Bank Account
<input type="checkbox"/> Replace			
With			

Replace by Bank Maximum Limit Find | View All First 1 of 1 Last

Select	Bank SetID	Bank Code	Bank Account
<input type="checkbox"/> Replace			
With			

Customize | Find | View All | First 1 of 1 Last

Bank SetID	Bank Code	Bank Account	Priority

Save Notify Add Update/Display Include History Correct History

Bank Replacement Rule page

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 5-33-11: Specifying Reschedule Payment Data

In the new release, Reschedule Payment (formerly Split Payment Terms) is enhanced to allow bank Code and Bank Account to be specified in the Reschedule Payment Conditions page.

To specify bank account data for Reschedule Payment data:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Procurement Options, Payments, Reschedule Payment Conditions.
2. For each reschedule ID, specify the bank account data.

This example shows the Reschedule Payments page:

Reschedule Payments

Maintain Reschedule ID Find | View All First 1 of 1 Last

SetID: SHARE Reschedule ID: SMT01 Currency: JPY

Effective Date: 01/01/1900 Status: Active

Reschedule ID Header

Description: Make all Payments in BOO. Short Description: BOO

Amount: 0

Terms SetID: SHARE Terms:

Sight SetID: SHARE Draft Sight:

Bank SetID: SHARE Bank Code: Bank Account: Payment Method:

Reschedule ID Control Find | View All First 1 of 1 Last

Basis From Day: 1 Basis To Day: 31

Reschedule ID Detail Customize | Find | View All First 1 of 1 Last

Bank SetID	Bank Code	Bank Account	Payment Method
SHARE			BOO

Reschedule Payments page

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 5-33-12: Selecting Vendor Set Controls

In the new release, a new Vendor Set Control was introduced to differentiate between 1099 and global withholding labels that appear on the vendor pages. There are now three options to allow you to select the label that matches your business requirements. Select the option that most closely represents the way you handle withholding. Select 1099 if you only produce 1099s and select Global if you do not use 1099s. If you produce both global and 1099 tax documents, select Global and 1099.

Duplicate Vendor Checking has been added in this release. To enable this functionality, a series of options have been added to the Vendor Set Control page. Each Field Option has three possible selections: *Do Not Check*, *Reject*, and *Warning*. In order for the duplicate vendor checking to be active at least one of these options must be set to *Reject* or *Warning*. *Reject* will not allow the vendor to be saved, while *Warning* will issue a message about the duplicate. To access the Vendor Set Control page, select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Procurement Options, Vendors, Set Control – Vendor.

The Vendor Set Control page appears:

Vendor Set Control

SetID: SHARE CORPORATE SETID

Autonumbering

☒ Use Autonumbering

Last Vendor ID Assigned: 0000000049

Vendor Information Control

*Display Withholding Option: Global and 1099
1099
Global
Global and 1099

*Display VAT Flag:

Country:

EFT Prenote Auto Confirmation

Wait Days: 10

Duplicate Vendor Checking

Field Options

*ID Type: Do Not Check

*VAT Registration: Do Not Check

*Vendor Name: Do Not Check

*Vendor Short Name: Do Not Check

*Vendor Withholding TIN: Do Not Check

*Withholding Name: Do Not Check

Processing Options

*Inactive Vendors: Do Not Include

*Vendor CI Load: Do Not Check

☐ Check for duplicates at save

Save Return to Search Notify

Add Update/Display

Vendor Set Control page

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise 9.0 Source-to-Settle Common Information PeopleBook* “Defining Procurement Options, Defining Vendor Control Parameters.”

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 5-33-13: Recreating Federal Payment Schedule

In this release, EFT Layout code has been added as a key field in the Federal Payment Schedule table. Therefore, you need to redefine this setup table again.

Before conversion, you were asked to run query UPG_GFAPM01 and print out the information. Use that information to reenter the setup data.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 5-33-14: Setting Up Withholding

In the new release, several new fields have been added to various withholding setup pages and there are two new withhold types, 1099-INT and 1099-G.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise Payables 9.0 PeopleBook* “Processing Withholding in PeopleSoft Payables”

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise Source-to-Settle Common Information 9.0 PeopleBook* “Maintaining Vendor Information.”

Review the following withholding setup options:

- Withhold Rule.
- Withhold Type (review Contract Reference field): In the new PeopleSoft release, two additional 1099 forms are supported (1099-INT and 1099-G). Make sure these types are defined with the proper classes or Amount Code according to the latest IRS Publication 1220.
- Vendor Category: In the new release, two additional 1099 forms are supported (1099-INT and 1099-G). Define the proper vendor category for each withhold type.
- Withhold Control: Enter Contact Email Address and Media Number as required. If you are using PeopleSoft 1099 Withholding features, you will need to review all states that participate in the combined federal/state filing program and make sure they are all defined as Piggyback States based on the latest IRS Publication 1220.
- Withhold Report Definition: If you are using PeopleSoft 1099 withholding features, you will need to review two new report definitions (for example US_REPORTI for 1099-INT reporting and US_REPORTG for 1099-G reporting) and review the report definition for the US_REPORT. The report

line information should be defined according to the latest IRS Publication 1220. If US_REPORTI and US_REPORTG do not exist after the upgrade, you will need to define them if you are planning to use PeopleSoft 1099-INT and 1099-G.

Note. If you are using the PeopleSoft UK Withholding features, be aware that the SQR used to extract the UK withholding information has changed from APY8060.SQR to APY8032.SQR. This should be reflected in the Withholding Report Definition for the UK.

- **Withholding Setup:** If you plan to use the newly delivered withholding types, you need to set them up at the General Ledger Business Unit level.

To set up Payables withholding:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, Procurement, Procurement Control.
2. Enter a Business Unit ID and click Search.
3. Select the Withholding tab.
4. Enter each Withholding Entity for which your GL Business Unit collects or reports withholding.

The following example shows how you will set up your GL Business Unit for 1099 Withholding:

Business Unit Interface

Unit: US001 US001 NEW YORK OPERATIONS

Withholding Entity

*Effective Date: 01/01/1900 *Status: Active

*Entity	*Type	*Jurisdiction	Tax Identification Type	Tax Identification Number	*Category	Collection Agent Flag	Last Certificate Number	Codigos DGR	Chartfields
ATO	PPS	AUSTR			NONE	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>			Chartfields
IRS	1099	FED			NONE	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>			Chartfields
IRS	1099G	FED			NONE	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>			Chartfields
IRS	1099I	FED			NONE	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>			Chartfields

Business Unit Interface page, Withholding tab

- **Vendor Withhold Information:** Update the setup accordingly if you wish to use 1099-INT and 1099-G, which are new for this PeopleSoft release.
- **Withholding Entity:** If you are a US customer and plan to use 1099-INT and 1099-G, you must define all withholding classes/categories information, and accounting ChartField parameters associated with 1099-INT and 1099-G for the US withholding entity (such as the IRS).

In the Withholding Entity page below, review the Apply Withholding option in the Withholding Entity Group. Also review the Cumulative check box in the Withholding Categories group.

Withholding Entity | Entity Fields - Vendor | Entity Fields - Business Unit

Entity: IRS
Description: Internal Revenue Service
Last Report Date: 10/31/2003

Withholding Entity Find | View All First 1 of 1 Last

*Effective Date: 01/01/1900 *Apply Withholding: Payment File Layout: US 1099 Misc
 Status: Active *Round Option: Natural
 *Currency Code: USD Dollar *Rate Type: CRRNT Current

Withholding Vendor Customize | Find | View All First 1 of 1 Last

*SetID	*Vendor	*Location	*Address
1 SHARE CORPORATE SETID	IRS Internal Revenue Service	MAIN Main Location	1

Withholding Class Find | View All First 1 of 24 Last

*Type: 1099 *Jurisdiction: FED *Class: 01 Min Amt to Rpt: 600.00
[Misc. Setup](#)

Withholding Categories Customize | Find | View All First 1-2 of 3 Last

Main Information | Additional Info | [FEE](#)

*Business Unit Category	*Vendor Category	Create Withholding Payment	*Withholding Rule	Description	*Hold Payment
NONE	HOLD	<input type="checkbox"/>	RULE0	Zero Percent Withholding rule	Hold All
NONE	RPT	<input type="checkbox"/>	RULE0	Zero Percent Withholding rule	No Hold

Withholding Entity page

In the Entity Fields –Vendor page below, review the options specified for Country Paid, Foreign Tax Paid and Trade or Business Income Ind, PAN No and PAN Ward vendor fields.

[Withholding Entity](#)
[Entity Fields - Vendor](#)
[Entity Fields - Business Unit](#)
[Chartfields](#)

Entity: IRS Internal Revenue Service

Vendor Fields Find | View All First ◀ 10-18 of 21 ▶ Last

	Required	Optional	Withhold
_ IRS Notified Twice of Invalid	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
_ Gender	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
_ State Income Tax Withheld	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
_ Tax District Reference	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
_ Taxpayer Identification Number	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
_ TIN Type	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
_ Withholding Control Name	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
_ Country Paid	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Foreign Tax Paid	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

[Save](#)
[Return to Search](#)
[Notify](#)
[Refresh](#)
[Add](#)
[Update/Display](#)
[Include History](#)
[Correct History](#)

[Withholding Entity](#) |
 [Entity Fields - Vendor](#) |
 [Entity Fields - Business Unit](#) |
 [Chartfields](#)

Entity Fields - Vendor page

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 5-33-15: Setting Definitions Terms and Templates

This section discusses:

- Understanding Definitions, Terms, and Templates
- Setting Up Accounting Entry Templates

Understanding Definitions, Terms, and Templates

In this step you will set up accounting entry templates, assigning account numbers to all templates.

Setting Up Accounting Entry Templates

The following new account types have been loaded in as part of the Upgrade Project:

- AR Rebate Control
- Reconciled Cash Advance
- Tolerance Miscellaneous Charge
- Rebate Agreement

You must assign an account number for each type for *all* of your Accounting Entry Templates.

To set up accounting entry templates:

1. If you need to define new Accounts, select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Design ChartFields, Define Values, ChartField Values, Account.
Add your new accounts for each new accounting type: AR Rebate Control, Reconciled Cash Advance, Tolerance Miscellaneous Charge, and Rebate Agreement.
2. To add the accounts to the templates, select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Accounting Entry Template, Templates.
 - a. Enter a setID and click Search.
 - b. Select an Accounting template.
The Accounting Entry Template page appears.
 - c. Add an account and other ChartField values, if needed, to the new accounting types.

Note. You must make your changes in CORRECT HISTORY mode in order for the new account types to appear in the page.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 5-33-16: Verifying Procurement Withholding ChartFields

During the upgrade new setup tables were populated as a result of enhancements to Withholding/1099. The data that was populated came from the Withhold Entity page. You must check the Withholding ChartFields defined under Procurement Control to ensure that the tableset sharing is the same. If it is not, then you must return to Procurement Control and change the ChartField.

To verify the Withholding ChartFields for a business unit:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, Procurement, Procurement Control.
2. Select the business unit.
3. Click Search or Enter.
This brings you to the General Controls tabbed page.
4. Select the Withholding tab.
5. Click the Chartfields link for each entity.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables eSettlements	All	All

Task 5-33-17: Configuring OnDemand Processing

This task applies only if you are planning on implementing On-Demand Processing. You must set up process group user preferences to enable On-Demand Processing.

For information on how to set up and use process groups, see *PeopleSoft Enterprise Application Fundamentals 9.0 PeopleBook*, “Setting Up On-Demand Processing,” Defining Process Group User Preferences.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Payables Receivables	All	All

Task 5-34: Completing Receivables Changes

This section discusses:

- Adding a Currency Code
- Setting Up OnDemand Processing
- Analyzing VAT Considerations
- Updating AutoNumbering
- Running Customer Follow Up Query
- Adding a Cash Control Journal Generator Template
- Updating Existing Conversations

Note. If you do not have PeopleSoft Receivables, you can skip this task.

Task 5-34-1: Adding a Currency Code

Add a currency code to the Discount Terms if there is currently a value for the discount amount for any of the payment terms.

To add a currency code:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Receivables, Payments, Payment Terms.

The Payment Terms page appears:

Payment Terms

SetID: SHARE Payment Terms ID: NET30

Payment Terms

Find | View All First 1 of 1 Last

*Effective Date: 01/01/1900 *Status: Active

Description: Due in 30 Days

Short Description: Net 30

Basis Amt

☒ Item Amount ☐ VAT Discountable Amount
☐ User Amount 1 ☐ User Amount 2

Basis Date

☒ Accounting Date ☐ User Date 1
☐ As of Date ☐ User Date 2

Net Terms

Find | View All First 1 of 1 Last

*Basis From Day 1 *Basis To Day 31 *Timing ID 030 Description 30 Days

Discount Terms

Find | View All First 1 of 1 Last

Percent Amount Currency *Timing Description:

Payment Terms page

- 2. In the Discount Terms box, enter a default currency code if an amount exists.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Receivables	All	All

Task 5-34-2: Setting Up OnDemand Processing

As part of the On-Demand Processing setup, you need to set up Posting Actions for each user.

To set up On-Demand Processing:

- 1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, User Preferences, Define User Preferences, Process Group.
- 2. Set up a user as a template.
- 3. Copy that setup to all users you wish to have the same setup.
- 4. Use VP1 from the sample database as an example.

The example below shows the Process Group page:

352

Copyright © 2008, Oracle. All rights reserved.

The screenshot displays the 'User Preferences' page with the 'Process Group' tab selected. The 'User ID' is set to 'ANNE' and labeled as the 'Default Operator'. The 'Copy From User ID' is 'VP1'. Both 'Allow Processing' and 'Use Event Notification' are checked. A 'Source Transaction' search bar is present, along with a 'Process Group' table. The table has two columns: 'Process Group' and 'Description'. At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Save', 'Return to Search', 'Notify', and 'Refresh', and a breadcrumb trail 'User Preferences | Process Group'.

User Preferences page

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise Receivables 9.0 PeopleBook

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Receivables	All	All

Task 5-34-3: Analyzing VAT Considerations

This section discusses:

- Understanding VAT Considerations Analysis
- Analyzing Ship From and Ship To State (STATE_SHIP_FROM, SHIP_STATE_TO)
- Analyzing VAT Defaulting State (STATE_VAT_DEFAULT)
- Analyzing Physical Nature (PHYSICAL_NATURE)

Note. Complete this step if you are using Value Added Tax (VAT).

Understanding VAT Considerations Analysis

Do not update existing transactions containing VAT after the data conversion utility has been run. If you must update existing transactions containing VAT after the data conversion utility has run, be aware of how the data conversion utility has set the fields discussed in the following sections on `PENDING_ITEM`, `PENDING_VAT`, `ITEM`, and `ITEM_ACT_VAT`. Follow any necessary instructions on further updates to these fields as well.

Analyzing Ship From and Ship To State (`STATE_SHIP_FROM`, `SHIP_STATE_TO`)

If the Ship From and/or Ship To countries require that the state or province track VAT, these fields will be updated by the data conversion utility.

Analyzing VAT Defaulting State (`STATE_VAT_DEFAULT`)

This field represents the state within the VAT Reporting Country (Seller's VAT Registration Country) for which the defaults will be retrieved.

When updating the VAT defaults, if the user has specified that the VAT Reporting Country should not be updated and it requires that VAT be tracked by state or province, manually populate the VAT Defaulting State field.

Analyzing Physical Nature (`PHYSICAL_NATURE`)

Physical Nature will be set to *G* (Goods) during data conversion. If you change the physical nature from *G* to *S* (Services) then you must complete the following:

- Manually populate the following fields before updating the VAT defaults:
 - Customer Location Country and State (`COUNTRY_LOC_BUYER`, `STATE_LOC_BUYER`): The value in these two fields reflects the country and state in which the customer has established business. During data conversion, the Customer Location Country is set to the Bill To Customer's Location Country. If the Location Country is a defined VAT country and if that country requires that VAT be tracked by state or province, then the Location State is set to the Bill To Customer's Location State.
 - Location Country and State (`COUNTRY_LOC_SELLER`, `STATE_LOC_SELLER`): The value in these two fields should reflect the country and state where you have established business. During data conversion, the Location Country is set to the Receivables Business Unit Location Country. If the Location Country has been defined as a VAT country, and if that country requires VAT to be tracked by state or province, then the Location State is set the Receivables Unit Location State.
 - Performed Country and State (`COUNTRY_VAT_PERFORM`, `STATE_VAT_PERFORM`): The value in these two fields should reflect the country and state in which the service was actually, physically performed. During data conversion, the Performed Country is set to the Ship To Country. If the Ship To Country is defined as a VAT country, and if that country requires VAT to be tracked by state or province, then the Performed State must be set to the Ship To State.
- Update the VAT defaults for any transaction line for which the physical nature is changed.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Receivables	All	All

Task 5-34-4: Updating AutoNumbering

Since the table ENTRY_USE_TBL is considered as system data, it was repopulated with new data, using the output of query report UPG_ARY01. (This query was run in the Prepare your Database chapter, Posting Receivables Transactions task, Reviewing ENTRY_USE_TBL data step.)

To update automatic numbering, for all the ENTRY_USE_IDs shown in UPG_ARY01 query report, update the ENTRY_USE_TBL.NEXT_AUTO_NUMBER field with the values shown in the report using your database query tool.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Receivables	All	All

Task 5-34-5: Running Customer Follow Up Query

The new customer conversation functionality requires you to provide a business unit when creating follow up letters. In this step you will run a query to determine which operators need to update their existing run controls for conversation follow-up letters. The query should be used to notify users that they should update the run control with the business units they need to process when creating follow-up letters. As the clean-up effort continues, the query can be run as needed to identify which operators and run controls have not been updated.

To run the UPG_ARU10 query:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Viewer.
2. Run the following query:

```
UPG_ARU10
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	MTP	Receivables	All	All

Task 5-34-6: Adding a Cash Control Journal Generator Template

If you are a PeopleSoft Receivables customer running Cash Clearing, a new journal generator template must be created in order to journalize cash clearing entries. For information on how to set up a journal generator template, see the reference below. A cash clearing template for PeopleSoft Receivables is delivered in demo data and can be referred to when setting up the new journal generator template.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise Receivables 9.0 PeopleBook*.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	MTP	Receivables	All	All

Task 5-34-7: Updating Existing Conversations

In the new release, customer conversations have been enhanced to group conversations by business unit. This allows AR Receivable specialists to create follow-up letters by business unit. Earlier in the upgrade, all existing conversations with follow-up letters were created. If there is a need to create a follow-up letter from an existing conversation, a business unit value *must* be populated on the conversation before creating the letter. Online functionality populates the business unit field when it's saved based on the user's default business unit on the User Preferences page. If the user's default business unit is different than the business unit of the customer conversation, you can update the user preferences page with the correct business unit.

To update the default business unit for an operator:

1. Select Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, User, Preferences, Define User Preferences.
2. Select the user that will access the conversation.
3. Select the Overall Preferences link.
4. Select the business unit to be populated on the conversation.
5. Save the page.

To update an existing conversation:

1. Select Customers, Conversations, Update Conversations.
2. Select a customer conversation.
3. Change the status to Open.
4. Save the page.

Note. In the new PeopleSoft release, all conversations require a contact ID. Conversations that are updated will require you to select a contact ID for the conversation. Click the Edit Entry button on the Conversation Entries scroll to select a valid contact ID.

5. After the conversation has been updated with the correct business unit, the default business unit on the User Preferences page can be changed back to its original value.
6. If this procedure cannot be implemented, you can update the conversation records with a SQL script.

For a reference the following records should be updated with the desired business unit value:

```
CUST_CONVER.BUSINESS_UNIT
CUST_CONVER_LNG.BUSINESS_UNIT
CUST_CONVER_ATT.BUSINESS_UNIT
CUST_CONVER_DTL.BUSINESS_UNIT
CUST_CONVER_HDR.BUSINESS_UNIT
CUS_CNV_HDR_LNG.BUSINESS_UNIT
```

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	MTP	Receivables	All	All

Task 5-35: Completing Deduction Management Setup

This section discusses:

- Running AR Update Process
- Setting Up Algorithms
- Setting Up Methods
- Setting Up Default Options
- Setting Up Default Specialists
- Setting Up Reason WriteOff Tolerances
- Setting Up User WriteOff Tolerances
- Setting Up Audit Control
- Reviewing Deduction Reasons

Note. If you do not license Deduction Management, only perform the step “Review Deduction Reasons.”

Task 5-35-1: Running AR Update Process

This section discusses:

- Understanding AR Update Process
- Setting Up Open Periods in AR
- Setting Up the Origin Effective Date
- Running the AR Update
- Resetting the Open Periods in AR

Understanding AR Update Process

At this point in the upgrade, the upgrade conversion process has read all deduction items, activities, and distributions. The process has inserted these into pending item groups by Customer ID. To complete the migration to Accounts Receivable (AR) you must run the AR Update Process to post the transactions to the permanent transaction tables in AR. The following steps will guide you through the entire AR update process.

Setting Up Open Periods in AR

To set up open periods in AR:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, General Ledger, Open Periods, Open Period Update.
2. Update the open periods for the AR product so that the accounting dates on all deduction activities fall within an open period.
3. Update the periods for all business units and transaction types that might occur in the Deduction tables.
This step ensures that AR Update will be able to post all deduction transactions.

Setting Up the Origin Effective Date

To set up the Origin effective date:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Receivables, Options, Origin.
2. Look up the origin ID for Deduction Management and make sure the effective date is earlier than the earliest accounting date in your deduction transactions.
3. Change the effective date if necessary.

Running the AR Update

To run the AR update:

1. Select Accounts Receivable, Receivables Update, Request Receivables Update.
2. Run AR Update for all business units with deduction transactions.

Resetting the Open Periods in AR

To reset the Open Periods in AR:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, General Ledger, Open Periods, Open Period Update.
2. Update the open periods for the AR product, setting them back to what they were before you ran the AR update.

Note. The upgrade process does not convert previous single-sided accounting entries into two-sided entries. Two-sided accounting entries will only be created for new match transactions entered after the upgrade has taken place. When viewing accounting entries for match transactions entered prior to the upgrade, you may see only one accounting entry for each item in a match group.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Deduction Management	All	All

Task 5-35-2: Setting Up Algorithms

The Deduction Resolver process has been replaced by the Automatic Maintenance process in the current PeopleSoft release. The sample algorithm in Deduction Resolver was successfully upgraded to the new process; however it was not possible to upgrade any user-defined algorithms you may have created. If you have user-defined algorithms, you need to add them to the Automatic Maintenance AE program (AR_AUTOMNT). This task requires thorough knowledge of Application Engine and PeopleTools.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise 9.0 Receivables PeopleBook* “Setting Up Automatic Maintenance.”

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Deduction Management	All	All

Task 5-35-3: Setting Up Methods

The #AUTOMNT algorithm of Payment Predictor has moved to the new Automatic Maintenance process. If you normally perform automatic maintenance functions via Payment Predictor, you must now set up an Automatic Maintenance method to replace it.

To set up an Automatic Maintenance method:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Receivables, Credit/Collections, Automatic Maintenance Methods.
2. Add a method to match a debit item balance to a credit item balance. Refer to the example method MATCH EQUAL AMT in the Demo database.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Deduction Management	All	All

Task 5-35-4: Setting Up Default Options

The default set up for Deductions has moved from the DM business unit options table to the AR options table. Since the two tables are keyed differently (Business Unit vs. SetID) the default fields were not upgraded.

To set up default options:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, Receivables, Receivables Options.
2. For each setID, enter the appropriate Automatic Maintenance Method, AR Specialist, and Write-off Tolerances on the General 1 page.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Deduction Management	All	All

Task 5-35-5: Setting Up Default Specialists

The default deduction specialist setup for Deductions has moved from the DM Reason table to the AR Deduction Reason table. The default fields were not upgraded since the two tables do not have any relation. Therefore, follow the procedure below to set up the defaults.

To set up default specialists:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Receivables, Credit/Collections, Deduction Reason.
2. For each reason, enter the appropriate default specialist in the AR Specialist field.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Deduction Management	All	All

Task 5-35-6: Setting Up Reason WriteOff Tolerances

The write-off tolerance setup for Deduction has moved from the DM Reason table to the AR Auto Reason table. The defaults were not upgraded since these two tables are not related in any way. Therefore, follow the procedure below to set up the defaults for Write-Off Tolerances.

To set up reason Write-Off Tolerances:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Receivables, Payments, Automatic Entry Type.
2. For the system functions MT-02, MT-03, MT-06, and MT-07 enter the appropriate write-off tolerances in the Write-off amount, currency, percent, and days fields.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Deduction Management	All	All

Task 5-35-7: Setting Up User WriteOff Tolerances

The write-off tolerance setup for User Preferences has moved from the DM User Preferences table to the AR User Preferences table. The write-off percent and days were upgraded automatically from DM to AR; however, since the write-off amount already existed for both tables, it was not possible to upgrade the field. Examine the current write-off amount and decide if it is appropriate for deductions.

To set up write-off tolerances:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, User Preferences, Define User Preferences, Receivables Data Entry 2.
2. For each deduction user, adjust the maximum write-off amount.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Deduction Management	All	All

Task 5-35-8: Setting Up Audit Control

The audit control tables could not be upgraded. If you had the audit turned on for Deductions, you need to complete this step.

To set up Audit Control:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Receivables, Credit/Collections, Audit Control.
2. For each setID, add an audit control record and check the fields you want to audit.

Once you turn on the audit, all items are audited, not just deductions.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Deduction Management	All	All

Task 5-35-9: Reviewing Deduction Reasons

The deduction reason field is required to identify deductions in Accounts Receivable. For existing deduction items the conversion process has initialized the deduction reason field to the entry reason value in the ITEM table. If the entry reason is blank, the deduction reason is set to *NONE*. All of the deduction reasons initialized in this manner have been migrated to the new Deduction Reason setup table. Review the setup table and make any necessary changes.

To review the Deduction Reasons setup table:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Receivables, Credit/Collections, Deduction Reason.
2. Search for the reasons where the description is *Inserted by PSFT_UPGRADE*.
3. If you are satisfied with the reason code value, update the record with the appropriate description.
4. If you wish to change the reason code, add the new reason and use the Multi-Item change feature to change all items to the new code.

You can find the Multi-Item change feature on the Item List page.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Receivables	All	All

Task 5-36: Updating eSettlements

This section discusses:

- Validating Role System Access
- Validating Buyer Registration
- Validating Agreement Registration
- Setting Up Buyer Notifications
- Setting Up Supplier Notification

Task 5-36-1: Validating Role System Access

As part of the upgrade process, all eSettlement Roles are mapped to an eSettlements RoleType (Buyer, Supplier, and so forth). If you have any user-defined Roles that you would like to configure to allow access to the eSettlements application, you can enter a mapping in the Role Configuration component.

To validate Role System Access configuration:

1. Select eSettlements, Administration, Maintain Role Types.
2. Add any user-defined Roles to allow access to the eSettlements application.
3. Map them to the most appropriate eSettlements Role Type.

Maintain Role Types

System Access

Map Role Names to eSettlements Role Types
Find | View All
First 1-10 of 25 Last

Role	*Role Type	
GL Accounting Manager	Operational Approver	Delete
Sample - AP Manager	Buyer Accountant	Delete
Commodity Approver	Operational Approver	Delete
Buyer Approver 1	Buyer User	Delete
Buyer Approver 2	Buyer User	Delete
Buyer Approver 3	Buyer User	Delete
Buyer Accountant	Buyer Accountant	Delete
Buyer Administrator	Buyer Administrator	Delete
Matching Manager	Buyer User	Delete
Buyer Operational	Operational Approver	Delete

Add

Save

Maintain Role Types page

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	eSettlements	All	All

Task 5-36-2: Validating Buyer Registration

Follow the steps in the procedure below to validate the buyer registration payment method assignment.

To validate the buyer registration payment method assignment:

1. Select eSettlements, Buyer Information, Review Buyer Details.
2. Select the buyer that you want to review.
3. Review the bank data on the Bank Information page and ensure that the payment method is correct.
4. If the payment method of the Bank Information page needs to be corrected, then in the BSP model, select the correct payment method on the Buyer Information – Bank Information page. In the BD model, navigate to the Payables Business Unit Options, for the buyer, and select the correct payment method on the Payment Options page.
5. If the value you want does not appear in the drop-down list box, then the payment method is not valid for this particular bank account. To address this problem, follow these steps:
 - a. Go to the Bank setup pages and add the desired payment method to the bank account.

- b. Return to this page to assign the new payment method to the buyer.

The screenshot shows a web interface for 'Buyer Registration Information'. At the top, there are five tabs: 'Registration', 'Address', 'Bank Information' (which is selected and highlighted in blue), 'Approval Rules', and 'ChartField Configuration'. Below the tabs, the 'Buyer' information is displayed as 'BUY01 Dean Jones & Bishop'. Under the 'Bank Information' tab, the following details are shown: 'Bank: USA BANK', 'Bank Account: EFT Account', and 'Payment Method: Electronic Funds Transfer'. Below this information, a message states: 'Buyer Creation / Modification initiates several background processes and can take a minute or so to run. Please be patient.' There is a yellow 'Modify Buyer' button. At the bottom, there are links for 'Registration', 'Address', 'Bank Information', 'Approval Rules', and 'ChartField Configuration'.

Buyer Registration Information page

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	eSettlements	All	All

Task 5-36-3: Validating Agreement Registration

In this step, you review and validate the buyer Agreement Registration payment method assignment.

To validate the Agreement Registration payment method assignment:

1. Select eSettlements, Buyer Information, Review Agreement Details.
2. Choose the agreement that you want to review.

Note. The user profile of your current user ID must have the Buyer Administration Role type assigned to one of its roles and the proper security for all buyers to access agreements.

3. Review the bank data on the Buyer page and ensure that the payment method is correct.
4. If the payment method is not correct, correct the payment method now.
5. If the value you want does not show up in the drop-down list box, then the payment method is not valid for this particular bank account. To address this problem, follow these steps:
 - a. Go to the bank setup pages and add the desired payment method to the bank account.
 - b. Return to this page to assign the new payment method to the buyer.

The screenshot displays the 'Agreement Registration Buyer Information' page. On the left is a 'Menu' sidebar with a search bar and a tree view containing 'eSettlements', 'Buyer Information' (with sub-items 'Review Buyer Details', 'Review Agreement Details', 'Review User Profiles'), 'Invoices', 'eSettlements Center', 'Application Diagnostics', and 'Data Expansion Tool'. The main content area has three tabs: 'Buyer', 'Buyer Notifications', and 'Supplier'. The 'Buyer' tab is selected, showing the following information:

- Agreement Reference** (header)
- Buyer:** BUY01 (Buyer One)
- Supplier:** BOOKS4U (Books for You)
- Location:** 1
- Buyer Processing Options** (header)
- ☒ **Standard Vouchers Allowed**
- Supplier Ref ID:** [text input field]
- Comments** (header)
- Comments:** [text area]
- Bank Information** (header)
- *Bank Code:** USA BANK [lookup icon]
- *Bank Account:** EFT Account [lookup icon]
- *Payment Method:** Electronic Funds Transfer [dropdown]
- Self-Service Invoice Options** (header)
- *Invoice Verification Option:** No Invoices [dropdown]
- Buttons:** Save, Cancel Agreement

Agreement Registration Buyer Information page

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise eSettlements 9.0 PeopleBook

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	eSettlements	All	All

Task 5-36-4: Setting Up Buyer Notifications

Additionally, there is a setup page for both the buyer and supplier to select the configured roles to receive workflow notifications. (Buyers can optionally select user IDs that are assigned to these configured roles.) Select eSettlements, Buyer Information, Review Buyer Details. Access the Notification and Approval tab and select the Define Buyer Notifications link to define the Workflow Notification Setup.

To set up Buyer Notifications:

1. Select eSettlements, Buyer Information, Review Buyer Details.
2. Select a buyer.
3. Access the Notification and Approval tab.
4. Click the Define Buyer Notification hyperlink.

The link transfers you to the Define Buyers Notifications page using the notification setID for the buyer you selected.

5. Select the Notification Types check boxes for the notification types you want to activate.

Note. The Agreement Notification Type is mandatory and always selected.

6. In the grid below Notification Type, specify to whom the notifications are to be sent by selecting values for the To/cc, Type, and Recipient fields (the roles or UserIDs to which you want to route the notification).

Buyer Notification Setup page

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	eSettlements	All	All

Task 5-36-5: Setting Up Supplier Notification

Follow the procedure below to set up Supplier Notification.

To set up Supplier Notification:

1. Select eSettlements, Administration, Define Supplier Notifications.
2. Select the vendor setID for the supplier and notification types you want to activate.
3. To activate a notification type, select the check box next to the Notifications Type name.
4. In the grid below the Notification Type, specify to whom the notifications are to be sent by selecting values for the To/cc and Recipient fields.

Note. At the vendor setID level, you can select only roles as valid recipients to which you can route the notifications.

Supplier Notification Setup

Nominate Notification Types

SetID: SHARE **Description:** Standard Corporate SETID

Notification Types Find First 1 of 5

☐ **Payment Create and Cancel**

Enter Routings Find First 1 of 1 Last

To/cc	Type	Recipient	Recipient Name		
<input type="text"/>	Role	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	Add	Delete

☐ **Invoice Extract - Supplier**

Enter Routings Find First 1 of 1 Last

To/cc	Type	Recipient	Recipient Name		
<input type="text"/>	Role	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	Add	Delete

Supplier Notification Setup page

Note. The user profile of your current user ID must have the System Administrator role assigned to it.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise eSettlements 9.0 PeopleBook

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	eSettlements	All	All

Task 5-37: Updating the General Ledger

This section discusses:

- Understanding the General Ledger
- Modifying Accounting Entry Definitions
- Updating Regulatory Ledger Reporting
- Setting Up Adjustment Year
- Setting Up Adjustment Period Default
- Modifying Adjustment Period Defaults
- Setting Up Adjustment Periods
- Cleaning Up Adjustment Periods

Understanding the General Ledger

This task assists you in updating the General Ledger. If you have not licensed General Ledger, you can skip this task.

Task 5-37-1: Modifying Accounting Entry Definitions

This section discusses:

- Understanding Accounting Entry Definitions Modifications
- Identifying Invalid Accounting Entry Definition Field Mappings
- Correcting Accounting Entry Definition

Understanding Accounting Entry Definitions Modifications

The Accounting Entry Definition maps the subsystem accounting entry table fields to fields on the journal line table. In the new PeopleSoft release, fields from the subsystem accounting entry table can no longer be larger than the target journal fields.

Identifying Invalid Accounting Entry Definition Field Mappings

Any invalid field mappings must be corrected for Journal Generator to successfully run.

To identify invalid Accounting Entry Definition field mappings:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager.
2. Run the following queries:

```
Journal Reference Mapping, UPG_GLY01  
Journal Description Mapping, UPG_GLY02  
Open Item Key Mapping, UPG_GLY03
```

Correcting Accounting Entry Definition

If any of these queries return records, you need to correct the corresponding accounting entry definitions.

To correct the Accounting Entry Definition:

1. Select General Ledger, Journals, Subsystem Journals, Accounting Entry Definition.
2. Use the output from the above queries to populate the SetID and Accounting Definition Name fields on the search page.
3. Click Search.
4. Correct the invalid field mapping by either removing the mapped entry, choosing another field, or remapping the field.

Note. On the journal line table, Journal Reference field size is 10, Journal Description field size is 30, and Open Item Key field size is 30. The sizes for the mapped fields you use on the Accounting Entry Definitions should be smaller than the fields on the journal lines.

5. Save your changes.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-37-2: Updating Regulatory Ledger Reporting

In this step you update Regulatory Ledger Reporting.

Note. Perform this step only if you use Regulatory Ledger Reporting and you ran a preliminary build regulatory ledger for a fiscal year that has not been finalized yet.

Rerun the build regulatory ledger process and use the same parameters as your previous preliminary build, making sure that you select the Delete Previous Matching Build check box.

This process will:

- Delete the existing non-finalized rows in the Regulatory Ledger and Regulatory Ledger Error tables – REG_LEDGER_DATA and REG_LED_DATAERR respectively – with the new fields left blank.
- Insert new rows with the new fields populated.

If you attempt to run the Ledger Errors report after data conversion but before you rerun the build regulatory ledger process, you will need to blank out the Regulatory Body ID field on the Data Error Report page because the data conversion does not populate this new field.

There is no need to rerun the build regulatory ledger process for fiscal years that are finalized.

To rerun the build regulatory ledger:

1. Select General Ledger, Regulatory Ledger Reports, Build Regulatory Ledger.
2. Select the same run control ID and parameters that you used in your previous preliminary build.
3. Select the Delete Previous Matching Build check box.
4. Run the Build Regulatory Ledger FS_REGLEDBLD application engine process.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-37-3: Setting Up Adjustment Year

This section discusses:

- Understanding Adjustment Period Modifications
- Identifying Fields with No Adjustment Year
- Correcting Fields with No Adjustment Year

Understanding Adjustment Period Modifications

In the new PeopleSoft release, the Adjustment Period setup was enhanced to support an adjustment year for each adjustment period. Prior to this, there was only one open fiscal year for adjustment purposes. For each business unit and ledger group, a user can identify which adjustment periods and fiscal year combinations are open or closed as the accounting cycle evolves. The user also sets a default adjustment period for each business unit and ledger group.

The upgrade data conversion process sets the adjustment year and default flag for the adjustment periods from existing Open Period data. Manual updates are needed to correct any missing data or duplicate data conditions.

Identifying Fields with No Adjustment Year

To identify fields with no adjustment year set:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager.
2. Run the query `No Adjustment Period Default, UPG_GLP01`.

The query output lists values for the following fields:

- PeopleSoft Product
- Business Unit
- Ledger Group

Correcting Fields with No Adjustment Year

To correct fields with no adjustment year, identified by the query in the previous step:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, General Ledger, Open Periods, Open Period Update.
2. Use the output from the query you ran in the previous step to populate the PeopleSoft Product, Business Unit, and Ledger Group fields on the search page.
3. Click Search.
4. Adjustment Year is a required field. Set the adjustment year to an appropriate value for each Adjustment Period entry where this field is missing.
5. Save your changes.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	General Ledger	All	All

Task 5-37-4: Setting Up Adjustment Period Default

This section discusses:

- Understanding Adjustment Period Modifications
- Identifying Fields with No Adjustment Period Default
- Correcting Fields with No Adjustment Period Default

Understanding Adjustment Period Modifications

In the new PeopleSoft release, the Adjustment Period setup was enhanced to support an adjustment year for each adjustment period. Prior to this, there was only one open fiscal year for adjustment purposes. For each business unit and ledger group, a user can identify which adjustment periods and fiscal year combinations are open or closed as the accounting cycle evolves. The user also sets a default adjustment period for each business unit and ledger group.

The upgrade data conversion process sets the adjustment year and default flag for the adjustment periods from existing Open Period data. Manual updates are needed to correct any missing data or duplicate data conditions.

Identifying Fields with No Adjustment Period Default

To identify whether no Adjustment Period default has been set for a given business unit and ledger group:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager.
2. Run the query `No Adjustment Period Default, UPG_GLP02`.

The query output lists values for the following fields:

- PeopleSoft Product
- Business Unit
- Ledger Group

Correcting Fields with No Adjustment Period Default

To correct fields with no adjustment period default, identified by the query in the previous step:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, General Ledger, Open Periods, Open Period Update.
2. Use the output from the query you ran in the previous step to populate the PeopleSoft Product, Business Unit, and Ledger Group fields on the search page.
3. Click Search.
4. One Adjustment Period entry must be marked as the default. Select the adjustment period that is to be the default and check the Default check box.
5. Save your changes.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	General Ledger	All	All

Task 5-37-5: Modifying Adjustment Period Defaults

This section discusses:

- Understanding Adjustment Period Modifications
- Identifying Multiple Adjustment Period Defaults
- Correcting Multiple Adjustment Period Defaults

Understanding Adjustment Period Modifications

In the new PeopleSoft release, the Adjustment Period setup was enhanced to support an adjustment year for each adjustment period. Prior to this, there was only one open fiscal year for adjustment purposes. For each business unit and ledger group, a user can identify which adjustment periods and fiscal year combinations are open or closed as the accounting cycle evolves. The user also sets a default adjustment period for each business unit and ledger group.

The upgrade data conversion process sets the adjustment year and default flag for the adjustment periods from existing Open Period data. Manual updates are needed to correct any missing data or duplicate data conditions.

Identifying Multiple Adjustment Period Defaults

To identify where multiple Adjustment Period defaults exist:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager.
2. Run the query `Multiple Adj Period Defaults, UPG_GLP03`.

The query output lists values for the following fields:

- PeopleSoft Product
- Business Unit
- Ledger Group
- Accounting Period
- Fiscal Year
- Default Flag

Correcting Multiple Adjustment Period Defaults

To correct the multiple adjustment period defaults identified by the query in the previous step:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, General Ledger, Open Periods, Open Period Update.
2. Use the output from the query you ran in the previous step to populate the PeopleSoft Product, Business Unit, and Ledger Group fields on the search page.
3. Click Search.
4. For each Business Unit and Ledger Group, there can be only one Adjustment Period entry marked as the default. Select the Adjustment Period that is to be the default and clear the remaining entries.
5. Save your changes.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	General Ledger	All	All

Task 5-37-6: Setting Up Adjustment Periods

This section discusses:

- Understanding Adjustment Period Modifications

- Identifying Open Period Setup with No Adjustment Periods
- Correcting Open Period Setup with No Adjustment Periods

Understanding Adjustment Period Modifications

In the new PeopleSoft release, the Adjustment Period setup was enhanced to support an adjustment year for each adjustment period. Prior to this, there was only one open fiscal year for adjustment purposes. For each business unit and ledger group, a user can identify which adjustment periods and fiscal year combinations are open or closed as the accounting cycle evolves. The user also sets a default adjustment period for each business unit and ledger group.

The upgrade data conversion process sets the adjustment year and default flag for the adjustment periods from existing Open Period data. Manual updates are needed to correct any missing data or duplicate data conditions.

Identifying Open Period Setup with No Adjustment Periods

To identify Open Period setup without any adjustment periods:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager.
2. Run the query `No Adjustment Period Default`, `UPG_GLP04`.

The query output lists values for the following fields:

- PeopleSoft Product
- Business Unit
- Ledger Group

Correcting Open Period Setup with No Adjustment Periods

To correct Open Period setup with no adjustment periods, identified by the query in the previous step:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, General Ledger, Open Periods, Open Period Update.
2. Use the output from the query you ran in the previous step to populate the PeopleSoft Product, Business Unit, and Ledger Group fields on the search page.
3. Click Search.

The Adjustment Period grid will be pre-populated with the adjustment periods that have been defined for the detail calendar that is associated with the Business Unit and Ledger Group. The adjustment year will be set for each entry. The adjustment periods will all be closed and no default adjustment period will be set.

Note. When associating a ledger group with a business unit, a calendar ID is specified. A detail calendar defines the number and duration of accounting periods in a fiscal year. It also identifies the adjustment periods for the calendar.

4. Update the adjustment period entries as needed by updating the adjustment year and open adjustment periods, and setting a default.

One Adjustment Period entry must be marked as the default. Select the Adjustment Period that is to be the default and check the Default check box.

5. Save the page.

Note. Even if you make no changes, you must click the Save button in order to save the adjustment period data that has been pre-populated by the system.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	General Ledger	All	All

Task 5-37-7: Cleaning Up Adjustment Periods

Understanding Adjustment Period Modifications

In the new PeopleSoft release, the Adjustment Period setup was enhanced to support an adjustment year for each adjustment period. Prior to this, there was only one open fiscal year for adjustment purposes. For each business unit and ledger group, a user can identify which adjustment periods and fiscal year combinations are open or closed as the accounting cycle evolves. The user also sets a default adjustment period for each business unit and ledger group.

The upgrade data conversion process sets the adjustment year and default flag for the adjustment periods from existing Open Period data. Manual updates are needed to correct any missing data or duplicate data conditions.

Identifying Adjustment Periods for Cleanup

To identify adjustment periods that need to be cleaned up:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Adjustment Period Post-Upgrade.
2. The Adjustment Periods grid will be populated with adjustment periods that have no corresponding Open Period setup. These are orphaned rows and they need to be deleted. Analyze the entries and determine which adjustment periods you want to delete.

Note. If the Adjustment Periods grid has no rows, then there is no data to delete. No further action is required.

Deleting Orphaned Adjustment Periods

To delete the orphaned adjustment periods:

1. Click the Select All icon to select every adjustment period on the list for deletion. Or, you can click the Clear All icon to reverse this action and select rows individually.
2. To delete the selected rows, click the Delete button.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	General Ledger	All	All

Task 5-38: Setting Up Commitment Control

This section discusses:

- Checking Funding Source Allocations
- Setting Up Wait Time for Budget Check

Task 5-38-1: Checking Funding Source Allocations

This section discusses:

- Understanding Duplicate Funding Source Allocation
- Identifying Duplicate Funding Source Allocation
- Correcting Duplicate Funding Source Allocation

Note. Perform this step only if you use Funding Source in Commitment Control and have defined Funding Source allocations.

Understanding Duplicate Funding Source Allocation

A duplicate Funding Source allocation is a Funding Source allocation with duplicate funding source values on the allocation details grid of the Funding Source Allocation page.

In the new PeopleSoft release, the Budget Processor was enhanced to handle the Funding Source distribution. But the Budget Processor will *not* be able to handle the Funding Source distribution based on a duplicate Funding Source allocation. Any duplicate Funding Source allocations have to be corrected to avoid the duplicate funding source values on the details grid. Otherwise, the Budget Processor will terminate abnormally when involved in Funding Source distribution.

Identifying Duplicate Funding Source Allocation

To identify all the duplicate Funding Source allocations:

1. Select Reporting Tools, Query, Query Manager.
2. Run the query `Duplicate Funding Source Alloc`, `UPG_GLQ01`.

The query output lists values for the following fields:

- Business Unit
- Ledger Group
- ChartField Value
- Funding Source
- Duplicate Count

Correcting Duplicate Funding Source Allocation

To correct a duplicate Funding Source allocation identified by the query in the previous step:

1. Select Commitment Control, Define Control Budgets, Funding Source Allocation.
2. Use the output from the query you ran in the previous step to populate the Business Unit, Ledger Group, and ChartField Value fields on the search page.

3. Click Search.
4. Delete the duplicate funding source rows on the details grid, or change the duplicate funding source values to some not-yet-used values for this allocation.
5. Save your changes.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-38-2: Setting Up Wait Time for Budget Check

The On-Line Budget Checking option allows you to specify the maximum time (in minutes) a user would have to wait after running an online budget check.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise Application Fundamentals 9.0 PeopleBook* “Setting Installation Options for PeopleSoft Applications”

To set the maximum wait time for the On-Line Budget Checking option:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Install, Installation Options.
2. Select the Commitment Control link.
3. In the On-Line Budget Checking Option area, in the Maximum Wait Time edit box, enter the maximum waiting time.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	eProcurement Expenses General Ledger Grants Management Payables Project Costing Purchasing Receivables	All	All

Task 5-39: Completing Asset Management Setup

This section discusses:

- Setting Up Asset Attributes

- Running Asset Attributes
- Setting Up Report Suffixes

Task 5-39-1: Setting Up Asset Attributes

In this release, Asset Attributes are added to Asset and Profile tables. Asset Type is a required field and this field value must be populated before using the system.

To set up Asset Type and Asset Subtype:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Define AM Asset Attributes – post.
2. Select the setID that is associated with the profile.

The Define AM Asset Attributes page appears:

Define AM Asset Attributes

Attributes

SetID: SHARE [Get Profiles](#)

Customize | Find | View All | First 1 of 1 Last

Asset Profile ID	Description	Asset Type	Asset Subtype
1			

Save Add Update/Display

Define AM Asset Attributes page

3. Click the Get Profiles link.

This populates the grid with all the Asset Profile IDs for the selected setID.

Define AM Asset Attributes

Attributes

SetID: SHARE

Asset Profile ID	Description	Asset Type	Asset Subtype
1 AUTO	Automobile	Fleet	AUTO
2 BLDG	Building	Facility	WAREHOUSE
3 COMPUTERS	Computer	Hardware	DESKTOP
4 CRESpace	Corporate Real Estate Space	Facility	
5 DISPLAYUNIT	Display Shelves	Equipment	
6 FURNITURE	Furniture & Fixtures	Furniture	DESK
7 IMPAIR	Profile for Impairment	Other	
8 LAND	Land	Intangible	
9 LEASED CAR	Leased Car	Fleet	
10 LEASED EQT	Leased Eqt	Equipment	

Save Add Update/Display

Define AM Asset Attributes page with Profile IDs

- For each Asset Profile ID, select an appropriate value in the Asset Type and Asset Subtype fields.

Note. To assign asset subtypes on this page, you need to set them up first. To set up asset subtypes, select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Asset Management, Physical Definitions, Asset Subtype Properties.

- Click Save.
- Repeat steps 2 through 5 for all setIDs.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Asset Management	All	All

Task 5-39-2: Running Asset Attributes

After setting up Asset Attributes for all the profiles, run the Asset Attribute post-upgrade Application Engine, UPG_AM_PSP10. This populates the Asset and Profile tables with Asset Attribute data. Asset type will be populated to Others for the non-profile assets.

This Application Engine also populates the tables ASSET, BOOK, BUS_UNIT_TBL_AM, BU_BOOK_TBL, and ASSET_WARRANTY with the record default values for the new fields.

To run this Application Engine, select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Run Asset Attribute-post.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Asset Management	All	All

Task 5-39-3: Setting Up Report Suffixes

Before PeopleSoft 8.8, separate SQR programs generated the same type of report for different ChartFields. After PeopleSoft 8.8, the Report By field was added to the run components to generate reports for different ChartFields using the same SQR program. To uniquely identify a Report ID for different ChartFields, you need to set up report suffixes.

To set up report suffixes:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Asset Management, Reporting Setup, Report Suffix.

The Report Suffix page appears.

Field Name	Report Suffix
Account	1
Alternate Account	2
Operating Unit	3
Fund Code	4
Department	5
Program Code	6
Class Field	7
Budget Reference	BR
Product	9
Project	11
Asset Category	C
Location Code	LC

Save Notify

Report Suffix page

- Initially, the report suffixes will default to the ChartField order. Overwrite the default values with the required values.
- Click Save.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Asset Management	All	All

Task 5-40: Completing Contracts Setup

This section discusses:

- Understanding Completing Contracts Setup
- Updating Limits Totals
- Running the Limit Amount Report
- Setting Up Billing Summarization
- Reviewing Contracts Rate Plans

Understanding Completing Contracts Setup

In this task, you complete the setup for Contracts. This involves updating limit totals, running the limit amount report, setting up billing summarization, and attaching rated plans.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise Contracts 9.0 PeopleBook*.

Task 5-40-1: Updating Limits Totals

For all existing contract lines with a limit amount greater than zero, the limit amount has been moved from the Limit Amount field on the contract detail line (CA_DETAIL.LIMIT_AMOUNT) to the Funded / Billing Limit amount field on the new contract limit and fee detail line table (CA_LMT_FEE_DTL.LIMIT_AMT_BIL). Additional information that will now be tracked on the contract limit and fee detail line includes the total amount processed against the limit and the total amount that is in excess of the limit, as well as various dates such as the date on which the limits process was last run and the date on which the limit was reached.

In order to ensure that all fields on the new rows in the contract limit and fee detail line are updated correctly, you must run the new Limits process, specifying the *Recalculate Totals Only* option.

To update Limits totals:

- Select Customer Contracts, Update Contract Progress, Process Limits.
- Enter a run control ID.
- Select the *Recalculate Totals Only* and *Process Billing* options.

Note. The Process Billing option will be available based on whether you have selected to separate Billing and Revenue. The option to separate Billing and Revenue is found by selecting Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Install, Installation Options, Contracts, Other Installed Options group box.

4. Specify additional selection criteria as needed, and click Run.
5. Specify the server, and then click OK.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Billing	All	All

Task 5-40-2: Running the Limit Amount Report

After updating the Limits totals, you should now run the Limit Amount report to ensure that your limits have been converted and updated correctly. To run the report, select Customer Contracts, Reports, Limit Amount. Note that the selection criteria for the Limit Amount report have changed for the new PeopleSoft release. This includes the ability to specify whether the report should be run to allow only transactions with an excess to be reported or to allow only transactions with a remaining amount to be reported.

If you select *remaining amount*, you must then specify the maximum remaining percent, which allows only transactions that are within a certain percentage of reaching the limit to be reported. This option is essentially replacing the *%of Limit Already Billed* option. However, because of the addition of the *Report By* option, it does not make sense to upgrade the existing percentage field to the new maximum percentage field.

Because of this, you should review all the new selection criteria prior to running the new limits report for the first time.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Contracts	All	All

Task 5-40-3: Setting Up Billing Summarization

You may have some Amount-based Contract lines for which you deleted the summarized Bill Plan lines and replaced them with individual Bill Plan lines in the Chapter 1 task Processing Bill Plans.

Note. If you do not want to set up summarization for the Contract lines for which you deleted summarized Bill Plan lines in the Chapter 1 task Processing Bill Plans, or you did not have any Contract lines that required summarized Bill Plan lines to be deleted, you can skip this step.

To set up Bill Plans for summarization:

1. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Billing, Summarization Template Config, Summarization Configuration ID.
2. Define summarization IDs.

Note. SUM_GROUP_ID, SUM_GROUP_TYPE, SUM_TEMPLATE_ID must be defined on any summarization IDs that will be used on Fixed Fee Bill Plans (Milestone, Immediate, Percent Complete).

3. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Billing, Summarization Template Config, Summarization Group.
4. Define summarization group types and identifiers.
5. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Billing, Summarization Template Config, Summarization Template, General Definitions.
6. Define summarization templates.
7. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Billing, Summarization Template Config, Summarization Template, Group Header.
8. Define summarization group headers.
9. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Billing, Summarization Template Config, Summarization Template, Group Detail.
10. Define summarization group detail.
11. Select Customer Contracts, Review Billing, Plans.
12. Open the appropriate Bill Plans and assign summarization templates to the Bill Plan lines.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Billing	All	All

Task 5-40-4: Reviewing Contracts Rate Plans

In the new PeopleSoft release, Contract Header Burden Plans are converted into rate plans. If there is a contract line rate template and more than one applicable burden plan for that contract line, then all rate information was removed from the contract line during the upgrade. Because it was not possible to know which of the possible burden plans should be combined with the rate template to create a new rate plan, all rate information was removed from these contract lines so that further analysis could be performed. This situation would occur if there is more than one activity linked to a contract line and each activity had a different burden plan prior to conversion, or more than one project is linked to a contract line and each project had a different burden plan (with no activity level burden plans). You can review the list of contract lines that meet this criteria in the record UPG_PC_CONT_TMP, which was populated during the conversion.

To review the list of contract lines that meet this criteria:

1. Use the query tool of your choice to display all rows on UPG_PC_CONT_TMP.
2. Use the table below to review the list:

Field	Definition
CONTRACT_NUM	Contract Number
CONTRACT_LINE_NUM	Contract Line Number

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	Contracts	All	All

Task 5-41: Stamping the Database

In this step, you set the database to the release level of the Demo database. The values that you enter here appear whenever you view the Help, About PeopleTools dialog.

To stamp the database:

1. Launch Application Designer on your Copy of Production database using the new PeopleSoft release.
2. Select Tools, Upgrade, Stamp Database.
3. Fill in all three of the PeopleSoft Release fields with the appropriate value for your product line and release number:

Financials/SCM, 9.00

4. In the Service Pack field, enter 0.
5. Click Stamp.
6. Close Application Designer.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

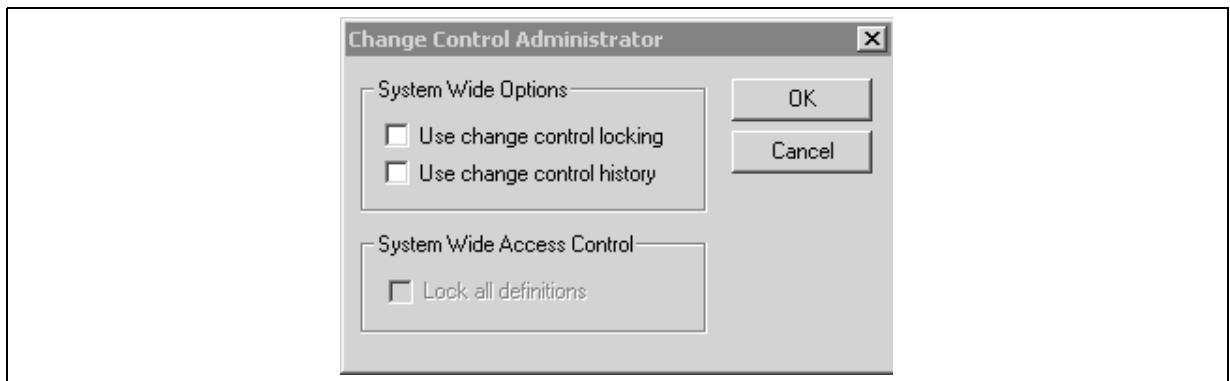
Task 5-42: Reviewing Change Control

Earlier in the upgrade process, in the beginning of the chapter “Apply PeopleTools Changes,” the Change Control feature was disabled. In this step, you re-enable Change Control, if your site uses this functionality.

To turn on Change Control:

1. Sign on to the Target database using Application Designer.
2. Select Tools, Change Control, Administrator.

The following dialog box appears:



Change Control Administrator dialog box

- Set Use change control locking and Use change control history according to your site specifications.

Note. Move to Production: The Change Control feature slows down copy functions. The large copy projects are only executed during the initial pass, and the feature is only disabled during the initial pass. If you enable the feature at this point, it will remain enabled during future test Move to Production passes.

See “Apply PeopleTools Changes,” Turning Off Change Control.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Initial	All	All	All

Task 5-43: Backing Up Before Testing

Back up your Copy of Production database now. This enables you to restart your upgrade from this point, should you experience any database integrity problems during the remaining tasks in the upgrade process.

See Appendix: “Planning for Upgrade Testing.”

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 5-44: Testing Your Copy of Production

In this task, you test your Copy of Production. Testing your Copy of Production will ensure that you can still operate your day-to-day processes on your new release. After you have reviewed your DDDAUDIT and SYSAUDIT, verify that the system is working properly by reviewing the system online. After you are comfortable that the system is working properly, you can perform the Test Move to Production upgrade pass.

See Appendix: “Planning for Upgrade Testing.”

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

CHAPTER 6

Apply Changes to Production Database

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding the Move to Production
- Testing the Move to Production
- Testing Once More
- Performing the Move to Production
- Completing the Upgrade Survey

Understanding the Move to Production

Once you complete all of the necessary tasks to launch your system into production, you are ready to begin your Test Move to Production passes or to move your system into production.

Task 6-1: Testing the Move to Production

This section discusses:

- Understanding the Move to Production Test
- Understand Move to Production
- Creating a New Change Assistant Job

Understanding the Move to Production Test

Everything you have done to this point is the initial pass of the upgrade process. Now you are ready to start the Test Move to Production pass. The initial pass is very time consuming and requires a lot of analysis at different steps of the process and to troubleshoot issues. The Test Move to Production pass is a different series of steps, which includes a subset of the previous tasks, and takes advantage of the tasks performed during the first upgrade pass.

You should perform as many test moves to production as necessary to work out any issues and to be comfortable with the process. During each Test Move to Production you will be able to refine the process so that you can save time and avoid manual processes. These test passes will also let you know how long the process takes so you can plan your production downtime for your move to production weekend.

Task 6-1-1: Understand Move to Production

The following text is a high level view of what you will be doing in the Move to Production test pass. The remaining steps in this task will prepare your test environment. For example, you may need to move some scripts generated in the initial pass to a new Change Assistant staging directory. Next you will create a new Change Assistant job, setting the Type of Upgrade to Move to Production. That will give you a job with steps filtered with only those steps that apply to the Move to Production (MTP) test pass. From that point forward, you will simply follow the steps as they exist in your new job.

One of those first steps will be to take a Copy of Production. This second Copy of Production is sometimes referred to as the “New Copy of Production.” The first Copy of Production, or “old” Copy of Production, will now be the Source database (it was the Target database in the initial test pass). The New Copy of Production is now the Target database.

The steps executed in the MTP pass vary in several ways. Many of the tasks and steps in the initial test pass will be replaced in the MTP pass with Data Mover export and import scripts. In the initial pass, some steps required you to make functional decisions and take time to manually set up data. That data can be copied from the first database to the next, saving you setup time and eliminating the chance for manual error or typos.

Also, the MTP pass does not repeat the database compare/copy steps. You made the decisions once; there is no need to repeat these steps. Instead, a Data Mover script, MVPRDEXP, will export all the tables that contain the PeopleTools objects like records and PeopleCode from the first database. Another Data Mover script, MVPRDIMP, will import those tables into the second database. Anything you have done to PeopleTools objects while executing or testing the first pass—copied objects from DMO, reapplied customizations, applied updates from the PeopleSoft Customer Connection website—will be moved to the second Copy of Production with these scripts.

Another important difference with the MTP pass is the handling of SQL scripts that create and alter tables. In the initial pass, you generated the SQL scripts, sometimes edited the SQL script, and then executed the SQL scripts. In the MTP pass, you may be able to skip the generation steps and use the SQL you previously generated. This is another way to save time in your critical go-live window and is the ultimate goal, but it is an incremental process to get to that point.

In the first MTP pass, everyone must regenerate the SQL. There are small differences between the initial and MTP passes that require the SQL to be regenerated in at least one MTP pass. The Change Assistant Templates are delivered with the steps set this way.

In subsequent MTP passes, you may choose to “turn off” the generation steps if possible. If you have not changed any records at the end of one MTP pass, then you can reuse the SQL in your next pass. If you have done anything to change records, you should generate SQL again. This can include things like applying PeopleTools upgrades (for example, 8.47 to 8.48), or applying updates from the PeopleSoft Customer Connection website that involve record changes, or making additional customizations to records.

If you choose to skip some of these steps, do one of the following: mark the step complete in your job, or change the step properties in the template, so the step will never show up in your MTP filtered job again. To change the step properties, double-click on the step to open the Step Properties dialog, and change the Type of Upgrade to Initial Upgrade. In addition, copy the SQL scripts from the previous pass output directory to the new pass output directory. Change Assistant will look for the SQL scripts in the output directory set on the job’s Database Configuration, so make sure it will find them when it tries to run them.

The steps that are eligible for this treatment will contain Move To Production documentation notes indicating such.

Note. If you have made any changes to your trees, tree structures, or PS/Query objects since the upgrade began, you may want information on how to preserve those changes.

See Appendix: “Preserving Queries and Tree Objects.”

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 6-1-2: Creating a New Change Assistant Job

You need to create a new Change Assistant Job for each test Move to Production pass.

To create a new Change Assistant job:

1. Oracle recommends that you use new output and stage directories for each new test pass. Create those directories now.
2. From Change Assistant, select Tools, Options and specify the new output and staging directories on the Change Assistant Options page.
3. Select File, Open Environment and select the environment.
4. Review the configuration on the General Settings window.
The Database Type, Language and SQL Query Executable will be the same as your previous job. Make changes to the PS_HOME settings, if necessary, and select Next.
5. Specify the Source Database setup information and click Next.
This is the Copy of Production database from your previous pass.
6. Specify the Target Database setup information and click Next.
This is the new Copy of Production database.
7. Review the environment configuration on the Confirm Selections window and click Next to save the changes to the environment.
8. Select File, New Job.
9. Select the template on the Use Template window and click OK.
10. On the Type of Upgrade window, select Move to Production.
11. Click OK.
A new upgrade job using the naming convention of *Template_Environment_Move to Production* is created.
12. Highlight the job name and select Edit, Set Documentation Directory, then select the directory where the documentation is located and click OK.
If you have been using documentation printed from the filtered view on the jobs, print the documentation again. The steps for Move to Production are different than in the initial pass.
13. Select View, Documentation.
14. Select View, Expand All to display all the steps in the job that apply to your upgrade.
The job will contain steps that were not in the initial upgrade pass and will exclude some steps that were in the initial upgrade pass based on the step properties.

Now you are ready to run the job.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 6-2: Testing Once More

As in any implementation project, you must consider planning, resources, development, and training. Testing also needs to be an integral part of your implementation project. Testing your database once more, after you have completed the upgrade, ensures that you can still operate your day-to-day processes on your new PeopleSoft release.

The level of testing in this task will focus primarily on the strategies to employ before moving into production.

See Appendix: “Planning for Upgrade Testing.”

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	Both	All	All	All

Task 6-3: Performing the Move to Production

When you are ready, you can move the system into production. Take your system out of production and perform all of the steps involved in testing the Move to Production against your production database.

See Testing the Move to Production.

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	MTP	All	All	All

Task 6-4: Completing the Upgrade Survey

We are interested in feedback on your upgrade experience and any thoughts and/or suggestions you have on how we can improve the process in the future. Note that this survey should only be accessed once you have completed your upgrade and are in production on the new release.

See Also

<http://www.peoplesoft.com/go/upgradesurvey>

Properties

Database Orientation	Initial or MTP	Products	Platforms	Languages
Target	MTP	All	All	All

CHAPTER 7

Appendices

Understanding Appendices

The appendices portion of this documentation contains information you may need for your upgrade. The appendices have been referenced throughout the upgrade documentation for further understanding of the upgrade you are performing. PeopleSoft recommends that you read each appendix as it is referenced in the documentation.

APPENDIX A

Applying Fixes Required for Upgrade

This appendix discusses:

- Preparing to Apply Fixes
- Applying Fixes During Installation
- Applying Fixes After Copying Project
- Applying Fixes After Data Conversion
- Applying Fixes Between Upgrade Passes
- Applying Fixes in Move to Production

Task A-1: Preparing to Apply Fixes

This appendix gives general instructions for applying a Required for Upgrade fix for your upgrade. If the directions given in a particular fix are different from those given here, then follow the instructions in the fix.

It is important that you run your upgrade using the latest versions of all upgrade software. In Customer Connection, check the upgrade page and the Updates and Fixes page to ensure that you have all of the latest code.

Ideally, you should follow the steps below to apply the various files and fixes.

To apply files and fixes:

1. Install the new release from the CD.
2. Apply any additional scripts and projects from the Customer Connection upgrade page to your new release codeline (and to the New Release Demo database, if applicable).
3. Apply any other Required for Upgrade fixes from Customer Connection's Updates and Fixes to your new release codeline (and to the New Release Demo database, if applicable).
4. Run your initial pass of the upgrade.
5. Before you begin each subsequent upgrade pass, check the upgrade page for new versions of any files you previously applied.

Then check Updates and Fixes for any new Required for Upgrade fixes.

Your initial upgrade pass will differ from your subsequent Test Move to Production passes. Some of the upgrade tasks and steps are common to both the initial upgrade pass and the Move to Production pass. For this reason, you may find Required for Upgrade fixes that do not apply to the upgrade pass that you are currently performing. The details provided with each fix will help you determine whether to apply the fix and when to apply it. The fix will also tell you what to do if you have already passed the step for which the fix is needed.

How you apply a fix depends on where you are in the upgrade process. This appendix explains how to apply a typical fix, and is organized by the various points within the upgrade where you will apply fixes.

Task A-2: Applying Fixes During Installation

In the chapter, “Install the Software,” of *Getting Started on Your PeopleSoft Upgrade*, you should first download and apply all files and objects from the upgrade page on PeopleSoft Customer Connection. Then you must download all Required for Upgrade fixes from Updates and Fixes on PeopleSoft Customer Connection. You can use the instructions in this section to apply any additional fixes that are posted, until you reach the task, “Running New Release Compare Reports.”

If a fix contains a project that needs to be copied from a file, apply it to your New Release Demo database during installation. If the project contains changes for records or fields, those objects will be updated during the normal compare and copy steps in the upgrade. You will not have to build objects in the project separately or consider whether it will have an impact on customizations. You will do that with the rest of the objects during the upgrade. Apply as many of the fixes as you can at this time.

To apply script fixes during installation:

1. Download Required for Upgrade change packages using the “Download Change Package” functionality in Change Assistant.
2. Use Change Assistant to apply the updates into your New Release Demo database.

Review the documentation included with each update prior to applying each update. There may be manual steps that need to be performed in order to successfully apply the update.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Software Updates for your current release, “Applying Updates.”

Task A-3: Applying Fixes After Copying Project

It is best not to apply fixes during the compare and copy tasks in the “Run and Review Compare Reports” and “Apply Application Changes” chapters of the initial upgrade pass. It can also be cumbersome to apply record and field changes during the creating and altering of tables in the “Complete Database Changes” chapter. It is, therefore, best to wait until just before the “Running Data Conversions” task in the “Apply Application Changes” chapter to apply additional fixes. Most of the fixed objects will be data conversion code, delivered in projects.

To apply PeopleSoft project fixes before data conversion:

1. Download Required for Upgrade change packages using the “Download Change Package” functionality in Change Assistant.
2. Use Change Assistant to apply the updates into your New Release Demo database for this upgrade pass.
Review the documentation included with each update prior to applying each update.
See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Software Updates for your current release, “Applying Updates.”
3. The project is now loaded on your New Release Demo database. You should run a project compare to make sure that the objects in the fix will not overwrite any of your customizations.

If you find customizations, you must decide how to deal with them before you copy the fix to your Copy of Production.

4. If you are performing a Move to Production upgrade pass, first migrate the change packages into the Source database for this upgrade pass.

If needed, first set up Change Assistant with the environment information for your Source database. If you customized any of the objects delivered in the change package, you should repackage the fix to include your customizations. If you did not customize any objects delivered in the fix you may directly apply them to your Source database.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Software Updates for your current release, “Applying Updates.”

5. Migrate the change packages into the Target database for this upgrade pass.

If needed, first set up Change Assistant with the environment information for your Target database.

Task A-4: Applying Fixes After Data Conversion

At this point, you have already converted all of your data for the upgrade pass, and you cannot apply Application Engine program fixes and use them in this upgrade pass. You should refer to the fix instructions to determine what to do in each case. Often, the instructions say that you need to restore your database from a pre-conversion backup and rerun data conversion to get the benefits of the fix. Because this is the only way you can get the fix onto your current Copy of Production, you may decide to allow the error and not apply the fix until you do a Test Move to Production. Then after you have completed that test pass, you can test the affected function. However, you should not do this if your next pass is your final Move to Production, and you are going into production with the resulting database. You should always test your upgraded database between test passes if changes have been made to procedures, scripts, or programs. You do not want any surprises during the final Move to Production.

Task A-5: Applying Fixes Between Upgrade Passes

You can apply fixes just before you start a Test Move to Production pass in the same way you would in the step above, Apply Fixes After Copying Project. In those instructions, you apply the fix to your New Release Demo database and compare it to the Copy of Production. Make sure that you do the database comparison in order to verify that the fix does not wipe out any customizations you made to Application Engine programs during your initial upgrade pass. If you have made customizations, merge your customizations into the new Application Engine code on the New Release Demo database. Then apply the fix to your Copy of Production, which you will use as the Source database in the Test Move to Production. The fix will then get moved to your New Copy of Production when you run the MVPRDEXP.DMS and MVPRDIMP.DMS scripts in the “Apply PeopleTools Changes” chapter.

Task A-6: Applying Fixes in Move to Production

Once you have started a Test Move to Production, do not apply any fixes until just before data conversion. Apply any fixes using the previous step, “Applying Fixes After Copying Project.” In those instructions you apply the fix to your New Release Demo database and compare it to your Copy of Production. Instead of using the original Copy of Production as the Target, you must now use your New Copy of Production, the one defined as the Target in your Move to Production Change Assistant job. Be sure to do the database comparison to verify that the fix does not wipe out any customizations that you made to Application Engine programs during your initial upgrade pass. If you have made customizations, merge your customizations into the new Application Engine code on the New Release Demo database, then copy the project to your New Copy of Production.

APPENDIX B

Changing the User Interface

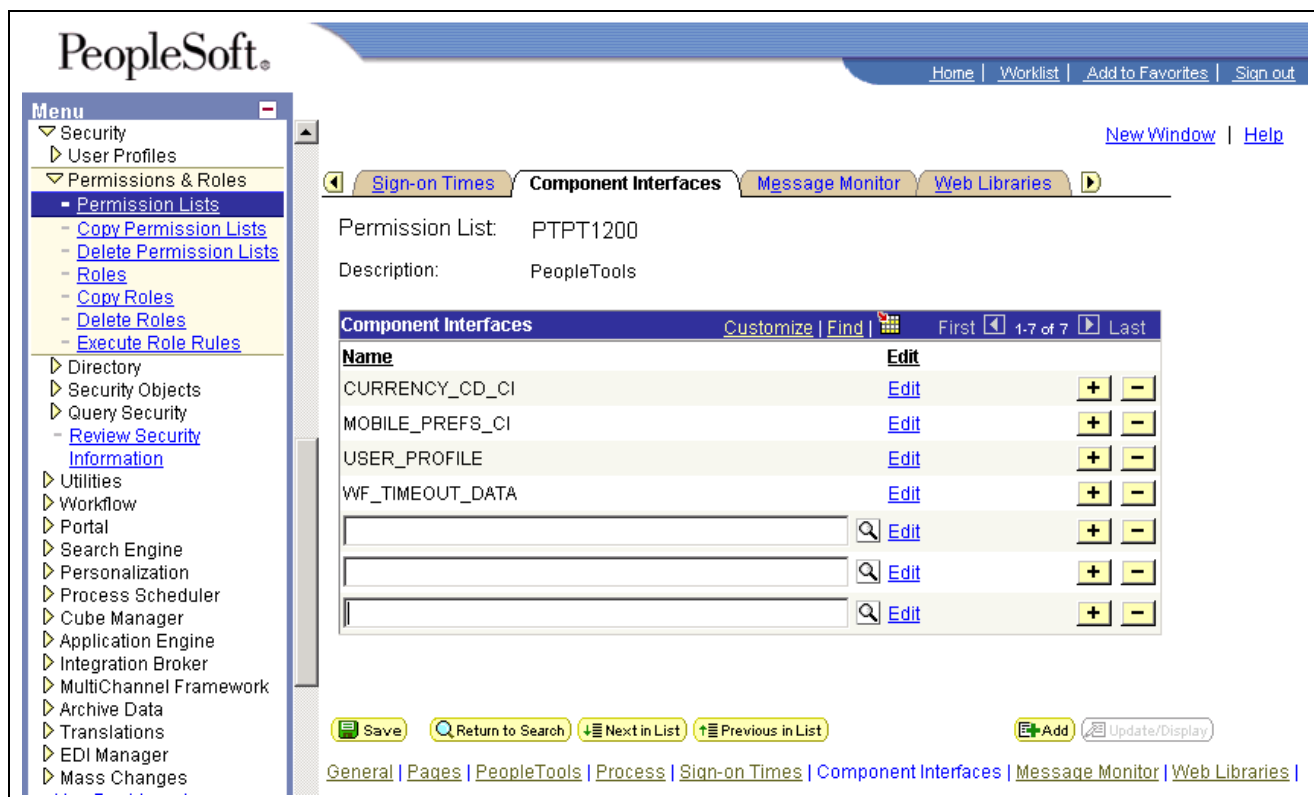
This appendix discusses:

- Change the User Interface
- Change the User Interface for Mobile

Task B-1: Change the User Interface

Three user interface options were delivered with your current release of PeopleSoft 8.x. The classic style, the style seen in previous releases of your PeopleSoft application, is set as your default style. The following are examples of the three delivered styles: classic, light blue, and dark blue.

The classic style, shown below, is set as your default style delivered with your PeopleSoft release.



The classic style user interface option

The following example represents the light blue style.

The screenshot shows the PeopleSoft web interface with a light blue theme. The top navigation bar includes links for Home, Worklist, Add to Favorites, and Sign out. A left-hand menu is expanded to show the 'Permissions & Roles' section, with 'Permission Lists' selected. The main content area displays the 'Component Interfaces' for 'Permission List: PTPT1200' and 'Description: PeopleTools'. A table lists several component interfaces with 'Edit' links and '+' and '-' buttons. At the bottom, there are buttons for Save, Return to Search, Next in List, Previous in List, Add, and Update/Display. The breadcrumb trail at the very bottom reads: General | Pages | PeopleTools | Process | Sign-on Times | Component Interfaces | Message Monitor | Web Libraries |

PeopleSoft.

Home | Worklist | Add to Favorites | Sign out

New Window | Help

Sign-on Times | **Component Interfaces** | Message Monitor | Web Libraries

Permission List: PTPT1200
Description: PeopleTools

Component Interfaces Customize | Find | First 1-7 of 7 Last

Name	Edit		
CURRENCY_CD_CI	Edit	+	-
MOBILE_PREFS_CI	Edit	+	-
USER_PROFILE	Edit	+	-
WF_TIMEOUT_DATA	Edit	+	-
	Edit	+	-
	Edit	+	-
	Edit	+	-

Save Return to Search Next in List Previous in List Add Update/Display

General | Pages | PeopleTools | Process | Sign-on Times | Component Interfaces | Message Monitor | Web Libraries |

The light blue style user interface option

This example represents the dark blue style.

This screenshot shows the same PeopleSoft web interface as the first one, but with a dark blue theme. The layout and content are identical, including the navigation bar, left-hand menu, main content area with the 'Component Interfaces' table, and the bottom buttons and breadcrumb trail. The only visual difference is the color scheme of the interface elements.

PeopleSoft.

Home | Worklist | Add to Favorites | Sign out

New Window | Help

Sign-on Times | **Component Interfaces** | Message Monitor | Web Libraries

Permission List: PTPT1200
Description: PeopleTools

Component Interfaces Customize | Find | First 1-7 of 7 Last

Name	Edit		
CURRENCY_CD_CI	Edit	+	-
MOBILE_PREFS_CI	Edit	+	-
USER_PROFILE	Edit	+	-
WF_TIMEOUT_DATA	Edit	+	-
	Edit	+	-
	Edit	+	-
	Edit	+	-

Save Return to Search Next in List Previous in List Add Update/Display

General | Pages | PeopleTools | Process | Sign-on Times | Component Interfaces | Message Monitor | Web Libraries |

The dark blue style user interface option

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Application Designer for your new release.

To change your styles, you must delete the substyle sheets associated with the classic style and replace them with either the light or dark blue substyle sheet.

Note. The new user interface looks are supported by Internet Explorer release 5 and above and Netscape Navigator release 6 and above. If using a browser and release other than these, the system defaults to the classic style.

To enable one of the new user interface looks:

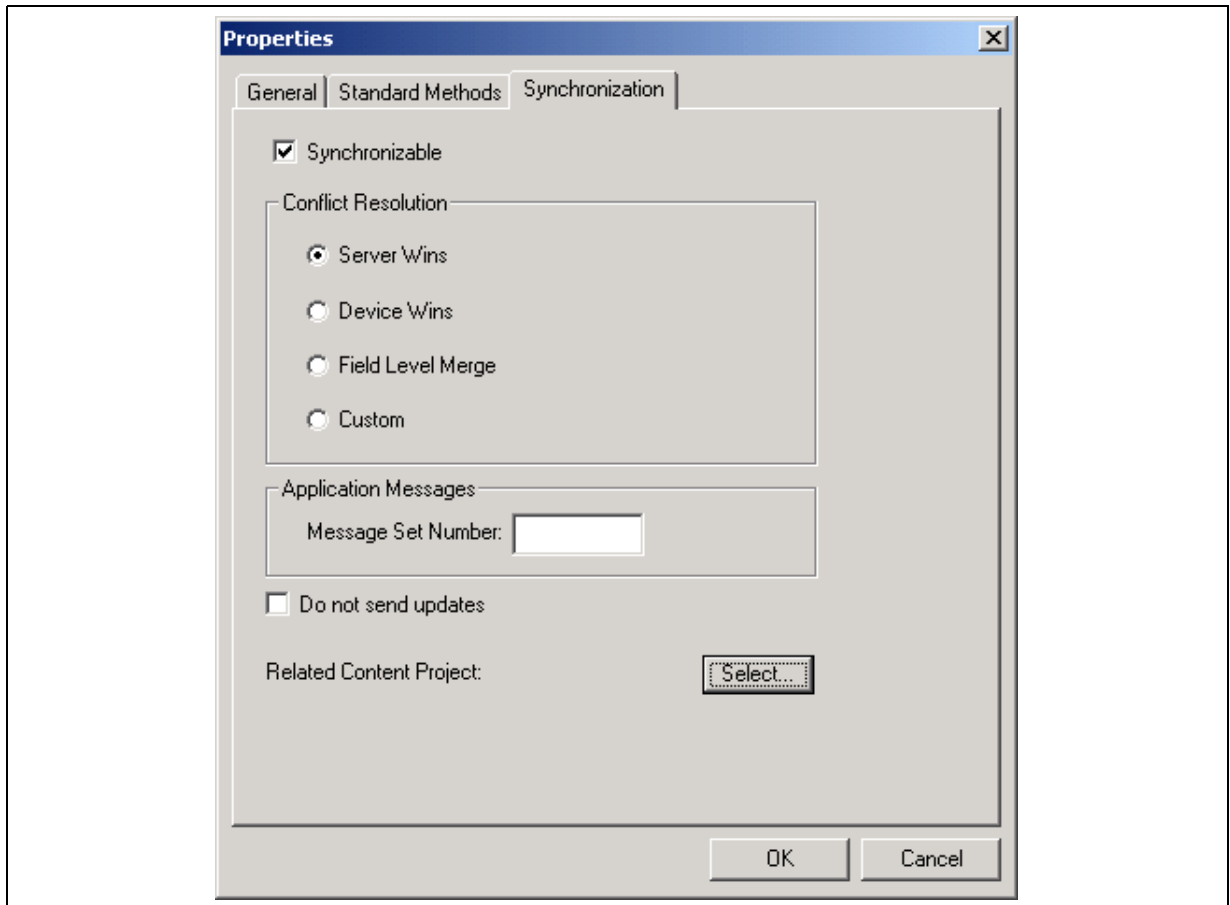
1. In Application Designer, open the stylesheet PSSTYLEDEF.
2. Select the PSALTERNATE Sub Style Sheet, and click Delete.
3. Select Insert, Insert Sub Style Sheet.
4. Select PSALTERNATE_LIGHTBLUE or PSALTERNATE_DARKBLUE.
5. Repeat steps 1 through 4 for the PTSTYLEDEF and PSACE Sub Style Sheets, making sure to use the same extension (_LIGHTBLUE or _DARKBLUE) as you did for PSALTERNATE.
6. Select Save.
7. Open the stylesheet PSQUERYSTYLEDEF.
8. Select the PTQUERYSTYLESUB Sub Style Sheet, and click Delete.
9. Select Insert, Insert Sub Style Sheet.
10. Select PTQUERYSTYLESUB_LIGHTBLUE or PTQUERYSTYLESUB_DARKBLUE.
Use the same extension as you did in Step 4.
11. Click Save.

Task B-2: Change the User Interface for Mobile

You use related content projects to synchronize extraneous PeopleSoft PeopleTools objects to a mobile device. In particular, you can use a related content project to synchronize a new or customized stylesheet to the mobile device. Related content projects are associated with a component interface. Oracle recommends that you associate a given related content project with a synchronizable component interface that is common to your mobile application.

To change the user interface look for mobile applications:

1. Follow the procedure in the previous task, “Change the User Interface,” to add the new or customized stylesheet to a PeopleTools project.
2. In Application Designer, open a synchronizable component interface that is common to your mobile application.
3. Open the Properties dialog box from the pop-up menu.
4. Select the Synchronization tab.



Properties dialog box: Synchronization tab

5. Click Select at the Related Content Project field.
6. Find and highlight the desired project and click Select.
7. Click OK.

The stylesheet will be synchronized to the mobile device during the next bootstrap or update applications synchronization.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Component Interfaces for your new release.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Mobile Agent for your new release.

APPENDIX C

Improving Performance

This appendix discusses:

- Understanding Performance Improvement
- Planning Your Upgrade for Performance
- Performing the Upgrade
- Improving Performance for Your Platform
- Consulting the Global Support Center

Understanding Performance Improvement

Performance is always a challenge when you are upgrading. Much of the data currently in your database will be affected. No other batch processing works quite like it. Upgrade performance is sensitive to your unique environment and data. These performance recommendations are designed to help you improve performance during your upgrade.

Task C-1: Planning Your Upgrade for Performance

Review the following guidelines to help plan for better upgrade performance:

- Provide as much hardware, memory, and disk space as you can.
- Run long processes on a dedicated server, not the client. Configure that server similarly to your production environment.
- Size the Copy of Production database (Target) like your production database — allow for growth.
- Use a dedicated workstation, configured like the production environment.
- Provide an application server and process scheduler for the Target database on the new PeopleSoft release.
- Look for fragmented tables. Resize or reorganize the initial and next extends accordingly.
- Know which tables are your largest. This information will be valuable during the upgrade.

Task C-2: Performing the Upgrade

This section discusses:

- Verifying the Database Structure Task
- Creating and Altering SQL Scripts
- Performing Data Conversion

Task C-2-1: Verifying the Database Structure Task

When performing the “Modifying the Database Structure” task, perform all recommended update statistics, so the optimizer can make a good decision.

Task C-2-2: Creating and Altering SQL Scripts

The following list provides tips to use when performing the “Modifying the Database Structure” task.

- Perform all recommended update statistics, so the optimizer can make a good decision.
- Look for large tables that are being altered. Create separate scripts for each of these tables and run the script concurrently with your other alter scripts. You can run these concurrently even if you are using the Alter by Rename build option because each table creation uses an independent temporary table name in the new PeopleSoft release (*PSYrecname*).
- Run your create table script concurrently with the alter tables without deletes script.
- Some indexes will not create during alter without deletes because of a unique key violation. You can expect this because index structures have changed. The data in these indexes will be corrected during data conversion. You can create the index as a non-unique key for data conversion. Create this non-unique index, without the field that caused the error, so that data conversion does not have to update the index as well as the data pages as it corrects the data in this field.

Task C-2-3: Performing Data Conversion

Oracle delivers the Change Assistant templates to run the steps on the client by default. The server can run Application Engine programs. You may want to run these programs on the server to increase performance. Change Assistant uses the PSEMHUB and PSEMAgent to execute jobs to the server. You will need to configure and start your Environment Management Hub and Agent, enter the Environment Management information into the Change Assistant options, set your Change Assistant mode, select the Perform Server Processing check box, and modify the run location of the steps you wish to run on the server. Consider running data conversion application engine programs concurrently as they were designed with no dependencies between programs. Any exceptions to this are noted in the documentation. If you would like to take advantage of concurrent processing, modify the step properties and set the Run Concurrently option to Yes.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Software Updates for your new release.

Task C-3: Improving Performance for Your Platform

This section discusses:

- Using Oracle
- Using DB2

Task C-3-1: Using Oracle

You should use the cost-based optimizer during the upgrade. The application engine scripts use MetaSQL to run the update statistics command at various times during data conversion. If you are running the rule-based optimizer, you will not take advantage of these statements.

When running the alter scripts, remember the Oracle hint `/*APPEND*/`. This command will improve the performance of your alter script if you are doing an “Alter by Rename.” This hint performs like an Oracle Direct Load Insert and does not capture redo or recovery information. The syntax is as follows:

```
INSERT  /*+ APPEND */  INTO TABLENAME (FIELD1, FIELD2, ...
```

Make sure your database administrator has turned autoextend on. Autoextend allows tablespaces to grow larger than their set maximum size and will be useful during the upgrade process since tablespaces grow several times larger than they would in production.

Alter the tablespace for PSIMAGE and increase it to 200 MB; autoextend on the next 10 MB; set the maxsize to *unlimited*.

Task C-3-2: Using DB2

Perform all recommended update statistics on the system catalog as well as the application tablespaces.

Interspersed throughout the Application Engine data conversion programs are steps that make a dynamic call for RUNSTATS to be performed against selected tables. An example of how this is used follows:

- Step01 - Start with an empty Temp_Table_TAO.
- Step02 - INSERT 60,000 rows into the Temp_Table_TAO.
- Step03 - Application Engine Step calls %UpdateStats(Temp_Table_TAO).
- Step04 - You can now perform SQL against Temp_Table_TAO using new statistics.

This will allow you to use indexes when processing against Temp_Table_TAO. If DB2 z/OS is not configured correctly, Application Engine programs skip these steps and the performance of the SQL steps that follow will suffer.

In order to take advantage of the %UpdateStats feature, at least one of these conditions must be met:

- You implemented the DSNUTILS stored procedure.
- You followed the enhanced installation path.

See the Enterprise PeopleTools Installation for DB2 UDB for z/OS for your new release.

Note. If you disable the %UpdateStats feature of Application Engine, it will adversely affect the performance of your data conversion programs, because statistics will not update when the tables are loaded with large volumes of data.

Task C-4: Consulting the Global Support Center

If you do have a problem with your upgrade, contact the Global Support Center (GSC). Oracle will be able to give you a solution to the problem faster if you supply the following information:

- Include details about the table row counts and indexes available on the tables involved in the processing:
 - Include indexes in your physical database, not those defined in Application Designer.
 - Mention any additional indexes that you custom-added; they could be getting in the way.
- Include RDBMS (Oracle, SQL Server, or DB2, and so on) and RDBMS release (for example, Oracle 7.3 or 8.16).
- If you are running on Oracle, specify whether you are running in cost-based or rule-based mode.
- Include the PeopleSoft upgrade path for both PeopleTools and the application.
- Provide trace files: PeopleTools trace and RDBMS-specific trace files, SQL explains, and so on.

APPENDIX D

Planning for Upgrade Testing

This appendix discusses:

- Understanding Testing Techniques
- Deciding When to Test
- Evaluating Your Testing Requirements
- Defining Your Testing Strategy
- Determining the Testing Conditions
- Developing Your Test Plan
- Developing Test Scripts
- Reviewing Tips and Techniques

Understanding Testing Techniques

As with any project, testing is a critical part of your upgrade project. With proper testing, you can ensure that you upgrade successfully and you are ready for your Move to Production.

Upgrades vary in complexity and scale from release to release and customer to customer, so the testing periods and the activities required to perform testing vary from upgrade to upgrade. Because PeopleSoft cannot anticipate how every organization uses the system to fit their own business practices, including customizations and data setup, PeopleSoft does not deliver upgrade test scripts. However, there are some general testing guidelines that you can follow to assist with your upgrade testing. In this section, you will find information that will help you plan your testing efforts.

Task D-1: Deciding When to Test

An effective testing strategy involves an understanding of the stages of a PeopleSoft upgrade and where, within these stages, testing should be performed. You can take more than one approach and use more than one method to test your upgrade.

Task D-2: Evaluating Your Testing Requirements

To evaluate your testing requirements, you need the following information:

- The number of products and modules you currently have in your production database.
- The number of customizations you have in your production database.
- The functional design and business requirements addressed by each customization.
- Your online, batch, and reporting business processes that you want to include in testing.

Task D-3: Defining Your Testing Strategy

This section discusses:

- Understanding Your Testing Strategy
- Evaluating Unit Testing
- Evaluating System Testing
- Evaluating Integration Testing
- Evaluating Parallel Testing
- Evaluating Performance Testing
- Evaluating User Acceptance Testing
- Evaluating Regression Testing

Understanding Your Testing Strategy

Once you evaluate your testing requirements, you can determine what types of testing you need. You should define the tests to be performed for the project and the goals of each test—including roles and responsibilities, test-case management, control points, and success criteria. In addition, you should define and document the scope of each type of testing. Use the definitions below to determine the levels of testing required in your organization.

To ensure upgrade success, be sure to train upgrade members before the upgrade. It is critical to have educated testers to ensure adequate test coverage of new functionality.

The testing types below do not necessarily run systematically, one after another. Different test conditions can sometimes run in parallel.

Important! It is important to test not only your customizations and changes in your new release but also your standard business practices. By doing this you ensure that your normal business practices have not been altered by the new release and/or your customizations.

Task D-3-1: Evaluating Unit Testing

In this stage of testing, you have completed your upgrade tasks and your database is now at the new release level. However, you should unit test before you use the new system. Unit testing validates data, business rules, and business process requirements. In addition, it ensures that business processes work as designed and your database is ready for full functionality testing. The processes for performing unit testing are described below:

- Test individual online transactions and batch processes on the upgraded database.
- Validate data converted during the upgrade.
- Verify that you can access existing data and enter new data successfully.
- Test customizations reapplied to the upgraded database.
- Each customization is tested individually along with all related processes.
- Business processes are not tested.
- Test scripts are not required.
- Test – Document – Resolve issues – Retest.

Task D-3-2: Evaluating System Testing

System testing ensures that all business functions and processes execute appropriately from the customer's view. Business processes are tested from beginning to end during system testing; this is sometimes referred to as end-to-end testing. The processes for performing system testing are described below:

- Create system test environment via a test Move to Production.
- Test inbound and outbound interfaces and related business processes.
- Test online business processes using relevant security (that is, user IDs, roles, and permission lists).
- Test batch business processes.
- Test reporting processes (SQR, PS/Query, nVision, and Crystal).
- Test customizations to business processes.
- Perform using test scripts.
- Compare expected results to actual results.
- Test – Document – Resolve issues – Retest – Document – Sign off.

Task D-3-3: Evaluating Integration Testing

After system testing, you perform integration testing. In this stage, you test business processes and groups of related business processes within the application to determine that they function as designed. In addition, you ensure that any design flaws are resolved before user testing. The following list of activities describes integration testing:

- Create integration test environment via a test Move to Production.
- Test specific business processes.
- Test integration between modules and business processes.
- Perform using test scripts.
- Compare expected results to actual results.

- Test – Document – Resolve issues – Retest – Document – Sign off.

Task D-3-4: Evaluating Parallel Testing

Parallel testing validates that the current production system and the upgraded database generate the expected results for specific business events. Parallel testing is optional, but frequently used to ensure that the new release will generate the same results given the same testing scenarios. The processes for performing parallel testing are described below:

- Create a parallel test environment via a test Move to Production.
The Copy of Production should be taken before the major business processes/events are executed so that the same processes can be run during the parallel test.
- Retain any output from production processes for later comparison.
- Run the same business processes/events in the upgraded database.
- Compare results generated in the production system with the results generated using the upgraded database.
- Perform using test scripts.
- Test – Document – Resolve issues – Retest – Document – Sign off.

Task D-3-5: Evaluating Performance Testing

You conduct performance testing to determine if the system can accomplish stated objectives within a specified time period. Performance of the current production system is often used as a baseline. The processes for performing performance testing are described below:

- Define performance objectives for each business process included in the scope of the test.
- Perform business process.
- Monitor performance.
- Compare actual performance and acceptance criteria.
- Perform using test scripts.
- Test – Document – Resolve issues – Retest – Document – Sign off.

Task D-3-6: Evaluating User Acceptance Testing

User acceptance testing determines if day-to-day users can complete daily work activities within the system with an acceptable level of effort. For example, run through business processes such as hiring, terminating, and paying an employee in Human Resources or creating, editing, and posting journals in Financials. The processes for performing user acceptance testing are described below:

- Functional resources should execute test scenarios (with their appropriate production security access to ensure they have access to all the components, pages, and processes used in their daily functions).
- Perform using test scripts.
- User testing should not be performed with developer or Super User access.
- Test – Document – Resolve issues – Retest – Test – Document – Sign off.

Task D-3-7: Evaluating Regression Testing

You perform regression, or re-testing, if problems were found and resolved or changes were made during any of the previous tests. This stage of testing validates the test Move to Production and Move to Production parts of the upgrade. When all the tests have received sign-off, you will use the initial Copy of Production to upgrade the production database/environment. You then perform a test move into the production environment and customers confirm that the test move executed successfully. At this point you conduct regression testing. The following tips will assist you with regression testing:

- Ensure that no new defects have been introduced during the move.
- Execute a predefined set of scripts to confirm the test move.
- Performed by Functional Resources before *Go Live*.
- Rerun scripts from previous testing.

Task D-4: Determining the Testing Conditions

After you identify the types of testing to include in your upgrade, determine conditions for each stage of testing. Be sure to test the actual test Move to Production to resolve any technical issues in the upgrade process itself in addition to performing functional application testing. Perform the following actions for each testing type:

- Determine criteria for successful completion.
- Determine which tests you can run concurrently and which you must run serially.
- Set up test plans and test scripts you will need.
- Define the testing environment.
- Define issue resolution procedures.
- Define change control and migration procedures.
- Define which third-party tools you must install and configure.
- Identify database maintenance procedures, for example, backup and refresh.
- Evaluate the need for a testing tool to aid in the testing process.

Task D-5: Developing Your Test Plan

If you have test plans from your implementation or previous upgrades, consider modifying them for this upgrade project, ensuring that you incorporate features and functions delivered with the new release. Use existing test plans and scripts wherever possible. Identify modifications during the fit/gap analysis and complete script generation during the initial upgrade. Based on the objectives and scope defined in your testing strategy, identify the following items for each type of testing:

- Test procedures
- Assumptions
- Timing
- Deliverables

- Acceptance criteria
- Roles and responsibilities
- Resource requirements
- Training requirements
- Test environment
- Data requirements
- Issue and change control tracking procedures
- Testing Tools

Task D-6: Developing Test Scripts

The process of developing test scripts can assist with detecting problems in the requirements or design of an application. It requires thinking through the entire operation of the application. For this reason, you may find it useful to start preparing test scripts early in the upgrade cycle and, if possible, base them on existing test scripts from your implementation project or previous upgrade.

If you have test scripts from your original implementation, recycle them and modify them to accommodate new functionality. That way, you can be sure to cover your critical end-to-end business processes. You will also want to focus additional testing time on your customizations to verify that they have upgraded successfully.

If you do not have test scripts from your implementation, you can create them by documenting what you currently do within the system.

Create a test script for each business process to define the Action or Event, Input, and the expected result to determine if a feature of an application is working correctly. Functional people who are aware of current processes should write your test scripts. However, when writing test scripts, assume the person testing does not know how to use the system. Use the following procedure for developing test scripts:

- Test scripts should contain specifics, such as test identifier, test name, objective, test conditions and setup, input data requirements, steps, and expected results.
- Write as a step-by-step guide, stating what data should be entered, when, and where.
- Organize by module, business process, and process cycles.
- Create with full production security in mind.
- Create early in the upgrade process.

Make sure that your tests are consistent with the following tips:

- Action
 - Include the script name, description, and purpose.
 - Include the navigation steps within the PeopleSoft system.
 - Include navigation steps outside the PeopleSoft system.
- Input
 - Include security requirements: what User ID, Role, and Permission List should be used to perform the test.

- Specify key data elements: entering new or accessing existing data.
- Results
 - Include the exact results.
 - Print screens to support the results and print the report output.

Task D-7: Reviewing Tips and Techniques

This section discusses:

- Reducing the Time of Upgrade Process
- Performing Security Testing
- Performing Testing on Up to Date Data
- Performing Test Move to Production
- Tracking Issues
- Reviewing Testing Tools
- Discussing Change Control
- Discussing Back Up Procedures
- Evaluating Unexpected Results
- Evaluating Reasons for Failure

Task D-7-1: Reducing the Time of Upgrade Process

All testing can be performed at the end, including running the tests on the current system to obtain results for comparison. One way to reduce the overall timeframe of an upgrade is to execute the tests on the current system while the upgrade is in progress. This way you will have the results ready when the upgraded database is to be tested. This can be achieved by taking two copies of the production database at the start of the upgrade. Only one copy is upgraded, while the other remains at current release. The testing time is now reduced to only performing the tests on one database.

After each test Move to Production, you may want to turn over the upgraded database to the testing team while the technical team begins a new iteration of the test Move to Production. Conducting the two efforts in parallel may decrease the overall time required to upgrade. Any issues that are found by the testing team can be incorporated into the newly upgraded database as soon as it is available.

One approach that may be used for the Move to Production is to run the production database and upgraded database in parallel to ensure that key business processes operate as expected. Although this may require dual maintenance of data during the parallel testing period, it may minimize the impact of the actual Move to Production. If you are interested in using this method, once you have performed a test Move to Production to your satisfaction, schedule the production cutover weekend. Then, perform the next test Move to Production during that weekend. Bring the existing production system back up and run the upgraded database concurrently. If, after comparing the outcome of your critical business processes, you are satisfied with the results, simply set the upgraded database to your production system. If you are not satisfied with the results, make the necessary adjustments and perform another test Move to Production.

Task D-7-2: Performing Security Testing

It is very important that you test security on each test pass you complete. Security is a vital part of the upgrade process and if it is not tested properly before you go live with your new release, there is a great potential for failure.

Task D-7-3: Performing Testing on Up to Date Data

The previous technique will mean that testing is performed on *old* data. The copies of production may have been taken some weeks or months in the past. It will confirm that the data you started with has upgraded successfully. However, it may be required to perform the tests on the most recent data set as follows:

- Take a copy of production and upgrade
- Perform all phases of testing on the upgrade version up to unit testing
- Determine that the database is ready for full functionality testing

Task D-7-4: Performing Test Move to Production

Performing a test Move to Production is a good technique for assuring database readiness as follows:

- Take two up to date copies of the production database.
- Perform the test Move to Production steps to upgrade one of the databases.
- Execute test scripts on the remaining database.
- Perform tests on the upgraded database and compare results.

Task D-7-5: Tracking Issues

You should implement a method for tracking the tests and issues discovered during testing. Tracking issues and resolutions on a central document serves as a communication tool and minimizes duplication effort. The following tips should be considered while tracking issues:

- Categorize issues:
Critical, Major, Minor, Cosmetic
- Use a central document repository or tracking tool

Task D-7-6: Reviewing Testing Tools

SQA Robot :

- Records key strokes (like a macro recorder) into Visual Basic scripts.
- Useful for regression testing.
- SQA Manager—can be used to simulate multiple users.

Test Director by Mercury/Interactive:

- Tool that manages test scripts—tracks execution and defects.
- Useful for regression testing.

Task D-7-7: Discussing Change Control

Make sure that you have a procedure for implementing changes during the testing stage. You may have several databases, if server space permits. All changes should be made in a master database. If an issue is found during testing, the resolution should be applied to the master database and promoted via pre-defined migration procedures. Remember that a master database will also be required to perform the Move to Production.

Task D-7-8: Discussing Back Up Procedures

The following tips should be considered when backing up your data:

- Back up at baseline before testing (use a backup technique that will allow you to restore individual tables).
- Back up at key points for point in time testing.
- Implement refresh procedures to avoid duplicate data.

Task D-7-9: Evaluating Unexpected Results

In the event you receive unexpected results and you cannot determine their cause, attempt to replicate any issues you encounter in your Copy of Production database on a delivered Demo database. If the issue does occur on Demo, it should be reported to the Global Support Center. Check PeopleSoft Customer Connection to see if a fix has been posted to resolve the issue.

See PeopleSoft Customer Connection (Updates + Fixes).

Task D-7-10: Evaluating Reasons for Failure

The list below identifies reasons why your test plan might have failed:

- Testing strategy was poorly defined
- Test plans were poorly defined
- Test scripts were poorly defined
- Lack of resources and resource commitment
- Lack of understanding of the upgrade process

APPENDIX E

Preserving Queries and Tree Objects

This appendix discusses:

- Understanding Preserve Queries and Trees
- Preparing the Database
- Creating a New Project
- Comparing the New Project
- Copying the Project
- Testing the Project
- ReExporting the PeopleTools Tables

Understanding Preserve Queries and Trees

This appendix contains information for preserving queries, trees, and tree structures. At the beginning of your upgrade, you should have informed your end-users and development team that your PeopleSoft system was frozen, meaning that no changes should have been made to any PeopleSoft PeopleTools tables or objects including queries, trees, and tree structures. The freeze on PeopleSoft PeopleTools changes is important because you will lose any changes to these objects made during an upgrade to PeopleSoft PeopleTools tables. Occasionally, however, end-users may have to make critical changes to trees, tree structures, and PS/Query objects. If this has happened in your system, you can perform a process to preserve those additions and changes to trees, tree structures, and queries. You will have to work with your end-users and developers to obtain a list of queries, trees, and tree structures that you need to preserve.

You will run through the test Move to Production (MTP) steps several times for practice and testing purposes. Please note that you have the option to perform the preserving queries and trees procedure during each of your test Move to Production runs, but you must perform it during the last run of the test Move to Production. If you do not perform this procedure during your last run to preserve the trees, tree structures, and queries that have been changed since the beginning of your upgrade, they will be lost.

Note. The process outlined in this appendix to preserve trees and queries should be performed prior to data conversion so that any additional conversion would be taken care of by the appropriate data conversion programs.

This appendix includes instructions to prepare your database and create a project on which to preserve your queries, trees, and tree structure changes.

Task E-1: Preparing the Database

In this step, you create a new copy of your current production database, perform steps on the new copy, and run scripts against the new copy to update the release level.

To prepare the database:

1. At the beginning of the test Move to Production, you should make a new copy of your current production database. To preserve queries and trees, you need to make not only that Copy of Production but also an additional copy of your current production database. For clarity, Oracle refers to this additional copy of your production database as the Tree/Query Copy of Production database. So now you should have a Copy of Production database and a Tree/Query Copy of Production database.
2. Perform the test Move to Production on your Copy of Production database.
3. To obtain the queries and trees that you want to preserve, the Tree/Query Copy of Production database needs to be at the same release level as the Copy of Production database on which you just completed the test Move to Production. To update your Tree/Query Copy of Production to the same release, you run release scripts against this database. Oracle refers to this as “reling up” the database. Use the Custom Compare template to “rel up” your database. Select the Product Line *PEOPLETOOLS* when configuring your Change Assistant job.

Task E-2: Creating a New Project

Now that your Tree/Query Copy of Production is at the same release as your Copy of Production database, you create a project in the Tree/Query Copy of Production that contains all of the queries and trees that you wish to preserve.

To create a new project:

1. Sign on to the Tree/Query Copy of Production using a valid PeopleSoft User ID and launch Application Designer.
2. Select File, New...
3. Select *Project* for Object Type.
4. Select File, Save Project and enter a project name; for example, *PRESERVED*.
5. Select the Upgrade tab in Application Designer.

Note. Queries and trees do not appear in projects under the Development tab in Application Designer. To see the queries and trees that you will insert into the *PRESERVED* project in the next step, you must make sure that you are using the Upgrade view of Application Designer.

6. Select Insert, Definitions into Project...
7. Select Queries from the Definition Type drop-down list box and click Insert.
8. Using your list of identified queries that need to be preserved, highlight each one of those queries from the Application Designer list.

You can highlight more than one by holding down the Control (CTRL) key while you click the name of the query.

9. After you have highlighted all of the queries that you want to preserve, click Insert, then click Close.
Under the PRESERVED project name in the Upgrade view of Application Designer, you will see Queries as an object type in the project.
10. Double-click on queries under the PRESERVED project to see a listing of all of the queries to preserve in the right-hand window of Application Designer.
11. Select File, Save Project.
12. Repeat steps 6 through 11 for trees and tree structures.
Now your PRESERVED project should contain all of the queries, trees, and tree structures that you want to preserve.

Task E-3: Comparing the New Project

In this step, you compare the queries, trees, and tree structures that are in your PRESERVED project against your Copy of Production database. Because the tree objects in your PRESERVED project are not comparable objects in Application Designer, you must manually compare the tree objects that you want to preserve. During the query and tree structure compare process, the Application Upgrade utility sets the project flags. These flags determine whether the following actions will occur:

- Changes will be performed on the Copy of Production (Target) database when you perform the export and copy.
- Changes will be tagged as *Copy* or *Delete* operations.
- The project flags will be set to automatically take these actions or not.

These settings are determined based on whether or not the objects in the project currently exist on the Copy of Production (Target) database.

To compare the new project:

1. Sign on to the Tree/Query Copy of Production using a valid PeopleSoft User ID and launch Application Designer.
2. Select File, Open...
3. For Definition, select Project and click Open to display the list of projects.
4. Select the PRESERVED project and click Open.
5. Select Tools, Compare and Report.
6. Sign on to your Copy of Production.
7. From the Object Type box, select *Queries and Tree Structures*.
8. Click Options...
9. Select *PeopleSoft Vanilla* for the Target Orientation.
10. Select *Project* for the Compare Type.
11. Verify that the Compare Report output directory is set to the correct location.
12. Select the Report Filter tab and set the report filter check boxes appropriately for your compare.
13. Click OK.

14. Select Compare.
15. Review the compare reports for queries and tree structures. In addition, perform a manual compare of the trees that you want to preserve. Based on the results of this review, set the Action and Upgrade check box appropriately in the PRESERVED project.

Task E-4: Copying the Project

In the following steps, you copy the PRESERVED project to the Target database. This is the Copy of Production database on which you ran the test Move to Production.

To copy the project:

1. Sign on to the Tree/Query Copy of Production using a valid PeopleSoft User ID and launch Application Designer.
2. Select File, Open...
3. For Definition, select *Project* and click Open to display the list of projects.
4. Select the PRESERVED project and click Open.
5. Select Tools, Upgrade, Copy.
6. Sign on to your Copy of Production database.
7. Make sure that the Reset Done Flags and Copy Project check boxes are selected.
8. Click Select All.
9. Click Copy.
10. Using the Upgrade view of the PRESERVED project in Application Designer, review the Done flags in the project to make sure that all of the objects that you wanted to preserve were copied to the Target database.

Task E-5: Testing the Project

Now that the queries, trees, and tree structures that you wanted to preserve are in the Copy of Production database, you must test and re-test and make any necessary changes if the test results are not what you expected.

Task E-6: ReExporting the PeopleTools Tables

Once you are satisfied with the test results, you must re-export the PeopleSoft PeopleTools tables to actually preserve the queries, trees, and tree structures. During your test Move to Production, you ran MVPRDEXP.DMS to export the PeopleSoft PeopleTools tables. You will use the output files created from running this job as input files during your Move to Production. Because these files were created before copying the queries, trees, and tree structures that you wanted to preserve, the files do not contain the preserved objects, so you must run the MVPRDEXP.DMS script again. Running the MVPRDEXP.DMS script again ensures that you have the most current PeopleSoft PeopleTools tables.

To re-export the PeopleTools tables:

1. As a PeopleSoft user, launch Data Mover against your Copy of Production database and run the following script:

```
\PS_HOME\SCRIPTS\MVPRDEXP.DMS
```

2. Use the output files created during your final Move to Production.

APPENDIX F

Reviewing New VAT Functionality

This appendix discusses:

- Understanding New VAT Functionality
- Reviewing New Flags on VAT Country
- Reviewing Changes to Transaction Entry
- Reviewing VAT Treatment on Transactions
- Validating VAT Default Setup
- Restructuring Default Data
- Reviewing VAT Driver Defaults
- Reviewing VAT on Services Functionality
- Reviewing Default VAT Codes
- Reviewing Default VAT Transaction Types
- Reviewing Additional VAT Changes
- Revalidating VAT Default Setup

Understanding New VAT Functionality

Review this appendix before you continue with any Value Added Tax tasks. There is important information in this appendix that you will need to review before you continue with your upgrade.

Task F-1: Reviewing New Flags on VAT Country

Three new flags have been added to the VAT country. Review these flags to ensure that they have been set correctly. For each country in the VAT Country Table, select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, VAT and Intrastat, Value Added Tax, VAT Country.

New VAT Flag	Description
VAT Exported Service Treatment	<p>This flag allows you to specify whether exported services should be recorded as zero-rated or outside the scope of VAT.</p> <p>The data conversion will initialize this flag to Zero-Rated Export.</p>
VAT Deemed Exported Service Flag	<p>This flag allows you to indicate whether the country considers services provided domestically to foreign buyers as 'Deemed Exported' or whether they should be considered domestic transactions.</p> <p>The data conversion will initialize this flag to Domestic.</p>
VAT Imported Goods Flag	<p>This flag indicates whether the VAT on suppliers' invoices for imported goods should be treated as zero-rated input VAT only or whether the VAT should be self-assessed by recording both input and output VAT for the invoice.</p> <p>The data conversion will initialize this flag to Zero-Rated Input VAT Only.</p>

Task F-2: Reviewing Changes to Transaction Entry

The Reset VAT Treatment functionality has been replaced by two new options – Reset All VAT Default or Adjust Affected VAT Default. On the VAT transaction entry pages, if you modify fields that affect other VAT default values, you can select the Adjust Affected VAT Default button to adjust all of the VAT fields that are affected by your change. Select the Reset All VAT Default button to reset all VAT defaults based on the physical nature and locations specified on the page.

Some fields will be displayed with different field labels than in previous releases. Please refer to the table below for the list of changed field labels by product:

Product	Old Field Label	New Field Label
Billing/Order Management /Receivables	Seller's VAT Registration Country	Reporting Country
Billing/Order Management /Receivables	Buyer's VAT Registration Country	Customer Registration Country
Purchasing/eProcurement/Services Procurement/Payables	Seller's VAT Registration Country	Vendor's Registration Country
Purchasing/eProcurement/Services Procurement/Payables	Buyer's VAT Registration Country	Reporting Country
Treasury	Bank Country	Bank Location Country
Treasury	Buyer's Registration Country	Reporting Country

Task F-3: Reviewing VAT Treatment on Transactions

This section discusses:

- Understanding VAT Treatment on Transactions
- Reviewing New VAT Treatment Groups
- Reviewing Expense / Treasury Treatments
- Reviewing Self-Assess VAT Treatments
- Reviewing Transactions

Understanding VAT Treatment on Transactions

VAT Treatment values have changed in this PeopleSoft release. The new values have been added to allow for the addition of VAT on Services functionality.

In this PeopleSoft release, PeopleSoft provides new VAT Treatment translate values for handling VAT on goods and services and new VAT Treatment groups to which the VAT Treatment values belong. Within PeopleSoft transactions, the detail VAT Treatment values on the transaction lines are used to apply the precise defaults applicable to the transaction lines. Each of these detail VAT Treatment values is associated with a VAT Treatment group. The VAT Treatment Groups allow transaction lines with different VAT Treatment values to be grouped together appropriately on a single voucher, bill or Receivable item.

While stored on the transaction, VAT Treatment Group is not displayed on asset retirements, purchase orders or sales orders. VAT Treatment is not applicable to transactions in General Ledger. VAT Treatment Group is not applicable to transactions in Treasury, Expenses, or General Ledger.

Task F-3-1: Reviewing New VAT Treatment Groups

The following table illustrates the new VAT Treatment Groups, the associated VAT Treatments, and the products to which they apply.

VAT Treatment Group	VAT Treatment	Applicable Products
IMP-Import	ZGI – Zero-Rated Imported Goods	Purchasing
	SGI – Self-Assessed Imported Goods	Payables
	SSI – Self-Assessed Imported Services	
EXP – Export	ZGE – Zero-Rated Exported Goods	Asset Management Order Management Billing Receivables

VAT Treatment Group	VAT Treatment	Applicable Products
EXP – Export	ZSE – Zero-Rated Export Services OSE – Outside of Scope Exported Services DSE – Deemed Exported Services	Order Management Billing Receivables
EUP – Intra-EU Purchase	EGP – Intra-EU Acquisition ESP – Intra-EU Purchase of Services	Purchasing Payables
EUS – Intra-EU Supply	EGS – Intra-EU-Sale of Goods ESS – Intra-EU Sale - Simplification	Asset Management Order Management Billing Receivables
EUS – Intra-EU Supply	ZESS – Zero-Related Intra-EU Supply of Services OESS – Outside of Scope Intra-EU Supply of Services	Order Management Billing Receivables
DOMP – Domestic Purchases	DGP - Domestic Purchase of Goods DSP – Domestic Purchase of Services	Purchasing Payables
DOMS – Domestic Sales	DGS – Domestic Sale of Goods EGDS – EU Distance Sales of Goods	Asset Management Order Management Billing Receivables
DOMS – Domestic Sales	DSS – Domestic Sales of Services	Order Management Billing Receivables

VAT Treatment Group	VAT Treatment	Applicable Products
NONE – None	NONE – None	Purchasing Payables Asset Management Order Management Billing Receivables
OOS – Outside of Scope	OOS – Outside of Scope	Purchasing Payables Asset Management Order Management Billing Receivables

Task F-3-2: Reviewing Expense / Treasury Treatments

The following table shows the VAT Treatment values that are applicable to Expense and Treasury only. There is no corresponding VAT Treatment Group for these VAT Treatments.

VAT Treatment	Applicable Product
DGP – Domestic Purchase of Goods DSP – Domestic Purchase of Services FGE – Foreign Expenses of Goods FSE – Foreign Expenses of Services	Expenses
DSP – Domestic Purchase of Services SSI – Self-Assessed Imported Services ESP – Intra-EU Purchase of Services	Treasury

Task F-3-3: Reviewing Self-Assess VAT Treatments

The following VAT Treatments applicable for Purchasing, Payables and Treasury (for services only) allow output VAT recorded on purchase transactions to be self-assessed. This will automatically set the Record Output VAT flag (VAT_RCRD_OUTPT_FLG) to Y on the following transactions:

- SSI – Self-Assessed Imported Services
- SGI – Self-Assessed Imported Goods
- EGP – Intra-EU Acquisition
- ESP – Intra-EU Purchase of Services

Note. The Record Input VAT and Record Output VAT flags have been removed from the Treasury Accounting Template VAT Driver. These flags are now set on the transaction based on the VAT Treatment.

Task F-3-4: Reviewing Transactions

The table below shows the VAT Treatment values used in previous releases and how those values are updated by the data conversion program on your existing transactions.

Previous VAT Treatment Values	Products	New VAT Treatment Group Values	New VAT Treatment Values
DOM – Domestic	OM, BI, AR	DOMS – Domestic Sale	DGS – Domestic Goods Sale
DOM – Domestic	PO, AP	DOMP – Domestic Purchase	DGP – Domestic Goods Purchase
DOM – Domestic	EX	Not Applicable	DGP – Domestic Goods Purchase
DOM – Domestic	TR	Not Applicable	DSP – Domestic Services Purchase
DDS – Domestic Distance Sale	OM, BI, AR	DOMS – Domestic Sale	EGDS – EU Goods Distance Sale
EXP – Export	OM, BI, AR	EXP – Export	ZGE – Zero-rated Goods Export
EUS – Intra-EU Sale	OM, BI, AR	EUS – EU Sale	EGS – EU Goods Sale
EUT – Intra-EU Sale, Simple.	OM, BI, AR	EUS – EU Sale	ESS – EU Sale, Simplification (goods)
EUA – Intra-EU Acquisition	PO, AP	EUP – Intra-EU Purchase	EGP – EU Goods Purchase
IMP – Import	PO, AP	IMP – Import	ZGI – Zero-Rated Goods Import
OOS – Outside of Scope	OM, BI, AR, PO, AP	OOS – Outside of Scope	OOS – Outside of Scope
OSS – Outside of Scope	TR	Not applicable	OOS – Outside of Scope
FOR – Foreign (Expense)	EX	Not applicable	NONE – None
FSR – Foreign Service	TR	Not applicable	ESP – EU Service Purchase SSI – Self-Assess Service Import
NON – None	EX	Not applicable	NONE – None

Previous VAT Treatment Values	Products	New VAT Treatment Group Values	New VAT Treatment Values
Blank	OM, BI, AR, AP, PO	NONE – None	NONE – None
Blank	TR	Not applicable	NONE - None

Task F-4: Validating VAT Default Setup

In the new PeopleSoft release, most VAT defaults and options have been removed from application VAT driver tables and moved to a single common VAT Defaults table. All VAT defaults defined in the procurement VAT defaults, sales VAT defaults, and expenses VAT defaults tables have also been moved to the new VAT Defaults table.

Prior to reviewing the VAT defaults, run the VAT Setup Validation Report to determine whether there are any major gaps in your defaulting structure. Then, use the information provided in the report to assist you in performing the following steps.

To run the Setup Validation Report, select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, VAT and Intrastat, Value Added Tax.

Task F-5: Restructuring Default Data

With this new VAT defaulting architecture, consider restructuring your default data. The principle is still to specify the most common value for a VAT field at its highest level in the hierarchy and then to specify exceptions at each of the lower levels only as required. Follow the suggestions below to help you restructure your default data.

- Specify more defaults by country or by country and state/province. For example, in previous releases, you may have specified a default VAT Transaction Type for a Voucher Origin specifically created for use by a particular business unit because you could not specify a default VAT Transaction Type for each country at the Payables Option Level. Therefore, you may wish to replace the Voucher Origin VAT Transaction Type defaults with a country-specific Payables Option default in the new PeopleSoft release.
- Specify defaults for the new VAT drivers. For example, in the current PeopleSoft release, defaults can be specified for Bill Sources and Bill Types. Therefore, you may wish to move some Billing VAT defaults up from lower levels in the hierarchy to the Source or the Type.
- Specify additional defaults for existing VAT drivers. For example, in the current PeopleSoft release VAT Code can be specified at the Business Unit level in the hierarchy. Therefore, you may want to move some VAT Code defaults up from lower levels in the hierarchy to the Business Unit.
- Specify service-related defaults for various VAT drivers. The addition of VAT on Services in this PeopleSoft release has a significant impact on the number of VAT fields to be defaulted onto transactions and the complexity of the default data exception structure. If you are required to treat services differently from physical goods for VAT purposes, you will want to define services-specific defaults.

Task F-6: Reviewing VAT Driver Defaults

This section discusses:

- Understanding VAT Driver Defaults
- Reviewing Existing VAT Defaults
- Reviewing New VAT Defaults
- Reviewing Defaults for New VAT Drivers

Understanding VAT Driver Defaults

Navigate to the new VAT Defaults table by selecting Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, VAT and Intrastat, Value Added Tax, VAT Defaults. Review your default setup and determine where you might want to restructure.

Task F-6-1: Reviewing Existing VAT Defaults

Use the list below to verify that existing defaults and options have been copied correctly for your existing VAT drivers.

- Bank Branch
- Bank Code
- Payables Business Unit Options
- Receivables Business Unit Options
- Purchasing Business Unit Options
- Treasury Business Unit Options
- Asset Management Business Unit
- Payables Business Unit
- Billing Business Unit
- Expenses Business Unit
- General Ledger Business Unit
- Order Management Business Unit
- Purchasing Business Unit
- VAT Country
- Customer
- Expense Type
- Account ChartField
- Voucher Control Group
- Sales Line Identifier
 - Product
 - Charge Code

- Discount Code
- Surcharge Code
- Item Category
- Voucher Origin
- Sales Line Identifier Group
- Product Group
- Item / Purchasing Attributes
- Business Unit Item
- General Ledger Journal Source
- Treasury Accounting Template
- VAT Entity Registration
- Vendor
- Vendor Location

Note. Allow Override of Recovery/Rebate percent was previously defined on the Expenses Business Unit Options. In this new release, this is now defined for the Expense Business Unit. Each set of Expenses Business Unit Options was copied with the value specified on the Business Unit Options table to the VAT Defaults table for all Expenses Business Units that were using that set of options.

Task F-6-2: Reviewing New VAT Defaults

New VAT Defaults are now available for existing VAT drivers in this PeopleSoft release. Use the table below to determine whether you should define values for any of these new VAT defaults.

VAT Driver	VAT Default Field
Item Category	VAT Use Type Not Subject to VAT Suspension Flag
Vendor Location	VAT Applicable VAT Use Type
Vendor	VAT Use Type VAT Calculation Type Goods and Services VAT Declaration Points VAT Tolerance Amount, Percent, Currency, and Exchange Rate Type VAT Rounding Rule
Voucher Control Group	VAT Use Type
Voucher Origin	VAT Use Type
PO Options	VAT Applicable

VAT Driver	VAT Default Field
AP Options	VAT Applicable
Expenses Business Unit	VAT Applicable VAT Tolerance Currency and Exchange Rate Type Allow Override of Recovery/Rebate Percent
Sales Line Identifier: Discount Surcharge	Not subject to VAT Suspension Flag
Sales Line Identifier Group: Product Group	Not subject to VAT Suspension Flag
Billing Business Unit	VAT Applicable
Order Management Business Unit	VAT Applicable
AR Options	VAT Applicable
Asset Management Business Unit	VAT Applicable
Journal Source	VAT Applicable
General Ledger Business Unit	VAT Applicable
[TR] Accounting Template	Not Subject to VAT Suspension Flag Place of Supply State
Bank Branch	VAT Applicable Place of Supply State
Treasury Options	VAT Applicable Place of Supply State
VAT Country	VAT Applicable

Task F-6-3: Reviewing Defaults for New VAT Drivers

New VAT Drivers have been added as well. Use the table below to review the defaults that may already be defined for each of these products to determine whether you want to define defaults for these new drivers.

Applicable Product	New VAT Driver
Asset Management	Asset Class

Applicable Product	New VAT Driver
Billing	Bill Source Bill Type Generic Sales Line Identifier (allows you to define defaults for the ad-hoc identifier values that may be entered in Billing). Charge Code VAT Group Generic Sales Line Identifier Group
Order Management, Billing, Receivables	Customer Location
Procurement Cards (Purchasing, Payables)	Credit Card Provider

Task F-7: Reviewing VAT on Services Functionality

The new PeopleSoft release now includes functionality for VAT on services. As part of this enhancement, new services-specific defaults have been created. You are now able to specify separate goods and services defaults for VAT Codes, VAT Transaction Types and VAT Declaration Points.

The data conversion process will have initialized both the goods and services – related defaults with the single default value that had been defined in previous releases. Review and correct if necessary these defaults.

The Physical Nature flag for existing transaction lines has been set to *G* (Goods) by the data conversion. If you should return to any existing transactions and change the physical nature for the transaction line to *S* (Services), you should review the VAT information that has been recorded for that transaction line and update it to reflect any defaults that have been set up specifically for services.

Task F-8: Reviewing Default VAT Codes

This section discusses:

- Reviewing Codes for Goods and Services
- Reviewing Non-Zero Rate VAT Codes
- Reviewing VAT Codes Labeled as Taxable
- Reviewing General Ledger VAT Codes
- Reviewing Zero-Rate VAT Codes
- Reviewing Existing VAT Code Values
- Reviewing New VAT Code Defaults

Task F-8-1: Reviewing Codes for Goods and Services

As noted in the section above, separate default VAT Codes may be defined for goods and service transactions. Review the values that have been populated by the data conversion program for the services-specific VAT codes and correct them if necessary.

Task F-8-2: Reviewing Non-Zero Rate VAT Codes

In the new PeopleSoft release, Non-Zero-Rate VAT Codes may now be defined at the Business Unit/Business Unit Option level. Review the new defaulting structure and determine whether you want to define default VAT Codes for any business units. If so, you may be able to eliminate some defaults defined at lower levels in the hierarchy.

Task F-8-3: Reviewing VAT Codes Labeled as Taxable

The default VAT Codes previously defined on the VAT Country and in the Sales, Procurement and Expenses VAT Defaults tables were used for transactions with VAT Treatments of either Domestic or Intra-EU Acquisition.

Within the new structure for this PeopleSoft release, the VAT Codes used for domestic and all self-assessed transactions are labeled 'Taxable'. Verify that the default VAT Codes previously defined on the VAT country and in the Sales, Procurement and Expenses Default tables have been copied correctly to the new VAT Defaults table for each applicable VAT Driver and are appropriate for use in the new release.

Task F-8-4: Reviewing General Ledger VAT Codes

VAT Codes used specifically in General Ledger are labeled 'General Ledger'. Verify that the default VAT Codes previously defined on the GL Account table, Journal Source and GL Business Unit have been copied correctly to the new VAT Defaults Table.

Task F-8-5: Reviewing Zero-Rate VAT Codes

In the previous PeopleSoft release, separate zero-rate VAT Codes were defined on the VAT Entity Registration table for the different types of zero-rated transactions – intra-EU sales, imports, exports, EU sales, exonerated and suspended. In the new PeopleSoft release, there is now only one default zero-rate VAT Code which will be used for all the different types of zero-rated transactions. Additionally, this default has been moved from the VAT Entity Registration level up to the VAT Country level. This new default zero-rate VAT Code on the VAT Country has not been populated by the data conversion utility. For each VAT Country, you should populate the zero-rate VAT code you want to default in your zero-rated type transactions.

Task F-8-6: Reviewing Existing VAT Code Values

The following table shows how each of the previously existing default VAT Codes have been converted in the new VAT Defaults table. Review each of these values in the VAT Defaults table to make sure they have been populated correctly.

Previous Table	Previous VAT Driver	Previous Default VAT Codes	New VAT Driver	New VAT Default Codes	Data Conversion Value
VAT_ENT_RGSTRN	VAT Entity Registration	Intra-EU Sale Exonerated Export Import Suspended	VAT Country	Zero-Rated	Blank
COUNTRY_VAT_TBL	VAT Country	VAT Code	VAT Country	Taxable Goods Purchases Taxable Services Purchases Taxable Goods Sales Taxable Services Sales	Copied from VAT Code in previous release
BUS_UNIT_TBL_AM	Asset Management Business Unit	VAT Code	Asset Management Business Unit	Taxable Goods Sales	Copied from VAT Code in previous release
BUS_UNIT_TBL_GL	General Ledger Business Unit	VAT Code	General Ledger Business Unit	General Ledger Goods General Ledger Services	Copied from VAT Code in previous release
SOURCE_TBL	General Ledger Source	VAT Code	General Ledger Source	General Ledger Goods General Ledger Services	Copied from VAT Code in previous release
GL_ACCOUNT_TBL	General Ledger Account ChartField	VAT Code	General Ledger Account ChartField	General Ledger Goods General Ledger Services	Copied from VAT Code in previous release
TRV_TR_TMPL_VAT	Treasury Accounting Template	VAT Code	Treasury Accounting Template	Taxable Services Purchases	Copied from VAT Code in previous release
VAT_DF_CD_PR	Vendor Control Group Voucher Origin Item Category Item	VAT Code	Vendor Control Group Voucher Origin Item Category Item	Taxable Goods Purchases Taxable Services Purchases	Copied from VAT Code in previous release

Previous Table	Previous VAT Driver	Previous Default VAT Codes	New VAT Driver	New VAT Default Codes	Data Conversion Value
VAT_DF_CD_SL	Customer Product Group Product Charge Code Discount Code Surcharge Code Contracts Offering VAT ID	VAT Code	Customer Sales Line Identifier Group: Product Group Sales Line Identifier: Product, Charge Code, Discount Code, Surcharge Code	Taxable Goods Sales Taxable Services Sales	Copied from VAT Code in previous release
VAT_DF_CD_EE	Expense Type	VAT Code	Expense Type	Taxable Goods Purchases Taxable Services Purchases	Copied from VAT Code in previous release

Note. Contracts Offering ID's have been converted to Product ID's so defaults will be copied over as defaults for Products with the same ID as the old Offering ID.

Task F-8-7: Reviewing New VAT Code Defaults

Default VAT codes are also available for several additional, existing VAT drivers in this PeopleSoft release. Use the table below to determine whether values should be defined for each of these default VAT codes.

VAT Driver	New VAT Default Codes
Vendor Location	Taxable Goods Purchases Taxable Services Purchases
PO Options	Taxable Goods Purchases Taxable Services Purchases
AP Options	Taxable Goods Purchases Taxable Services Purchases
Expenses Business Unit	Taxable Goods Purchases Taxable Services Purchases
Billing Business Unit	Taxable Goods Sales Taxable Services Sales
Order Management Business Unit	Taxable Goods Sales Taxable Services Sales

VAT Driver	New VAT Default Codes
AR Options	Taxable Goods Sales Taxable Services Sales
Bank Branch	Taxable Services Purchases
Bank	Taxable Services Purchases
Treasury Options	Taxable Services Purchases

Task F-9: Reviewing Default VAT Transaction Types

This section discusses:

- Reviewing New Type Descriptions
- Reviewing New Transaction Type Defaults
- Reviewing New Types on the VAT Entity

Task F-9-1: Reviewing New Type Descriptions

Several descriptions for default VAT Transaction types are more specific in the new PeopleSoft release. The defaults now specify whether the transaction type is for domestic, zero-rated or self-assessed transaction and whether the default is applicable to goods or services. Review the table below to see what the old Transaction Types have been converted to in the new PeopleSoft release.

Previous VAT Transaction Type Description	New VAT Transaction Type Description
EU Acquisition	EU Acquisitions
EU Sale	EU Goods Sales
Exempt	Exempt
Out of Scope	Out of Scope
Import	Zero-Rated Goods Import
Export	Goods Export
Exonerated	Exonerated
Suspended	Suspended
VAT Transaction Type / Transaction Type	Domestic Goods Purchases Domestic Goods Sales General Ledger Goods (GL only)

Previous VAT Transaction Type Description	New VAT Transaction Type Description
Domestic VAT Trans Type (Treasury only)	Domestic Service Purchases
Foreign Service VAT Tran Type (Treasury only)	EU Services Purchases Self-Assessed Services Imports

The following table shows how the default Transaction Types from your previous PeopleSoft release were copied into the new VAT Defaults table. Review the values in the VAT Defaults table to ensure that the VAT Transaction Types have been copied correctly.

Previous Table	VAT Driver	Previous VAT Transaction Type	New VAT Transaction Type	Data Conversion Value
VAT_ENT_RGSTN	VAT Entity Registration	EU Acquisition EU Sale Exempt Exonerated Exports Imports Outside of Scope Suspended	EU Acquisition EU Goods Sale Exempt Exonerated Goods Export Zero-Rated Goods Imports Outside of Scope Suspended	Copied from previous value
TRV_BU_UNIT_VAT TRV_TR_TMPL_VAT TRV_BRANCH_VAT TRV_BANK_CD_VAT	Treasury Business Unit Treasury Accounting Template Bank Branch Bank Code	Domestic VAT Transaction Type Foreign Service Transaction Type	Domestic Services Purchases Self-Assessed Services Imports	Copied from previous Domestic VAT Transaction Type Value Copied from a previous Foreign Service VAT Transaction Type value
VENDOR_LOC GRP_AP ORIGIN_AP_OPT BUS_UNIT_OPT_AP BUS_UNIT_OPT_PM VAT_DFLT_EXP BUS_UNIT_TBL_EX	Vendor Location Control Group Origin Payables Business Unit Option Purchasing Business Unit Options Expense VAT Defaults Table Expenses Business Unit	VAT Transaction Type	Domestic Goods Purchases Domestic Services Purchases	Copied from previous VAT Transaction Type value

Previous Table	VAT Driver	Previous VAT Transaction Type	New VAT Transaction Type	Data Conversion Value
BUS_UNIT_TBL_AM	Asset Management Business Unit	VAT Transaction Type	Domestic Goods Sale	Copied from previous VAT Transaction Type value
CUSTOMER BUS_UNIT_TBL_BI BUS_UNIT_TBL_OM BUS_UNIT_OPT_AR	Customer Billing Business Unit Order Management Business Unit Receivables Business Unit	VAT Transaction Type	Domestic Goods Sales Domestic Services Sales	Copied from previous VAT Transaction Type value
GL_ACCOUNT_TBL SOURCE_TBL BUS_UNIT_TBL_GL	GL Account ChartField Journal Source General Ledger Business Unit	VAT Transaction Type	General Ledger Goods General Ledger Services	Copied from previous VAT Transaction Type value

Task F-9-2: Reviewing New Transaction Type Defaults

In this PeopleSoft release, new default VAT Transaction Types have been created. Various new default VAT Transaction Types are being initialized by the data conversion and you need to verify that the value is correct. Others are left blank by the data conversion and will need to be populated. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, VAT and Intrastat, Value Added Tax, VAT Defaults. Select the VAT driver you want to review defaults for. Specify a VAT reporting country and if applicable, a state or province.

Transaction Type	Description	Data Conversion
Domestic Service Purchases	Domestic purchase of services	Set to the same value as Domestic purchase of goods
Domestic Service Sales	Domestic sale of services	Set to the same value as Domestic purchase of goods
EU Service Purchases	Self-assessed intra-EU purchase of services	Left blank (except for Treasury - see above)
Self-Assessed Services Imports	Self-assessed imported services	Left blank (except for Treasury – see above)
Zero-Rated EU Services Sales	Zero-rated intra-EU sale of services	Left blank
Out of Scope EU Services Sales	Outside of the scope of VAT intra-EU sale of services	Left blank
Zero-Rated Services Exports	Zero-rated export of services	Left blank
Out of Scope Services Exports	Outside the scope of VAT export of services	Left blank

Transaction Type	Description	Data Conversion
Deemed Services Exports	Service provided domestically to a foreign buyer, treated as an export	Left blank
EU Goods Distance Sale	Intra-EU Distance Sale – sale to unregistered customer in another EU country, domestic VAT charged in supplier’s country	Left blank
EU Sales, Simplification	Intra-EU Triangulation, sale between intermediary and end customer, simplification rules apply	Left blank
Self-Assessed Goods Imports	Supplier invoice for imported goods on which VAT is self-assessed	Left blank
Foreign Goods Expenses (Expenses Only)	Expense for goods incurred in a foreign country where organization is not registered for VAT	Left blank
Foreign Services Expenses (Expenses only)	Expense for services incurred in a foreign country where organization is not registered for VAT	Left blank
General Ledger Services (GL Only)	GL journal line flagged as a service	Set to the same value as General Ledger goods.

Task F-9-3: Reviewing New Types on the VAT Entity

In this PeopleSoft release, you are now able to define domestic-type default VAT Transaction Types on the VAT Entity Registration driver. Since these are new for this release, they will have been left blank by the data conversion program. For each VAT Entity, review the entries in the VAT Defaults table for each registration country, populate the new default Transaction Types:

- Domestic Goods Purchases
- Domestic Services Purchases
- Domestic Goods Sales
- Domestic Services Sales

Task F-10: Reviewing Additional VAT Changes

This section discusses:

- Understanding Additional VAT Changes
- Defining Defaults by Country and State
- Reviewing VAT SetID
- Reviewing VAT Default State

- Reviewing VAT Effective Dates
- Reviewing VAT Applicability
- Reviewing Treasury VAT Service Country
- Reviewing Changes to Expenses
- Reviewing Item Categories
- Reviewing Contracts Offering ID's
- Reviewing Required Fields
- Reviewing VAT Tolerance Information

Understanding Additional VAT Changes

There are several additional changes to the VAT defaulting structure and setup in the new PeopleSoft release. The following step outlines the changes made to VAT in this PeopleSoft release and explains the features that have been added.

Task F-10-1: Defining Defaults by Country and State

Prior to this PeopleSoft release, default VAT codes and defaults defined for the VAT Entity and Expense Types were defined by country, and if applicable, state or province. However, only a single default value could be defined for each of the VAT defaults and options specified on business units, vendors, customers and so forth.

In this PeopleSoft release, you are able to specify all VAT defaults by country and if applicable, by state or province as well. However, you are not required to specify either country or state/province. If the VAT country specifies that VAT should be tracked by state or province and you define defaults only by country, those defaults will be used for all states/provinces associated with that country. However, if you do choose to define defaults for any states/provinces for that country, those defaults will override those defined only at the country level. If you defined defaults and leave both country and state/province blank, those defaults will be used for all countries and state/provinces. However, if you do choose to define defaults for any countries and state/provinces, those defaults will override those defined with a blank country and state/province.

For each of the following tables where only a single default value could be defined, rows have been created in the VAT Defaults table with a blank country and state. Review these defaults to ensure that they are correct and determine whether you want to define further defaults for the specific countries or state/provinces.

- Bank Branch
- Bank Code
- Payables Business Unit Options
- Receivables Business Unit Options
- Purchasing Business Unit Options
- Treasury Business Unit Options
- Asset Management Business Unit
- Payables Business Unit
- Billing Business Unit
- Expenses Business Unit
- General Ledger Business Unit

- Order Management Business Unit
- Purchasing Business Unit
- Customer
- Expense Type (VAT Use Type only)
- Account ChartField
- Voucher Control Group
- Voucher Origin
- Item / Purchasing Attributes (VAT Use Type only)
- Business Unit Item
- General Ledger Journal Source
- Treasury Accounting Template
- Vendor
- Vendor Location

Task F-10-2: Reviewing VAT SetID

In previous PeopleSoft releases, you were required to enter the VAT SetID when defining default VAT Codes or VAT Transaction Types on the Procurement VAT Defaults, Sales VAT Defaults, and Expenses VAT Defaults tables. This VAT SetID was used as the SetID in the lookup lists for the VAT Code and VAT Transaction Type fields.

In this PeopleSoft release, the VAT SetID is hidden when defining defaults for all drivers other than those not keyed by SetID or Business Unit. Instead the SetID that is used in the lookup lists for all VAT fields keyed by SetID is derived based on the SetID or Business Unit that is part of the key for the VAT driver. Therefore, if you define a default VAT Code for an Inventory Item, the Item SetID is used as the Set Control Value. The record group containing the VAT Code record is used as the Record Group to select from the TableSet Controls the setID to use in the Lookup VAT Code list.

For VAT Drivers not keyed by SetID or Business Unit in the new PeopleSoft release, VAT Entity Registration and VAT Country, you are still required to specify the VAT SetID when you set up your defaults. This VAT SetID is still used as the SetID in the lookup lists for all VAT fields keyed by SetID.

If you use more than one SetID for VAT Codes or VAT Transaction Types in your previous PeopleSoft release, you need to verify that the correct SetID is now being used for your defaults. If you use different SetIDs for VAT codes or VAT Transaction Types for the same set of VAT driver keys, you must consolidate the VAT field values into a single SetID. For example, in your previous release your Procurement VAT Default production setup may have looked something like the following table:

Country	Province	Item SetID	Item ID	VAT SetID	VAT Code
CAN	AB	SHARE	10001	CAN01	CA8
AUS		SHARE	10001	AUS01	AU3
FRA		FRA01	10001	FRA01	FR5

In the new PeopleSoft release, the setup data would now look like this:

VAT Driver	Driver Key 1	Driver Key 2	Country	Province	Fieldname	Value
PURCH_ITEM_ATTR	SHARE	10001	CAN	AB	TAX_CD_VAT	CA8
PURCH_ITEM_ATTR	SHARE	10001	AUS		TAX_CD_VAT	AU3
PURCH_ITEM_ATTR	FRA01	10001	FRA		TAX_CD_VAT	FR5

Assuming that the Set Control Value of SHARE for Record Group FS_17 is pointing to the setID of CAN01, you can see CA8 but you cannot see AU3 in the Lookup VAT Code list when maintaining the VAT Defaults for Item SetID SHARE and Item ID 10001. The CAN01/CA8 and AUS01/AU3 VAT Code values must be consolidated under one setID in order for a user to be able to change the default setup data in the future as required. While multiple setIDs for VAT can work where the Driver SetID or Business Unit key differs (for example, you are not sharing either VAT data or VAT Driver data across business units or countries) the use of multiple setIDs for VAT is still not recommended.

Task F-10-3: Reviewing VAT Default State

A new field has been added to this PeopleSoft release. VAT Default State has been added to the transactions to allow more precise retrieval of defaults when VAT is being tracked by province for the VAT Reporting Country. This field will automatically be set depending on if the VAT Reporting Country was obtained. You may override this value if necessary.

This new field will be left blank for existing transactions by the data conversion. If you should return any existing transactions and wish to reapply VAT Defaults, you will need to populate this field if the VAT Reporting Country specifies that VAT be tracked by province. To determine whether a VAT Country specifies that VAT be tracked by province select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, VAT and Intrastat, Value Added Tax, VAT Country. Check the value in the Track VAT by State/Province flag.

Task F-10-4: Reviewing VAT Effective Dates

VAT Defaults are effective dated in the new PeopleSoft release. When copying values from VAT Driver tables that are effective dated, one row will be inserted into VAT Defaults tables for each effective dated row in the source VAT Driver table.

The default VAT Use Type was defined on the Expense Type table, which is effective dated. However, other defaults defined on the Expense VAT Code Defaults and Expense VAT Defaults tables were not effective dated. This means that for each Expense Type every effective data row that is inserted by the data conversion program for the Expense Types table will be populated with the same default values that had been defined in the single row in the Expense VAT defaults table. For example you may have had three effective-dated rows in the Expense Type table for Expense Type 'Dinner' dated January 1, February 1 and March 1. Each one had a different default VAT Use Type – 'USE1', 'USE2', and 'USE3'. You may also have had one row in the Expense VAT code defaults table for Expense Type 'Dinner' and the default VAT code defined there is VAT1. After the data conversion, you will have three rows in the VAT Defaults Table dated January 1, February 1, and March 1 each with default VAT USE Type of USE1, USE2, and USE3 respectively. All will have the same default VAT Code of VAT1.

Task F-10-5: Reviewing VAT Applicability

The default VAT Applicable value may now be defined for most VAT drivers. VAT Applicable on the VAT Country will be set to 'T' (Taxable) by the data conversion. Review and update this value if the majority of your transactions for that country are expected to be 'E' (Exempt) or 'O' (Outside of Scope). Review this value for the rest of the VAT Drivers at other levels in the hierarchy to determine how this value should be set.

In this PeopleSoft release, the definition of default VAT Applicable and default VAT Code are no longer linked. For any given VAT Driver, VAT Applicable no longer needs to be set to 'T' (Taxable) in order to be able to define a default VAT Code. These defaults will now be obtained independently. For example, even if you have defined the default VAT Applicable for a given VAT Driver as 'E' (Exempt) you may still define default VAT Codes that can be used in the case where a transaction line for that Driver happens to be flagged as 'T' (Taxable).

Task F-10-6: Reviewing Treasury VAT Service Country

In previous PeopleSoft releases, the field VAT Service Country (VAT_SERVICE_COUNTRY) on the Treasury Business Unit Options, Bank, Bank Branch and Accounting Template was used to specify a default country in which VAT was liable for services recorded in Treasury. In the new PeopleSoft release, each of the above VAT Drivers for which this value is defined, this field has been copied to the new VAT Place of Supply Country field (COUNTRY_VAT_SUPPLY). Review the values that have been copied into the new VAT Defaults table for each driver to ensure they are correct.

You are also now able to specify a default VAT Place of Supply State for Treasury in the new PeopleSoft release. If you have specified country that requires that VAT be tracked by province for any of the above VAT Drivers, update the VAT Place of Supply State for each of those drivers as well. To determine whether a VAT Country requires that VAT to be tracked by province, select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, VAT and Intrastat, VAT Country, and verify the value in the Track VAT by State/Province flag.

Important! You *must* set up the VAT Place of Supply Country, and if applicable the VAT Place of Supply State, at the Treasury Business Unit Options level, *leaving Country and State blank*. This is necessary because this default must be retrieved prior to when the VAT Reporting Country has been determined making this necessary.

Task F-10-7: Reviewing Changes to Expenses

The Allow Override of Recovery/Rebate Percent flag was previously defined on the Expenses Business Unit Options. This flag has been moved to the Expenses Business Unit VAT Driver for this PeopleSoft release. For each set of Expenses Business Unit Options, keyed by setID, the data conversion copied the value specified on the Business Units Options table to the VAT Defaults table for all Expenses Business Units for which that SetID has been specified on your TableSet Sharing for Record Group EX_01.

Additionally, the default VAT Calculation Type has been removed for the Expense Type VAT driver. VAT is always assumed to be inclusive for all expense sheet lines and will always calculate automatically. However you may enter an Override VAT amount if necessary.

Task F-10-8: Reviewing Item Categories

In previous PeopleSoft releases, the VAT defaults for the Item Category in the Procurement VAT Defaults table were keyed by setID and Category ID. In this PeopleSoft release, the VAT defaults for Item Category in the new VAT Defaults table are keyed by setID and Category Code.

Review any VAT defaults defined for Item Categories to ensure that these key values have been updated correctly.

Task F-10-9: Reviewing Contracts Offering ID's

In previous PeopleSoft releases the Contracts Offering ID was used as the transaction line identifier on Contracts. For VAT purposes, you were able to define an Offering VAT ID and link one or more Offering ID's to a given Offering VAT ID and define default VAT Applicable and VAT Code values for these Offering VAT ID's in the Sales VAT Defaults table.

In the current PeopleSoft release, these Contracts Offering ID's are being converted to Product ID's. The original Offering ID value will become the new Product ID. Since the Offering VAT ID's could be linked to multiple Offering ID's the defaults for each Offering VAT ID will be copied to the new VAT Defaults table for all the new Product ID's corresponding to all of the Offering ID's that were linked to the Offering VAT ID.

Task F-10-10: Reviewing Required Fields

Several VAT defaults have been defined as Required at the highest level in the VAT defaulting hierarchy. The table below shows you which defaults are required for which VAT Drivers, and what value will be applied if the source field in the prior release is blank. In the cases where no appropriate defaults can be determined, the field in the VAT Defaults table will be left blank. Review your VAT defaults setup and insure that these values are defined correctly.

VAT Driver	VAT Default Field	Default Applied if Source is Blank
Payables Business Unit Options	VAT Calculation Type VAT Override Recovery/Rebate Flag VAT Use Type	'E' (Exclusive) 'N' (Do not allow override of either) Blank
Purchasing Business Unit Options	VAT Override Recovery/Rebate Flag VAT Use Type	'N' (Do not allow override of either) Blank
Asset Management Business Unit Definition	VAT Calculation Type	'E' Exclusive
Payables Business Unit Definition	VAT Apportionment Control	'T' (Transaction Business Unit)
Expenses Business Unit Definition	VAT Apportionment Control VAT Override Recovery/Rebate Flag VAT Use Type	'D' (Distribution GL Business Unit) 'N' (Do not allow override of either) Blank
General Ledger Business Unit Definition	VAT Apportionment Control VAT Calculation Type VAT Override Recovery/Rebate Flag VAT Use Type	'D' (Distribution GL Business Unit) 'E' (Exclusive) 'N' (Do not allow override of either) Blank
Purchasing Business Unit Definition	VAT Apportionment Control	'T' (Transaction Business Unit)
VAT Country Table	VAT Applicable VAT Rounding Rule	'T' (Taxable) 'N' (Natural Rounding)

VAT Driver	VAT Default Field	Default Applied if Source is Blank
General Ledger Account ChartField	Record Input VAT Flag	(Required in prior release)
	Record Output VAT Flag	(Required in prior release)
Treasury Business Unit VAT Options	VAT Calculation Type	'I' Inclusive
	VAT Override Recovery/Rebate Flag	'N' (Do not allow override of either)
	VAT Use Type	Blank
VAT Entity Registration	Payables – Record VAT on Advance Payments for Declaration Point of 'Delivery'.	'N' (No)
		'N' (No)
	Payables – Record VAT on Advance Payments for Declaration Point of 'Invoice'	'Y' (Yes)
		'N' (No)
	Payables – Record VAT on Advance Payments for Declaration Point of 'Payment'	'N' (No)
		'Y' (Yes)
	Receivables – Record VAT on Advance Payments for Declaration Point of 'Delivery'	'N' (No)
		'N' (No)
	Receivables – Record VAT on Advance Payments for Declaration Point of 'Invoice'	
	Receivables – Record VAT on Advance Payments for Declaration Point of 'Payment'	
	Include Miscellaneous Charges in VAT Calculation Flag	
	Record VAT in Reporting Currency Flag	

VAT Driver	VAT Default Field	Default Applied if Source is Blank
VAT Entity Registration	Include Freight in VAT Calculation Flag Calculate VAT at Gross or Net Recalculate VAT at Payment VAT Declaration Point for Goods VAT Declaration Point for Services	All required in prior releases
VAT Entity Registration	Domestic Goods Purchases Transaction Type Domestic Services Purchases Transaction type Domestic Goods Sales Transaction Type Domestic Services Sales Transaction Type	All blank

Task F-10-11: Reviewing VAT Tolerance Information

The criteria for copying VAT tolerance information to the new VAT Defaults table, varies depending on the original source. You should review VAT tolerance information to ensure that it is setup correctly.

For the following VAT drivers, tolerance information was copied only when the VAT tolerance flag was set to *S*:

- Vendor Location
- Voucher Origin
- Voucher Control Group
- Expenses Business Unit Definition
- General Ledger Journal Source
- General Ledger Account Chartfield

For the following VAT drivers, tolerance information was always copied, regardless of whether the tolerance amount and/or the tolerance percent were zero:

- Payable Business Unit Options
- Receivables Business Unit Options
- General Ledger Business Unit Definition

For the following VAT drivers, tolerance information is only copied if either the tolerance amount and/or the tolerance percent have non-zero values. If both the tolerance amount and tolerance percent were zero, no information will have been copied:

- Bank Code
- Bank Branch
- Treasury Accounting Template

- Treasury Business Unit Options

Task F-11: Revalidating VAT Default Setup

Once you are satisfied with your new VAT defaults structure and content, rerun the VAT Setup Validation Report to ensure that all required defaults have been defined.

To run the Setup Validation Report, select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, VAT and Intrastat, Value Added Tax.

APPENDIX G

Reviewing Tablespaces

Understanding Tablespace Review

This appendix lists the tables that previously existed in 4K page size tablespaces that now reside in 32K page size tablespaces in the new release.

Task G-1: Reviewing Table Names

Task G-1-1: Reviewing 8.40 and 8.4 SP1 Table Names

Review the following 8.40 and 8.4 SP 1 tables.

- CP_EXPR
- CP_EXPR_FORMAT
- CP_INRN_VAR
- CP_MESSAGE
- CP_MESSAGE_LANG
- CP_RULE_D_LANG
- CP_RULE_DETL
- CP_RULE_HT_LANG
- CP_RULE_HTML
- CP_USERCD_HDR
- CUST_AGREEMENT
- CUST_AGRMNT_LONG
- CUST_CREDIT
- CUST_CREDIT_LNG
- OM_LOADRULE_TAO
- OM_MESSAGE
- OM_RULE_CD_TAO
- OM_TRFT_AET
- OMBCK_AET

- OMBCK2_AET
- ORD_LTTR_CREDIT
- ORD_STAT_AET
- PROD_SPC_DE_TAO
- PROD_SPC_NW_TAO
- PROD_SPC_UP_AET
- PROD_SPC_UP_TAO
- PROD_SPECS
- PROD_SPECS_LNG
- PROD_SPECS_MD
- PROD_SPECS_MDLN
- RCN_EVENT_TBL
- REASON_CD
- REASON_CD_LNG
- TRFT_RULE
- UPG_CP_LONG_AET
- UPG_OM_AET
- UPG_OM2_AET

Task G-1-2: Reviewing 8.4 SP2 Table Names

Review the following 8.4 SP2 tables.

- CP_EXPR
- CP_EXPR_FORMAT
- CP_INTRN_VAR
- CP_MESSAGE
- CP_MESSAGE_LANG
- CP_RULE_D_LANG
- CP_RULE_DETL
- CP_RULE_HT_LANG
- CP_RULE_HTML
- CP_USERCD_HDR
- CUST_AGREEMENT
- CUST_AGRMNT_LNG
- CUST_CREDIT
- CUST_CREDIT_LNG
- OM_CREDIT_AET

- OM_DEMAND_AET
- OM_HOLD2_AET
- OM_LOADRULE_TAO
- OM_MESSAGE
- OM_RULE_CD_TAO
- OM_TRFT_AET
- OMBCK_AET
- OMBCK2_AET
- ORD_LTTR_CREDIT
- ORD_STAT_AET
- PROD_SPC_DE_TAO
- PROD_SPC_NW_TAO
- PROD_SPC_UP_AET
- PROD_SPC_UP_TAO
- PROD_SPECS
- PROD_SPECS_LNG
- PROD_SPECS_MD
- PROD_SPECS_MDLN
- RCN_EVENT_TBL
- REASON_CD
- REASON_CD_LNG
- TRFT_RULE
- UPG_CP_LONG_AET
- UPG_OM_AET
- UPG_OM2_AET

APPENDIX H

Upgrading the Content Provider Registry

This appendix discusses:

- Understanding the Content Provider Registry Upgrade
- Copying Your Enterprise Portal Database
- Upgrading Enterprise Portal PeopleTools
- Updating Registry Permission Lists
- Creating the Portal Project
- Comparing the Portal Project
- Reviewing the Portal Project
- Copying the Portal Project
- Copying Portal Project to Production
- Deleting Obsolete Folders
- Updating Registry Folder Permissions

Understanding the Content Provider Registry Upgrade

You should perform this task if you use the Enterprise Portal 8.4 or higher running on PeopleTools 8.4x with the full navigation load access method. This means you do not use a single link to access your content provider database, but instead load some or all of the portal registry structures from the content provider database into your Enterprise Portal database. PeopleSoft refers to its application databases that contain the transaction content as Content Provider databases. Your Copy of Production database is your Content Provider database for this task.

When you upgrade a content provider database, the registry structures are updated, removed and added. These changes need to be copied to the Enterprise Portal database. This task will update the portal registry structures in your Enterprise Portal database to match what is in the Content Provider database. This is accomplished by the following:

- Upgrade the PeopleTools on a copy of the Enterprise Portal database.
This allows a project compare to run between the Enterprise Portal and the Content Provider database.
- Create a portal project in the Enterprise Portal database containing all of the existing Content Provider registry structures.
Copy the portal project (definition only) to the Content Provider database.

- Create a portal project in the Content Provider database containing all of the current Content Provider registry structures, then merge the project definition copied from the Enterprise Portal database into this project.

You will have a complete list of all registry structures for the Content Provider, including what is current and what should be deleted.

- Compare the complete list of registry structures in the Content Provider database to what exists in the Enterprise Portal, using project compare.

This marks the missing registry structures as delete and the updated or added registry structures as copy in the portal project definition.

- Copy the portal project from the Content Provider database to the Enterprise Portal database.

This deletes, updates, and adds registry structures to the Enterprise Portal database which syncs it up with what is current in the Content Provider database.

If you use Enterprise Portal 8 SP2, PeopleSoft recommends that you upgrade your Enterprise Portal to the latest available release.

If you do upgrade your Enterprise Portal database, you must be on PeopleTools 8.46 or higher.

Note. If you use Enterprise Portal 8.4 you *do not* need to upgrade to Enterprise Portal 8.8. You can still upgrade to PeopleTools 8.46.

See Enterprise Portal 8.1x – Managing Information Architecture on PeopleSoft Customer Connection (Support, Documentation, Documentation Updates, Enterprise, Portal Products, Enterprise Portal) for additional information on this topic.

In this appendix, you load your new Portal Registry definitions from your Copy of Production database to a copy of your Enterprise Portal database.

Note. You must complete the tasks in the appendix for each of your separately installed Enterprise Portal databases that correspond to one of the four Portal Registry definitions: EMPLOYEE, CUSTOMER, SUPPLIER, and PARTNER. If your installed Enterprise Portal uses all the registries, then complete this task for each of the portal registries using the same copy of the single Enterprise Portal database.

In the first task of this appendix, you create a copy of your Enterprise Portal database. You use this copy for all subsequent steps for the initial and test Move to Production upgrade passes. For the final Move to Production, do not make a copy. Instead perform the steps on the production Enterprise Portal database.

This document uses the term “target Enterprise Portal database” to refer to the Enterprise Portal database used in the upgrade steps. Use the table below to determine the correct copy of your Enterprise Portal database for each pass:

Upgrade Pass	Target Enterprise Portal Database
Initial pass	Copy of the Enterprise Portal database
Test Move to Production	Copy of the Enterprise Portal database
Final Move to Production	Enterprise Portal production database

Task H-1: Copying Your Enterprise Portal Database

You initially upgrade the Content Provider registry on a copy of your Enterprise Portal database, then test the results of the upgrade. During your test Move to Production, you perform this task against another Copy of the Enterprise Portal.

Create a copy of your current Enterprise Portal production database now. Use this database as your target Enterprise Portal database.

Note. During your final Move to Production, you copy the registry definitions directly to your Enterprise Portal production database. Therefore, you do not need to execute this step during your final Move to Production.

Task H-2: Upgrading Enterprise Portal PeopleTools

During the initial upgrade pass, your Enterprise Portal database must run on the same PeopleTools release level as your Copy of Production database so that you can do the compare step. Because you do not need to run the compare step during your Move to Production passes, you can skip this task during Move to Production passes.

If the release level of PeopleTools on your target Enterprise Portal database is not the same as your Copy of Production database release level, upgrade your PeopleTools now.

See PeopleSoft Customer Connection (Implement Optimize + Upgrade, Upgrade Guide, Upgrade Documentation and Software, Upgrade Documentation and Scripts, Release, Enterprise, PeopleTools).

Task H-3: Updating Registry Permission Lists

This section discusses:

- Understanding Registry Permission Lists Updates
- Updating Portal Registry
- Deleting the Database Cache

Understanding Registry Permission Lists Updates

This task applies only to the initial upgrade pass.

Earlier in this upgrade you copied portal registry data from the Demo database to your Copy of Production database. You must update this registry data to include your permission list changes. After updating the portal registry permission lists, delete the database cache.

This process takes between a few minutes and a few hours, depending on the volume of the portal data.

Note. The user ID that invokes this process must have the security role Portal Administrator, or the process may terminate with an abend.

Note. You must have a process scheduler started for your Copy of Production database.

Task H-3-1: Updating Portal Registry

Follow the steps below to update your portal registry permission lists.

To update the portal registry permission lists:

1. On your Copy of Production database, select PeopleTools, Portal, Portal Security Sync.
2. Select the Add a New Value tab.
3. Add a run control as follows:
 - a. Enter a value for the run control ID. The run control ID is *SECURITY_SYNC_XXXX*, where *XXXX* represents the portal registry name (EMPLOYEE, CUSTOMER, SUPPLIER, or PARTNER).
 - b. Click Add.
4. Enter a value for the portal name.

This value must match the portal registry name you used to replace the *XXXX* in the run control ID.
5. Click Save.
6. Click Run.
7. Set up the process scheduler information and click OK.
8. Click the Process Monitor link to view the progress of the process.

Task H-3-2: Deleting the Database Cache

Follow the steps below to delete the database cache.

To delete the database cache:

1. Delete the Copy of Production database application server cache.
2. Stop and restart the Copy of Production database web server service.

Task H-4: Creating the Portal Project

This section discusses:

- Understanding Portal Project Creation
- Creating the Target Enterprise Portal Project
- Cleaning the Target Enterprise Portal Project
- Deleting the Target Enterprise Portal Database Cache
- Copying the Target Enterprise Portal Project Definition
- Creating the Copy of Production Portal Project
- Cleaning the Copy of Production Portal Project
- Deleting the Copy of Production Database Cache

Understanding Portal Project Creation

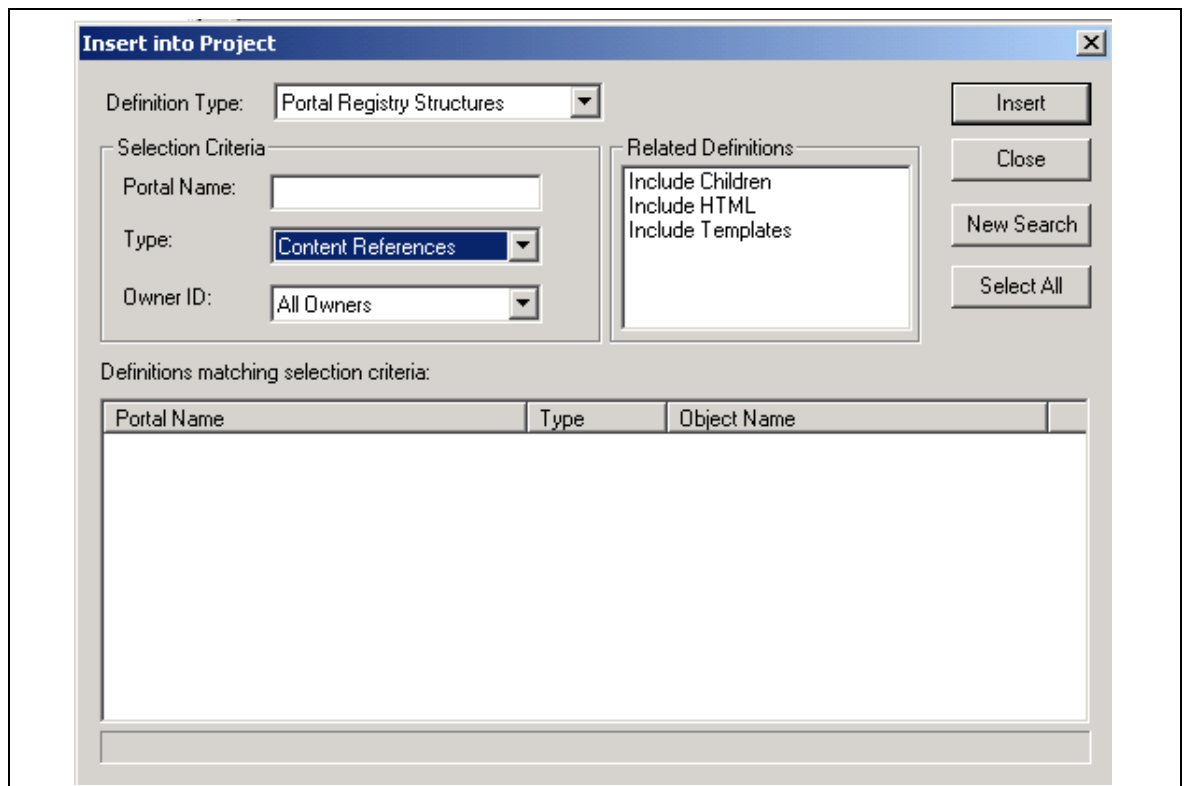
This task applies only to the initial upgrade pass. In this task, you create and modify a project on your target Enterprise Portal database. Then you copy the project definition to the Copy of Production database, where you further modify the project.

Task H-4-1: Creating the Target Enterprise Portal Project

Follow the steps below to create the target Enterprise Portal project.

To create the target Enterprise Portal project:

1. Launch Application Designer and sign on to your target Enterprise Portal database.
2. Select Insert, Definitions into Project...
3. Select the following values:
 - a. In the Definition Type field, select *Portal Registry Structures*.
 - b. Leave the Portal Name field blank.
 - c. In the Owner ID field, select *All Owners*.
 - d. Do not select any values in the Related Definitions field.



Insert into Project dialog box

4. Click Insert.
5. Click Select All, and then click Insert again.
6. Click Close.
7. From Application Designer, select File, Save Project As....

8. Enter the project name *PORTAL_PA84X_REGISTRY*.
9. Close Application Designer.

Task H-4-2: Cleaning the Target Enterprise Portal Project

In this step, you clean the target Enterprise Portal Project so that it contains only the existing Content Provider registry structure content references.

To clean the target Enterprise Portal project:

1. In your Enterprise Portal database, select PeopleTools, Portal, Portal Utilities, Clean Portal Project.

Warning! Do not follow the instructions on the Clean Portal Project page. Instead, follow the instructions below.

2. Add the run control ID *CLEAN_PORTAL_XXXXXXXX* where *XXXXXXXX* represents the portal definition name: *EMPLOYEE*, *CUSTOMER*, *SUPPLIER* or *PARTNER* for example.
3. In the Project Name field, enter the project name *PORTAL_PA84X_REGISTRY*.
4. Enter a value in the Portal Name field; *EMPLOYEE* for example.
5. Enter a value in the Content Provider Name field; *CRM* for example.

Note. Before running the Clean Portal Project you must enter the node URI text for the message node that you selected.

6. Select *Full Navigation*.
7. Click Save.
8. Click Run.
9. Set up the Process Scheduler information and click OK.
10. Select the Process Monitor link to view the progress of the process.

Task H-4-3: Deleting the Target Enterprise Portal Database Cache

In this step, you delete the target Enterprise Portal database cache.

To delete the target Enterprise Portal database cache:

1. On your target Enterprise Portal database, launch Configuration Manager.
2. On the Startup tab, click Purge Cache Directories.
3. Select the target Enterprise Portal database name.
4. Click Delete.
5. Click OK.
6. Click Close.
7. Click OK to close Configuration Manager.

Task H-4-4: Copying the Target Enterprise Portal Project Definition

In this step, you copy the target Enterprise Portal project definition to your Copy of Production database.

To copy the target Enterprise Portal project definition:

1. Using PeopleSoft Data Mover, sign on to your target Enterprise Portal database.
2. Run the following Data Mover script:

```
PS_HOME\SCRIPTS\UVUPX10E.dms
```

3. Close Data Mover.
4. Using PeopleSoft Data Mover, sign on to the Copy of Production database.
5. Run the following Data Mover script:

```
PS_HOME\SCRIPTS\UVUPX10I.dms
```

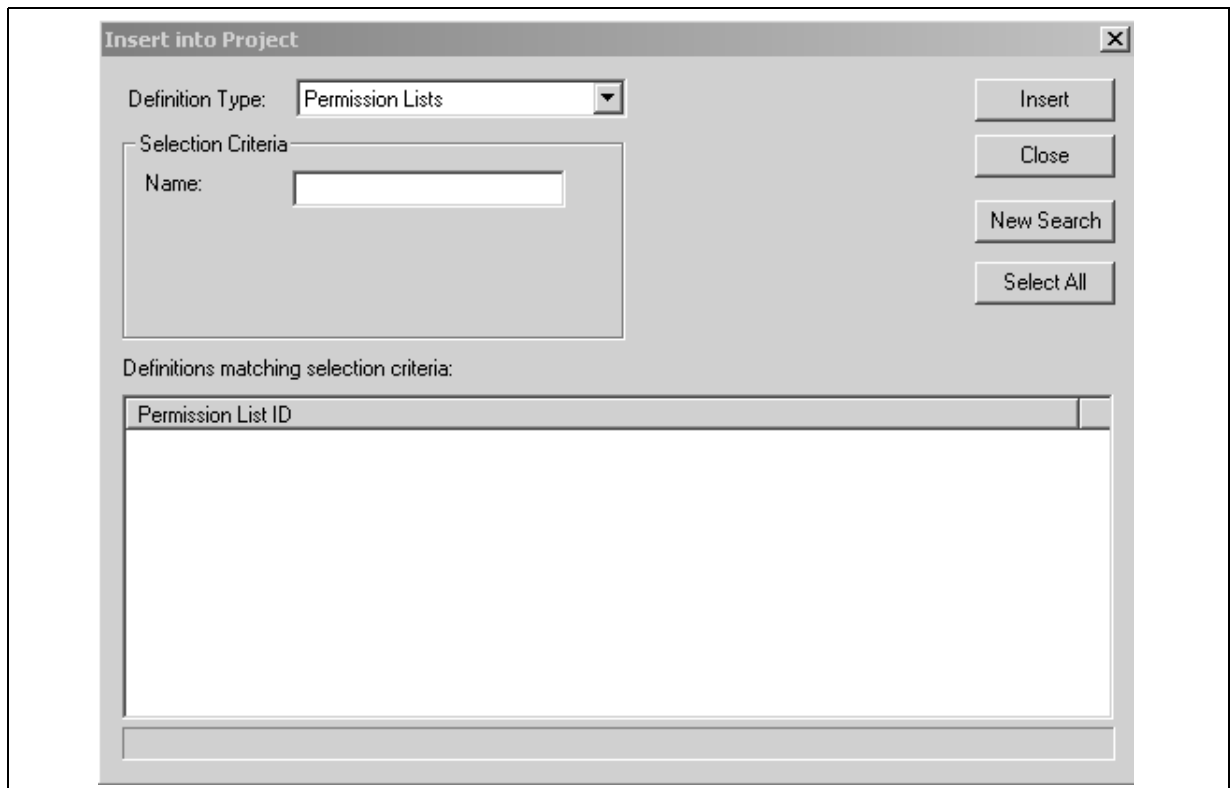
6. Close Data Mover.

Task H-4-5: Creating the Copy of Production Portal Project

Create a project containing all Portal Registry data on your Copy of Production database.

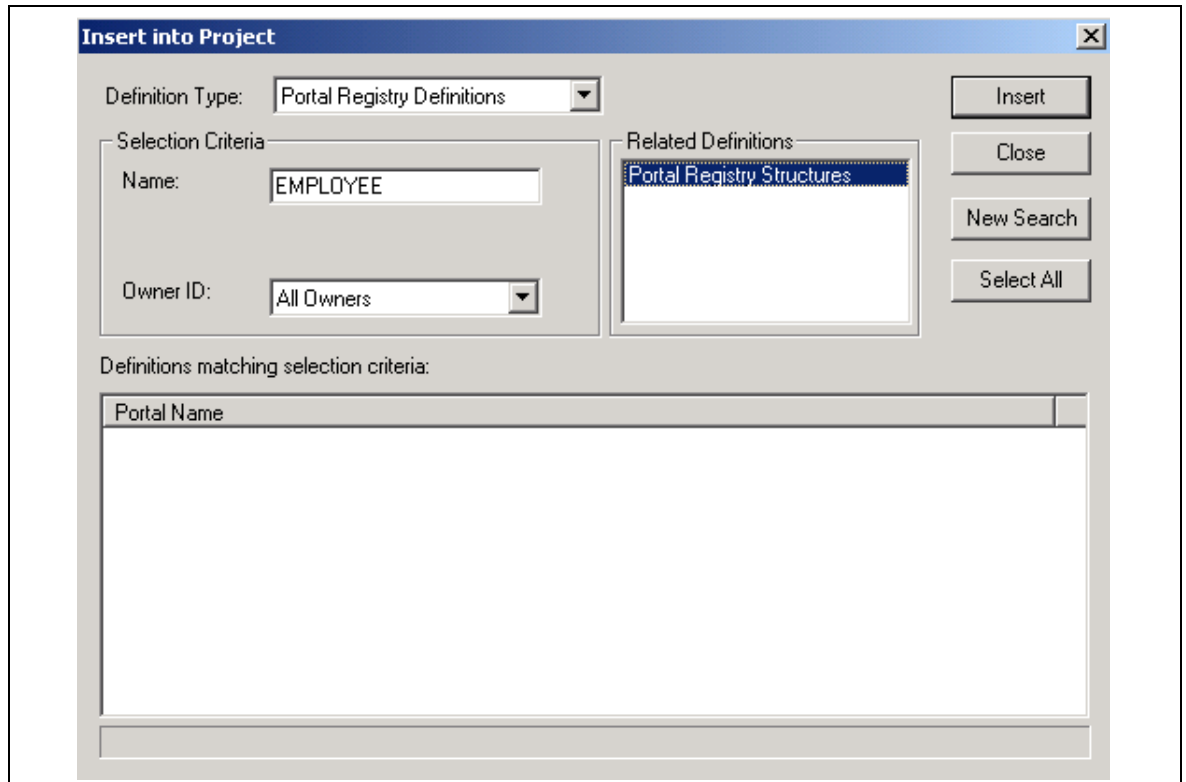
To create the Copy of Production Portal project:

1. Launch Application Designer and sign on to your Copy of Production database.
2. Select Insert, Definitions into Project....
3. In the Definition Type field, select *Permission Lists*.



Insert into Project dialog box: Definition Type Permission Lists

4. Click Insert.
5. Click Select All, and then click Insert again.
6. Select the following values:
 - a. In the Definition Type field, select *Portal Registry Definitions*.
 - b. In the Name field, enter the Enterprise Portal database's default portal name (EMPLOYEE, CUSTOMER, SUPPLIER or PARTNER).
 - c. In the Owner ID field, select *All Owners*.
 - d. In the Related Definitions field, select *Portal Registry Structures*.



Insert into Project dialog box with Portal Registry Structures selected

7. Click Insert.
8. Click Select All, then click Insert again.
9. Click Close.
10. From Application Designer, select File, Save Project As....
11. Enter the appropriate new project name from the table below. This project is referred to as the Portal Project:

Portal Name	Project Name
EMPLOYEE	PORTAL_APP84X_EMPLOYEE
CUSTOMER	PORTAL_APP84X_CUSTOMER
PARTNER	PORTAL_APP84X_PARTNER
SUPPLIER	PORTAL_APP84X_SUPPLIER

12. Click OK.
13. From Application Designer, select File, Merge Projects...
14. Enter the project name *PORTAL_PA84X_REGISTRY*.
This merges the objects from the PORTAL_PA84XREGISTRY project into your newly created Portal Project.
15. Select File, Save Project to save the updated Portal Project.
16. Close Application Designer.

Task H-4-6: Cleaning the Copy of Production Portal Project

In this step, you clean the Copy of Production Portal project so that it contains only the Content Provider registry data.

Important! Before using the Copy of Production Portal project, you must run the Clean Portal Project on the Copy of Production database. Follow the directions on the Clean Portal Project Page.

To clean the Copy of Production Portal project:

1. In your Copy of Production database, select PeopleTools, Portal, Portal Utilities, Clean Portal Project.
2. Add the run control ID, *CLEAN_PORTAL_XXXXXXX*, where *XXXXXXX* represents the portal definition name; *EMPLOYEE*, *CUSTOMER*, *SUPPLIER*, or *PARTNER*, for example.
3. In the Project Name field, enter the Portal Project name that you created in the Creating the Copy of Production Portal Project step (*PORTAL_APP84X_[your portal name here]*).
4. Enter a value in the Portal Name field; *EMPLOYEE*, for example.
5. Enter a value in the Content Provider Name field; *CRM*, for example.

Important! Before running the Clean Portal Project, you must enter the Node URI text for the Message Node you selected.

6. Select *Full Navigation*.
7. Click Save.
8. Click Run.
9. Set up the Process Scheduler information and click OK.
10. Select the Process Monitor link to view the progress of the process.

Task H-4-7: Deleting the Copy of Production Database Cache

In this step, you delete the Copy of Production database cache.

To delete the Copy of Production database cache:

1. On your Copy of Production database, start Configuration Manager.
2. On the Startup tab, click Purge Cache Directories.
3. Select the Copy of Production database name.
4. Click Delete.
5. Click OK.
6. Click Close.
7. Click OK to close Configuration Manager.

Task H-5: Comparing the Portal Project

This task applies only to the initial upgrade pass.

In this step, you compare the Portal project that you created in the previous step and then review the compare results. This will enable you to adjust the portal project as necessary before copying it into the Enterprise Portal database.

To compare the Portal Project:

1. Launch Application Designer and sign on to your Copy of Production database.
2. Select Tools, Compare and Report....
3. Enter the Portal Project name that you specified in the Creating the Copy of Production Portal Project step (PORTAL_APP84X_[your portal name here]).
4. Enter the database name of your target Enterprise Portal database, and the user ID and password.
5. Click the Options button.
6. In the Compare Type field, select *Project*, and click OK.
7. Select all object types and click OK.
8. Close Application Designer.

Task H-6: Reviewing the Portal Project

This task applies only to the initial upgrade pass.

Review the Portal project (PORTAL_APP84X_[your portal name here]) on the Copy of Production database, looking for customizations that you have applied to your database. Object definitions that you changed have **Changed* or **Unchanged* in the Target column of the compare report. The * indicates that the change was not made by PeopleSoft. Review each of these objects carefully. If PeopleSoft delivered the object, the Source column of the report will read *Changed*. Note the changes that you made to the object. After you complete the upgrade, when you test the system, you can decide whether you still need the customization. You can reapply the customization at that time.

See Appendix: “Using the Comparison Process.”

Task H-7: Copying the Portal Project

This section discusses:

- Understanding Portal Project Copying
- Copying the Portal Project
- Deleting the Enterprise Portal Database Cache

Understanding Portal Project Copying

This task applies only to the initial upgrade pass.

In this step, you copy the project from your Copy of Production database to your target Enterprise Portal database.

Task H-7-1: Copying the Portal Project

Follow the steps below to copy the Portal Project to the Enterprise Portal database.

Important! Before exporting the Portal Project from the Content Provider database, you must successfully clean the Copy of Production Portal Project. If you proceed with this step without cleaning the project, you will overwrite critical Enterprise Portal data.

See [Creating the Portal Project](#), [Cleaning the Copy of Production Portal Project](#).

To copy the Portal Project:

1. Launch Application Designer and sign on to your Copy of Production database.
2. Select File, Open...
3. In the Definition field, select *Project* and click Open.
4. Highlight the newly created Portal Project name (PORTAL_APP84X_[your portal name]) and click Open again.
5. Select Tools, Copy Project, To Database...
6. Enter the name of your target Enterprise Portal database, and the user ID and password.
7. Click Select All.
8. Click Copy.
This may take a few minutes.
9. Close Application Designer.

Note. You do not need to create or alter any records or views.

Task H-7-2: Deleting the Enterprise Portal Database Cache

In this step, you delete the Enterprise Portal database cache.

To delete the Enterprise Portal database cache:

1. Delete the target Enterprise Portal database application server cache.
2. Stop and restart the target Enterprise Portal database web server service.

Task H-8: Copying Portal Project to Production

This section discusses:

- Understanding Portal Project to Production Copying
- Copying the Portal Project to File
- Copying the Portal Project from File
- Deleting the Enterprise Portal Database Cache Again

Understanding Portal Project to Production Copying

You must perform this step during both your test and final Move to Production upgrade passes.

Task H-8-1: Copying the Portal Project to File

Follow the steps below to copy the Portal Project to file.

Note. If your Copy of Production and target Enterprise Portal databases run on the same PeopleTools release and database platform, you can copy the project directly to the target Enterprise Portal database from within the Copy of Production Application Designer and skip the rest of this step.

To copy the Portal Project to file:

1. Launch Application Designer and sign on to your Copy Production database.
2. Select File, Open....
3. In the Definition field, select *Project* and then click Open.
4. Highlight the newly created Portal Project name (PORTAL_APP84X_[your portal name]) and click Open again.
5. Select Tools, Copy Project, To File....
6. Click the Browse button for the Export Directory.
7. Select a temporary directory and then click OK.
8. Click Select All.
9. Click Copy.
This may take a few minutes.
10. Close Application Designer.

Task H-8-2: Copying the Portal Project from File

In this step, you copy the Portal Project from file.

To copy the Portal Project from file:

1. Launch Application Designer and sign on to your target Enterprise Portal database.
2. Select Tools, Copy Project, From File....
3. Browse to the Copy of Production database server's temporary directory.
If you cannot access the Copy of Production database server's temporary directory, then copy the Portal Project folder and files from the temporary directory to the target Enterprise Portal database server's *PS_HOME\PROJECTS* directory, and browse to that directory.
4. Select the Portal Project name that you just copied to file in the previous step.
5. Click Open.
6. Click Select All.
7. Set the project language options as follows:
 - a. Click Options.
 - b. In the Copy Options tab, select *English*, and *COMMON*.

- c. If your Enterprise Portal database is a multi-language database, then also select the languages that you have installed on your Enterprise Portal database.
 - d. Click OK.
8. Click Copy.
9. Select the Upgrade tab and view the Output window.
All objects should have copied successfully.
10. Close Application Designer.

Note. After the copy, you do not need to create or alter any records or views on the target Enterprise Portal database.

Task H-8-3: Deleting the Enterprise Portal Database Cache Again

In this step, you delete the Enterprise Portal database cache.

To delete the Enterprise Portal database cache:

1. Delete the target Enterprise Portal database's application server cache.
2. Stop and restart the target Enterprise Portal database web server service.

Task H-9: Deleting Obsolete Folders

This section discusses:

- Understanding Obsolete Folder Deletion
- Deleting Obsolete Folders on Enterprise Portal 8.4
- Deleting Obsolete Folders on Enterprise Portal 8.8

Understanding Obsolete Folder Deletion

This task applies to all upgrade passes: Initial, Test Move to Production, and Final Move to Production.

In this step, you delete folders on your target Enterprise Portal database that the Portal Registry Structures no longer reference. The process that you run depends on your version of Enterprise Portal.

Task H-9-1: Deleting Obsolete Folders on Enterprise Portal 8.4

Follow this procedure to delete obsolete folders on Enterprise Portal 8.4.

To delete obsolete folders on Enterprise Portal 8.4:

1. Using PeopleSoft Data Mover, sign on to your target Enterprise Portal database.
2. Run the following Data Mover script, located in the Enterprise Portal PS_HOME\SCRIPTS directory:

`PORTAL_REG_FOLDER_DEL.DMS`
3. Close Data Mover.

Task H-9-2: Deleting Obsolete Folders on Enterprise Portal 8.8

Follow this procedure to delete obsolete folders on Enterprise Portal 8.8 or higher.

To delete obsolete folders on Enterprise Portal 8.8 or higher:

1. On your target Enterprise Portal database, navigate accordingly:
 - a. For Enterprise Portal 8.8: Portal Administration, Navigation, Run Folder Cleanup.
 - b. For Enterprise Portal 8.9 or higher: Portal Administration, Navigation, Delete Empty Folders.
2. Add a run control as follows:
 - a. Enter a value for the run control ID. The run control ID is *FOLDER_CLEAN_XXXX*, where *XXXX* represents the portal registry name (EMPLOYEE, CUSTOMER, PARTNER, or SUPPLIER).
 - b. Click Add.
3. Enter a value in the Portal Name field.

This value must match the portal registry name that you used to replace *XXXX* in the run control ID (EMPLOYEE, CUSTOMER, PARTNER, or SUPPLIER).
4. Click Save.
5. Click Run.
6. Set up the process scheduler information and click OK.
7. Click the Process Monitor link to view the progress of the process.

Task H-10: Updating Registry Folder Permissions

This section discusses:

- Understanding Registry Folder Permissions Updates
- Updating the Enterprise Portal Registry Folder Permissions
- Deleting the Enterprise Portal Cache

Understanding Registry Folder Permissions Updates

This task applies to all upgrade passes: Initial, Test Move to Production, and Final Move to Production.

Portal data from different Content Provider databases may share a common portal folder. After copying the registry projects, you must update the folder permissions to reflect the changes. After you update the folder permissions, you must delete the target Enterprise Portal database cache files to propagate the changes.

Task H-10-1: Updating the Enterprise Portal Registry Folder Permissions

Follow this procedure to update your Enterprise Portal registry folder permissions.

Note. This process will take between a few minutes to a few hours, depending on the volume of portal data. The user ID that invokes this process must have the security role Portal Administrator, or the process may terminate with an abend.

To update the Enterprise Portal folder permissions:

1. On your target Enterprise Portal database, select PeopleTools, Portal, Portal Security Sync.
2. Add a run control as follows:
 - a. Enter a value for the run control ID.
The run control ID is *SECURITY_SYNC_XXXX*, where *XXXX* represents the portal registry name (EMPLOYEE, CUSTOMER, PARTNER, or SUPPLIER).
 - b. Click Add.
3. Enter a value in the Portal Name field.
This value must match the portal registry name that you used to replace *XXXX* in the run control ID (EMPLOYEE, CUSTOMER, PARTNER, or SUPPLIER).
4. Click Save.
5. Click Run.
6. Set up the process scheduler information and click OK.
7. Click the Process Monitor link to view the progress of the process.

Task H-10-2: Deleting the Enterprise Portal Cache

In this step delete the Enterprise Portal cache.

To delete the Enterprise Portal cache:

1. Delete the target Enterprise Portal database application server cache.
2. Stop and restart the target Enterprise Portal database web server service.

APPENDIX I

Using Data Conversion Utilities

This appendix discusses:

- Understanding Data Conversion Utilities
- Using the Upgrade Driver Program
- Using the Upgrade Drivers Page
- Reviewing the Data Conversion Report

Understanding Data Conversion Utilities

This appendix contains information regarding the Application Engine program UPG_DATACONV and the PS_UPG_DATACONV table.

Task I-1: Using the Upgrade Driver Program

In order to run all data conversions in the correct sequence, Oracle has provided the Application Engine program UPG_DATACONV and the PS_UPG_DATACONV table. This program runs the Application Engine sections defined in the table PS_UPG_DATACONV. The PS_UPG_DATACONV table contains a list of all of the Application Engine sections that you need to run and in what sequence they should be run.

Task I-2: Using the Upgrade Drivers Page

This section discusses:

- Understanding Upgrade Drivers Page
- Accessing the Upgrade Drivers Page
- Adding New Upgrade Drivers Section Page
- Inactivating Upgrade Drivers Section

Understanding Upgrade Drivers Page

Before you run data conversion, you may need to change what the Upgrade Driver program runs. You can add, remove, or deactivate Application Engine sections through the Upgrade Drivers page.

You do not have an active portal on your Copy of Production during data conversion, so you need to view and update the Data Conversion Definitions on your Demo database and then copy the updated data to your Copy of Production database.

Task I-2-1: Accessing the Upgrade Drivers Page

To access the Upgrade Drivers page:

1. From your browser, sign on to the Demo database.
2. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Define Upgrade Drivers.
3. Enter your upgrade path:
4. Click Search.

You are now on the Upgrade Drivers page. The following are descriptions for each section of the Upgrade Drivers page.

Upgrade Drivers									
Customize Find View All First 1-25 of 86 Last									
Upgrade Path	Program Name	Group #	Section	Sequence	Active Flag	Description	Comments		
CR80	UPG_CDM	1	CDMA010	10	Active	General Preparation	Comments	+	-
CR80	UPG_CDM	1	CDMX140	20	Active	Upgrade Basic Data Tables	Comments	+	-
CR80	UPG_CP	2	CPA00	100	Active	Upgrade Constraint	Comments	+	-
CR80	UPG_CP	2	CPA01	105	Active	Upgrade User Cd Detl	Comments	+	-

Upgrade Drivers page

- Upgrade Path. This field contains the upgrade path on which the section will be run.
- Program Name. This is the Application Engine program that contains the section.
- Group #. This is the group number. All sections with the same group number will be run during the same run of the UPG_DATACONV Application Engine program.
- Section. This is the section that will be called from the UPG_DATACONV Application Engine program.
- Sequence. This is the order in which the sections will be called during the run of UPG_DATACONV for the group number.
- Active Flag. This field determines whether the section will be run. If the value of this field is *Active*, the section will be run. If the value is *Inactive*, it will not be run. If you need to remove a section, change the value in this field to *Inactive*.
- Description.
- Comments.

Task I-2-2: Adding New Upgrade Drivers Section Page

Follow the instructions below to add a new section to the Upgrade Drivers page.

Note. To add a new section, the Application Engine program and section must exist on the Demo database.

To add a new section to the Upgrade Drivers page:

1. From your browser, sign on to the Demo database.
2. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Define Upgrade Drivers.

3. Select Add a New Value.
4. Click Add.
5. Enter values for Upgrade Path and Program Name.
6. Enter a value for Group #.

Note. Each group number corresponds to a data conversion step in the Change Assistant template. If you select a group number that already exists in the PS_UPG_DATACONV table, your section will be executed when Change Assistant runs the data conversion step that corresponds to the group number you selected. Alternatively, if you assign a group number to your new section that does not already exist in PS_UPG_DATACONV, you must add a new step to your Change Assistant template. The new template step will have the same properties as the other data conversion steps, except for the group number specified in the step properties Parameters box.

7. Enter values for Section and Sequence.
The Description and Comments fields are optional.
8. Click Save.
9. When you have completed all changes, sign on to your Demo database using Data Mover and run the following script to export the updated data conversion data:

```
DLUPX03E.DMS
```

10. Sign on to your Copy of Production database using Data Mover and run the following script to load the updated data conversion data:

```
DLUPX03I.DMS
```

See the Enterprise PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Software Updates for your new release, Appendix: "Using a Change Assistant Template."

Task I-2-3: Inactivating Upgrade Drivers Section

Follow the instructions below to deactivate a section on the Upgrade Drivers page. Once deactivated, the section will not run as part of data conversion.

To inactivate a section on the Upgrade Drivers page:

1. From your browser, sign on to the Demo database.
2. Select Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Upgrade, Define Upgrade Drivers.
3. Enter your upgrade path:
4. Click Search.
5. Find the row with the Program Name and Section you want to remove and change the value of the Active Flag field to *Inactive*.
6. Click Save.
7. When you have completed all changes, sign on to your Demo database using Data Mover and run the following script to export the updated data conversion data:

```
DLUPX03E.DMS
```

8. Sign on to your Copy of Production database using Data Mover and run the following script to load the updated data conversion data:

DLUPX03I.DMS

Task I-3: Reviewing the Data Conversion Report

Each of the upgrade data conversion sections contains comments that describe the processing performed by the section. PeopleSoft has delivered an SQR to list all of these comments by the group and sequence numbers that determine how they run. The name of this report is UDATAACNV.

To run UDATAACNV:

1. Using SQRW, run SQR UDATAACNV on your Copy of Production database.
2. When prompted for Upgrade Path, enter:
3. When prompted for Group Number, enter the two-digit group number to report on, or enter 0 to see the comments for all groups.

APPENDIX J

Using the Comparison Process

This appendix discusses:

- Understanding the Comparison Process
- Understanding Upgrade Compare Reports

Task J-1: Understanding the Comparison Process

This section discusses:

- Reviewing Source and Target Columns
- Reviewing the Action Column
- Reviewing the Upgrade Column
- Putting it All Together

During the upgrade you run a compare process and then review the resulting reports. The compare process first compares every property of an object definition on the source database to the properties of object definitions on the target database. The PeopleSoft system tracks object changes using the contents of the PSRELEASE table, and the value of two fields, LASTUPDDTTM, and LASTUPDOPRID, used in the PeopleTools tables.

- The PSRELEASE table maintains the Comparison Release Level. This table contains rows of data for every release level at which the database has ever existed. The first column in this table, RELEASEDTTM, contains a date/time stamp identifying when each release level was “stamped.” The second column, RELEASELABEL, identifies the release level. The format of a release label is *M XX.XX.XX.YYY*, where *M* is the market code, *XX* is an integer from 0 to 99, and *YYY* is an integer from 0 to 999. A release label has two parts: the PeopleSoft release number (*M XX.XX.XX*) and the customer release number (*YYY*). Each time you customize your production database, you can stamp it with a new customer release level to help you track your changes over time. You should not change any portion of the PeopleSoft release number unless specifically instructed to do so.
- The LASTUPDDTTM field in our *PSobjectDEFN* tables—such as PSRECDEFN, PSPNLDEFN, and so on—stores a date/time stamp of when each object was last modified.
- The LASTUPDOPRID field stores the operator ID of the user who made the modification. If PeopleSoft made the modification, the proprietary ID *PPLSOFT* is used.

Note. Maintain Security prevents you from creating an operator named PPLSOFT.

If an object definition is defined differently in the source database than in the target, the compare process will check to see whether either object definition has changed since the comparison release. If the object’s LASTUPDDTTM value is greater than the RELEASEDTTM value for the comparison release level (stored in PSRELEASE), the object has changed. If the object’s LASTUPDDTTM value is equal

to or less than RELEASEDTM, the object has not changed (since the comparison release). Whether the compared object has changed or not, if it has *ever* been changed prior to the comparison release by someone other than PeopleSoft (LASTUPDOPRID <> 'PPLSOFT'), the object is identified as a customization.

After you run a compare report, you see the following information when you open an object type in the upgrade project from the Upgrade Tab of Application Designer. This is called the Application Designer Upgrade Definition window.

Task J-1-1: Reviewing Source and Target Columns

The status of each object is reported as it appears on the Source database and the Target database. The following table explains the various status types:

Status Type	Definition
Unknown	The object has not been compared. This is the default status for all objects inserted manually into a project and the permanent status of all non-comparison objects.
Absent	The object was found in the other database, but not in this one. When upgrading to a new PeopleSoft release, all of our new objects should have Absent status in the Target database and all of your new objects should have Absent status in the Source database.
Changed	The object has been compared, its LASTUPDOPRID value is <i>PPLSOFT</i> , and its LASTUPDTIME value is greater than the date/time stamp of the comparison release database. In other words, PeopleSoft modified the object since the comparison release.
Unchanged	The object has been compared, its LASTUPDOPRID value is <i>PPLSOFT</i> , and its LASTUPDTIME value is less than or equal to the date/time stamp of the comparison release database. In other words, PeopleSoft last modified the object prior to the comparison release.
*Changed	The object has been compared, its LASTUPDOPRID value is not <i>PPLSOFT</i> , and its LASTUPDTIME value is greater than the date/time stamp of the comparison release database. In this case, the customer has modified the object since the comparison release.

Status Type	Definition
*Unchanged	The object has been compared, its LASTUPDOPRID value is not <i>PPLSOFT</i> , and its LASTUPDTIME value is less than or equal to the date/time stamp of the comparison release database. In this case, the customer last modified the object prior to the comparison release.
Same	The object has been compared and is defined as the same in both databases. When an object in one database has this status, so will its counterpart in the other database. This status would never be seen when performing a database comparison because in that case, the project is only populated with objects defined differently. However, it can occur when performing a project comparison because in a project comparison, the project contents are static; the project is not repopulated based on the comparison results.

Task J-1-2: Reviewing the Action Column

The default actions for each object that you compared are reported in the Action column. The compare sets the action column based on what you need to do to make the Target database consistent with the Source. You should not change these actions. You can decide whether or not to accept each action by setting the Upgrade value. Action types include:

Action Type	Definition
Copy	Object will be added to the Target database
Copy Prop (Records and Fields only)	Object will be added to the Target database
Delete	Object will be deleted from the Target database.
None	No action will be taken on this object.

The PeopleSoft system assigns one of these action types to every object in a comparison project and in the compare reports. However, these actions are not necessarily carried out during the copy process. The value of the Upgrade column for each object makes that determination.

Task J-1-3: Reviewing the Upgrade Column

The Upgrade values for each object – YES or NO – determine whether the object action will be carried out during the copy process. The upgrade orientation you assign during the compare process determines these settings. You can orient the Upgrade to keep PeopleSoft changes or to retain your changes in the target database. Whichever orientation you choose, you will still have the option to set each Upgrade value individually before launching the copy process.

You may find that after the compare process, your project contains objects that show up as Unchanged on the Demo database and Changed on the Copy of Production and the Upgrade column is not checked. What this status combination means is that the PeopleSoft object on your Copy of Production was changed more recently than on the Demo database. In these instances, PeopleSoft recommends that you accept the Demo database version of the object.

Task J-1-4: Putting it All Together

The following chart summarizes every possible Status, Action, and Upgrade value that could be set by the compare process to a single object:

Source Status	Target Status	Action	PeopleSoft Vanilla	Keep Customizations
(Any)	Absent	COPY	YES	YES
Absent	Changed or Unchanged	DELETE	YES	YES
	Changed* or Unchanged*	DELETE	NO	NO
Changed	Changed or Unchanged	COPY	YES	YES
	Changed* or Unchanged*	COPY	YES	NO
Unchanged	Changed	COPY	NO	NO
	Unchanged	COPY	YES	YES
	Changed* or Unchanged*	COPY	YES	NO
Changed*	Changed or Unchanged	COPY	NO	YES
	Changed* or Unchanged*	COPY	YES	YES
Unchanged*	Changed or Unchanged	COPY	NO	YES
	Changed*	COPY	NO	NO
	Unchanged*	COPY	YES	YES

Task J-2: Understanding Upgrade Compare Reports

This section discusses:

- Reviewing Report Columns
- Using Reports

When you run the compare process, it creates reports to help you understand what objects differ between the Source and Target databases, and how they differ. If you have documentation of your database modifications, you should retrieve it before reviewing these reports. This will help you understand how the Target objects

have changed and enable you to better compare the Target version of the object with the Source version. If you are upgrading to a new PeopleSoft release, you should also review the Release Notes for your product. These notes will identify and explain object changes in the New Release Demo database.

Upgrade reports can be a little intimidating at first glance, until you understand what data you are looking for and how best to use it. This section includes information to help you use the reports.

Task J-2-1: Reviewing Report Columns

For the most part, the columns in upgrade reports correspond with the columns you see in Application Designer's upgrade definition window. Moving from left to right, you see the Name of the object, then other key columns that vary by object type, then the Source and Target status, the Action value and Upgrade flag (*Yes* or *No*).

After these columns are three more that are not included in Application Designer. The first is Attribute. This tells you the type of difference that was found between the two objects. For example, record field Attribute values include *Use/Edit*, which identifies key or audit differences, and Default Field Name (*Def. Fldnm*), which identifies differences in a default value. Lastly, there is a Source column and a Target column. These wide columns display the actual differences between the object definitions. For example, on a *Use/Edit* attribute recfield difference, the Source column might contain *Xlat Table Edit* while the Target column is empty. This means the Source record field has a translate table edit while the Target record field does not.

If you are unsure of the meaning of any value in the last three report columns, open the PeopleTool that edits the particular object. The values in these columns correspond directly to dialog options in the tool.

Task J-2-2: Using Reports

Oracle delivers several cross-reference reports that you can run to provide information about the inter-relationships between various objects. Oracle delivers these reports in the form of SQRs (found in PS_HOME\SQR), Crystal Reports (found in PS_HOME\CRW\ENG), and Queries.

The cross-reference reports include:

Object Type(s)	Report Name	Report Description
Applications and Fields	XRFAPFL	Lists all application windows, such as General Tables, in alphabetical order, as well as the fields within each window. For each field, the report details the Field Name, Field Type, Length, and Format, as well as all the record and page definitions that contain the field (within the window).
Fields Referenced by PeopleCode Programs	XRFFLPC	Lists all PeopleCode programs in alphabetical order by associated record definition/field. The report includes type of field and lists all fields referenced in the PeopleCode program.
Fields and Panels	XRFFLPN	Lists all fields in alphabetical order. The report includes the names of all record and page definitions in which each field is used, as well as the Long Name of each field.

Object Type(s)	Report Name	Report Description
Records and Fields	XRFFLRC	Lists all fields in alphabetical order. The report details the Long Name, Field Type, Field Length, and Formatting specified for the field, and includes the names of all record definitions that contain the field.
Field Listing	XRFIELDS	Lists all fields in alphabetical order. The report includes Field Type, Length, Format, Long Name and Short Name.
Menu Listing	XRFMENU	Lists application windows in alphabetical order. The report details all menus within each window, and all page definitions within each menu. It also includes the associated search record definition name and detail page definition name.
Panel Listing	XRFPANEL	Lists all page definitions in alphabetical order.
PeopleCode Programs and Field References	XRFPCL	Lists record definitions that contain fields with PeopleCode program attributes. The report includes the Field Name, as well as the associated record definitions and fields referenced in the PeopleCode program.
Panels with PeopleCode	XRFPNPC	Lists all pages that contain fields with PeopleCode attributes. For each page, the report includes the name of the record definition(s) that contain the field as well as the Field Name and Type.
Fields and Records	XRFRCL	Lists all fields in alphabetical order by associated record definition name. The report details the Long Name, Field Type, Field Length, and Formatting specified for the field.
Records and Panels	XRFRCPN	Lists all record definitions in alphabetical order. The report includes the menu and page definitions associated with each record definition.
Window Listing	XRFWIN	Lists all application windows in alphabetical order.

In addition to using our standard cross-reference reports, you can also generate ad hoc reports to extract the exact combination of information you need. Or, you can create permanent custom reports for information you extract on a regular basis.

Oracle recommends that you mark your upgrade reports using a color-coding system to help you quickly identify what you need to do to certain objects.

If you have several people reviewing sections of the reports, a good documentation policy is to have everyone on your review cycle initial and date the action defaults and overrides they select.

You may also find it easier to change some objects manually after the upgrade, rather than copying the new versions from the source.

Index

A

- accounting entry definitions, modifying 368
- accounting information, reviewing VAT 325
- Accounts Payable Voucher, processing 35
- accounts payable, running maintenance pack script 219
- Accounts Receivable
 - extracting deductions 33
 - reviewing deduction reasons 361
 - running update process 357
 - setting up algorithms 358
 - setting up audit control 361
 - setting up default options 359
 - setting up default specialists 360
 - setting up methods 359
 - setting up reason write-off tolerances 360
 - setting up user write-off tolerances 360
- accounts receivable, running maintenance pack script 219
- activating
 - HCM integration in Services Procurement 296
- activities, processing third-party 35
- adding
 - country codes 251
 - currency code 351
 - issue date for securities 311
 - Order Source codes 276
- adding, CUSIP for security 311
- adjustment period defaults
 - modifying 371
 - setting up 370
- adjustment periods
 - cleaning up 374
 - setting up 372
- adjustment year, setting up 369
- AE SYNCIDGEN, running 217
- agency location codes, setting up 340
- Agreement Registration, validating 364
- ALLTABS project, creating 191
- ALLTEMPTABS project, creating 190
- Alter Audit
 - final, reviewing 234
 - final, running 233
 - running initial 12
- alter tables script, running 193
- alter with deletes script
 - building 216
 - running 217
- Amendments
 - cancelling 48
 - processing pending 48
 - query outstanding 48
- analysis type and group, setting up for projects 313
- analyzing VAT considerations 353
- application base data, converted
 - exporting 226
 - importing 226
- application changes, preparing for 151
- application data
 - exporting 207
 - importing 208
- Application Engine driver program, using 469
- application messages
 - exporting 203
 - importing 203
- application messaging
 - objects, deleting 135
 - objects, saving 134
- application servers
 - configuring 210, 238
 - granting administrator permissions 94
 - updating REN servers 129
- application system data
 - exporting 225
 - importing 225
- application tablespaces, creating 121
- applying
 - fixes after copying project 396
 - fixes after data conversion 397
 - fixes between upgrade passes 397
 - fixes during installation 396
 - fixes during Move to Production 398
 - updates before data conversion 209
 - UPGOPT project 6

- upgrade planning files 6
- appointments, upgrading 323
- Approval Framework
 - exporting 227
 - importing system data 227
- approval transactions
 - converting 266
 - understanding 265
- approvals
 - defining for work orders 300
- approving settlements 73
- Asset Management
 - ChartField SQC, updating 188
 - integration, pending assets 36
 - preparing 38
- attachments
 - configuring 283
 - server, configuring 284
- auditing
 - character length semantics 148
 - disabled constraints 141
 - duplicate length constraints 141
 - long to LOB conversion 146
- audits
 - Alter Audit 12
 - DDDAUDIT, final 233
 - DDDAUDIT, initial 10
 - final 232
 - initial 10
 - SYSAUDIT, final 233
 - SYSAUDIT, initial 11
- auto numbering
 - defining for Price Rules 272
- Auto Position for all deals, running 73
- Auto Position process, rerunning 309
- auto-numbering
 - setting up for progress logs 304
 - setting up for timesheets 304

B

- backing up
 - after data conversion 215
 - after PeopleTools upgrade 149
 - after preparing your database 92
 - after upgrade copy 184
 - before conversion 210
 - before manual changes 247
 - before platform changes 137
 - before testing 384
- Copy of Current Demo database 79

- demo databases 78
 - new release demo again 180
 - New Release Demo database 79
- bank setup, preparing 312
- base data, loading 126
- batch transactions, completing 58
- bid factors
 - defining mapping 303
 - setting up 303
- Bill Plans
 - crediting a bill 47
 - processing 44
 - processing to Complete 46
 - running query on summarized 44
 - understanding processing 44
- billing
 - completing tasks 24
 - management 4
 - planning for 43
 - pre-upgrade reports 24
- Billing
 - completing setup 273
 - summarization, setup 381
- building
 - alter with deletes script 216
 - tablespace alter script 125
 - UPG CF RENAME script 186
 - UPG SPL SYNCH script 216
 - UPGCFCONFIG script 186
 - UPGOPT project 7
- burden plans, reviewing 47
- Buyer Notifications, setting up 365
- Buyer Registration, validating 363

C

- cancelling split payment terms 57
- cash advance sources, setting 320
- Change Assistant
 - creating new job 389
 - editing multilingual step properties 103
- change control
 - reviewing 383
 - turning off 112
- change requests, loading 68
- character length script 1, running 146
- character length script 2, running 146
- character length script 3, running 146
- character length script 4, running 147
- character length script 5, running 147
- character length script 6, running 147

- character length script 7, running 147
- character length script 8, running 148
- character length semantics, auditing 148
- ChartField
 - resetting flags 171
- ChartField configuration
 - exporting 188
 - importing 188
 - reviewing actions 18
 - running 187
- ChartFields
 - completing configuration 247
 - configuring 184
 - understanding 185
 - updating inactive 185
- checkboxbook definitions
 - updating 268
- checking
 - document tolerance 339
- cleaning up adjustment periods 374
- closing Payables Pay Cycles 53
- Collaborative Supply Management
 - preparing outstanding schedules 67
- commitment control
 - preparing 18
- Commitment Control, setting up 375
- common portal system options
 - exporting 228
 - importing 228
- compare options, modifying 168
- compare reports
 - columns 477
 - modifying options 83
 - reviewing 171
 - understanding 476
 - using 477
- comparing
 - customizations 82
 - new release 167
 - running UPGCUST 84
- comparing PeopleTools objects
 - queries and trees, preserving 419
- comparison process
 - default actions for objects 475
 - settings for objects 476
 - status of objects 474
 - Upgrade column 475
 - using 473
- completing
 - batch transactions 58
- Billing setup 273
- ChartField configuration 247
- Contracts setup 380
- cost collection 67
- credit card encryption 253
- customer data 288
- data conversion 246
- Manufacturing setup 268
- Promotions 268
- Services Procurement setup 293
- completing purchasing tasks 68
- completing Receivables changes 351
- completing system setup
 - exporting data 222, 224
 - exporting EDI statements 223
 - exporting mass change data 223
 - importing data 222, 224
 - importing EDI statements 223
 - importing mass change data 224
 - loading data 221
- configuration defaults
 - exporting 187
 - importing 187
- Configuration Manager profile,
 - updating 95
- configuring
 - application servers 210, 238
 - attachment server 284
 - attachments 283
 - ChartFields 184
 - On-Demand Processing 351
 - Order Management 276
 - Pay Cycle definitions 51
 - Pay/Bill Management 308
 - Portal 239
 - Process Scheduler 210
 - upgrade environment 238
 - VAT default 275
 - vendor fields 341
- confirming, ship and deplete orders 59
- CONNECT ID, granting permissions 140
- connect ID, granting privileges to 107
- connector passwords, encrypting 131
- contacting global support 406
- Content Provider registry
 - upgrading 250
- content reference permissions,
 - synchronizing 244
- Contract Amendments, processing
 - pending 48

- contract management, running maintenance pack script 219
- Contracts
 - completing setup 380
 - mapping offerings 41
 - rate plans, reviewing 382
 - updating orders in Order Management 282
- Conversation Currency
 - establishing 28
- conversion
 - loading data 131
 - reporting details 132
 - running data conversion 132
- conversion reports, reviewing 148
- conversion scripts
 - Oracle, generating 142
- converting
 - approval transactions 266
 - database data types 136
 - Integration Broker 133
 - Order Management attachments 286
 - PeopleTools objects 129
 - Portal objects 130
 - purchasing attachments 284
 - query prompt headings 131
- Copy of Current Demo database
 - backing up 79
 - restoring 86
- Copy of Production
 - creating 5
 - testing 385
- Copy of Production database
 - backing up 149
- Copy of Production database cache, deleting 456
- copy results, reviewing 174
- copying
 - Enterprise Portal database 455
 - PATCH84X project 119
 - PATCH84XML project 120
 - PPLTLS84CUR project 116
 - PPLTLS84CURDEL project 119
 - PPLTLS84CURML project 117
 - PPLTLSML project 118
 - production database 5
 - projects 116
 - PT84TBLSPC project 124
 - select tables 166
 - UPG CF RENAME project
 - definition 186
 - UPGCFCONFIG project 185
 - UPGCUST 174
 - UPGCUSTIB 176
 - UPGIBCOPY 178
 - UPGNONCOMP 178
- cost collection, completing 67
- Cost Management
 - defining options 15
- costing transactions, processing 60
- country codes
 - adding 251
 - modifying 252
 - updating 321
- country data, reviewing 17
- COUNTRY_TBL, setting 251
- create and alter scripts
 - building 191
 - editing 192
- create indexes script, running 217
- create tables script
 - running 193
- create temp tables script
 - building 191
 - running 193
- create triggers script, running 217
- create upgrade tables script
 - building 190
- CREATEVW, running 218
- creating
 - all views 218
 - ALLTABS project 191
 - ALLTEMPTABS project 190
 - application tablespaces 121
 - copy of DbField Definitions 89
 - copy of PS_INSTALLATION table 88
 - custom tablespaces 183
 - FNLALTAUD project 233
 - indexes 194
 - indexes, recommended 274
 - INITALTAUD project 11
 - Integration Broker objects 134
 - Microsoft conversion project 139
 - new Change Assistant job 389
 - new tablespaces 182
 - Oracle audit tables 141
 - Oracle-delivered tablespaces 182
 - PPLTOOLS views 132
 - RUNSTATS.DAT 110

- target Enterprise Portal project 457
- temporary performance indexes 109
- updated PeopleTools views 132
- UPGIBCOPY 177
- credit card
 - completing encryption 253
- crediting Bill Plans 47
- currency code, adding 351
- current VAT defaults, reviewing 69
- CUSIP, adding 311
- customer data, completing 288
- customer data, gathering 23
- customizations
 - comparing 82
 - identifying 86
 - reapplying 240
- customized objects
 - adjusting 240
- customizing
 - new release 174

D

- data
 - base data, loading 126
 - conversion data, loading 131
 - data conversion, running 132
 - English messages, loading 128
 - English string data, loading 128
 - language data, loading 127
 - MCF data, populating 130
 - PeopleTools data, loading 127
 - stored statements data, loading 128
- data conversion
 - applying updates before 209
 - backing up after 215
 - creating indexes 195
 - dropping indexes 195
 - loading data 202
 - loading data for PeopleTools 131
 - reporting details 132
 - running for application changes 211
 - running for group 1 213
 - running for group 11 215
 - running for group 2 214
 - running for group 3 214
 - running for group 4 214
 - running for group 5 214
 - running for PeopleTools changes 132
 - understanding 211
- data conversion driver data

- exporting 208
- importing 208
- data conversion report 472
- data conversion, completing 246
- data model definitions, loading
 - DB2 UNIX/NT 113
 - DB2 z/OS 112
 - Informix 113
 - Oracle 113
 - SQL Server 113
 - Sybase 114
 - understanding 112
- data type steps, editing 104
- data, identifying for manufacturing 62
- database
 - increasing space 6
- database cache
 - deleting from Copy of Production 456
- database data types, converting 136
- database options flag, resetting 110
- database options, updating 149
- database servers, backing up 149
- database structure
 - finalizing 215
 - modifying 188
- databases
 - preparing for the upgrade 75
 - stamping 383
 - Tree/Query Copy of Production 418
 - updating overrides 180
 - verifying integrity 76
- DB2
 - editing upgrade planning scripts 9
- DB2 UNIX RUNSTATS script,
 - generating 201
- DB2 UNIX/NT
 - loading data model definitions 113
 - rerunning RUNSTATS 110
 - updating statistics 111
- DB2 z/OS
 - backing up database 190
 - editing create table scripts 99
 - editing MTP import scripts 100
 - loading data model definitions 112
 - updating statistics 110
- DB2TMPIDXCREATE script 109
- DbField definitions, creating copy 89
- DBTSFIX output scripts
 - editing 97
 - running 106

- DBTSFIX script, running 96
 - DDDAUDIT script
 - final, running 233
 - running initial 10
 - DDLDB2 script
 - editing 101
 - running 112
 - DDLDBX script
 - editing 102
 - running 113
 - DDLIFX script
 - editing 102
 - running 113
 - DDLMS script, running 113
 - DDLORA script
 - editing 102
 - running 113
 - DDLSYB script, running 114
 - Deduction Management
 - posting transactions 34
 - preparing 33
 - setting up 357
 - setting up resolution entry types 34
 - default
 - Country for Expense Location 40
 - prefixes, Promotions Management 270
 - defining
 - auto numbering for Price Rules 272
 - auto-numbering, alternate source of supply 279
 - auto-numbering, reservation
 - backorder 278
 - bid factor mapping 303
 - business unit, Services
 - Procurement 297
 - Cost Management options 15
 - payment terms, paid invoices 274
 - requestor defaults 298
 - service coordinator defaults 298
 - service types for project roles 297
 - Services Procurement options 15
 - user lists for approvals 299
 - work order approval process 300
 - defining, testing strategy 408
 - deleting
 - application messaging objects 135
 - Copy of Production database cache 456
 - node transactions 135
 - Pagelet Wizard Common Components
 - data 89
 - securities data, duplicate 74
 - Demand Planning, upgrading 254
 - developing
 - test plan 411
 - test scripts 412
 - disabled constraints, auditing 141
 - DLCGGLY20E script, running 167
 - DLCGGLY20I script, running 167
 - Document Association rules, setting up 334
 - document sequencing, setting up 310
 - document Tolerance 339
 - documenting
 - new match results 50
 - new Receipt Aware Criteria 50
 - dropping
 - indexes 91
 - tables 152
 - tables, Informix 152
 - views 152
 - dropping PeopleTools tables 76
 - duplicate length constraints, auditing 141
 - duplicate service operation handlers and routings, deleting 232
 - duplicate transactions, commitment control 18
- ## E
- EDI tables, identifying 86
 - editing
 - data type steps 104
 - DB2 z/OS create table scripts 99
 - DB2 z/OS MTP import scripts 100
 - DBTSFIX output scripts 97
 - DDLDB2 script 101
 - DDLDBX script 102
 - DDLIFX script 102
 - DDLORA script 102
 - GRANT script 98
 - Integration Broker script 103
 - Move to Production import scripts 100
 - MSGTLSUPG script 103
 - multilingual step properties 103
 - MVPRDIMP script 101
 - PPLTLS84CURTABLES script 123
 - PSLANGUAGES script 98
 - PTxxxTLS scripts 98
 - tablespace alter script 125
 - TLSUPGNONCOMP script 98
 - upgrade planning DB2 scripts 9

- electronic layouts, updating 312
- encrypting connector passwords 131
- Enterprise Portal
 - copying database 455
 - upgrading PeopleTools 455
- Enterprise Portal project, target
 - creating 457
- ENTRY_USE_TBL data, reviewing 29
- eSettlements
 - updating 362
- establishing, customer conversation
 - currency 28
- existing VAT information, reviewing 69
- Expense approvals, managing 40
- Expenses
 - defaulting Country for Location 40
 - preparing 39
 - setting up 320
- exporting
 - application data 207
 - application messages 203
 - application system data 225
 - approval framework system data 227
 - ChartField configuration 188
 - common portal system options 228
 - configuration defaults 187
 - converted application base data 226
 - data conversion driver data 208
 - new release objects 179
 - node transactions 134
 - notification template table 226
 - Pagelet Wizard application data 206
 - Pagelet Wizard data 206
 - PATCH84X project 119
 - PATCH84XML project 120
 - PeopleTools system tables 109
 - PeopleTools tables, re-exporting 420
 - PPLTLS84CUR project 116
 - PPLTLS84CURDEL project 119
 - PPLTLS84CURML project 117
 - PPLTLSML project 118
 - project definitions 151
 - projects 116
 - PT84TBLSPC project 124
 - record groups 204
 - related language system data 224
 - selected PeopleTools tables 175
 - setup data 228
 - system setup data 205
 - upgrade defaults 207

- upgrade setup data 90
- extracting
 - deductions, Accounts Receivable 33

F

- facilities, setting up 310
- federal payment schedule, re-creating 346
- Federal Payment Schedule, running
 - query 55
- Fee Codes
 - generating SQL 311
- fields
 - renaming 79
- file servers
 - editing PTxxxTLS scripts 98
- final audit reports, running 232
- finalizing
 - pending funding transactions 37
- fixes
 - applying after copying project 396
 - applying after data conversion 397
 - applying between upgrade passes 397
 - applying during installation 396
 - applying during Move to
 - Production 398
- FNLALTAUD project, creating 233
- Funding Source allocation, duplicate
 - correcting 375
 - identifying 375
 - understanding 375

G

- General Ledger
 - running maintenance pack script 219
- General Ledger, updating 367
- general options setup, performing 13
- generating
 - customer conversation letters 27
 - DB2 UNIX RUNSTATS script 201
 - Microsoft conversion scripts 139
 - Oracle conversion scripts 142
 - PPLTLS84CURTABLES script 123
- global support, contacting 406
- grant management
 - verify processes 31
- GRANT script
 - editing 98
 - running 107
- granting

- home page personalization access 245
- privileges to connect ID 107
- granting permissions
 - CONNECT ID 140
- Grants
 - preparing defaults 31
- GROUP_TYPE field data, reviewing 30

H

- Holidays, loading 324
- home page personalization access,
 - granting 245

I

- identifying
 - customizations 86
 - EDI tables 86
 - mass change 86
 - Pricing ID name collisions 23
 - renamed Pricing IDs 283
- images, shrinking 77
- importing
 - application data 208
 - application messages 203
 - application system data 225
 - approval framework system data 227
 - ChartField configuration 188
 - common portal system options 228
 - configuration defaults 187
 - converted application base data 226
 - data conversion driver data 208
 - DB2 z/OS-specific information 100
 - new release objects 179
 - notification template table 227
 - Pagelet Wizard application data 206
 - Pagelet Wizard data 206
 - PeopleTools system tables 109
 - Planning data 264
 - project definitions 152
 - record groups 204
 - related language system data 225
 - selected PeopleTools tables 176
 - setup data 228
 - system setup data 205
 - upgrade defaults 207
 - upgrade setup data 8
- increasing space, log file and database 6
- index parameters
 - setting 199

- indexes
 - creating 194
 - creating recommended 274
 - dropping 91
 - dropping for data conversion 195
 - parameters, setting after copy 181
 - rebuilding verity search 267
 - reviewing the create indexes log 194
 - temporary performance, creating 109

Informix

- loading data model definitions 113
- updating statistics 111

- INITALTAUD project, creating 11

initial audits

- reviewing 12
- running 10
- installation, applying fixes during 396
- installing, Planning upgrade program 256

Integration Broker

- converting 133
- defaults, updating 133
- deletes, preparing 134
- objects, creating 134
- Integration Broker script, editing 103
- integration testing 409

inventory

- preparing 58
- running balances report 60
- Inventory Policy Planning, upgrading 254
- inventory pre-upgrade report
 - reviewing 59
 - running 59
- invoices, defining payment terms 274
- issue date, adding for securities 311

J

- Journal Generator
 - running 55

L

- language data, updating 231
- language system data
 - exporting related 224
 - importing related 225
- languages
 - loading data 127
 - populating 126
 - swapping on system data 203
- license code, updating 107

- Limits report run control, updating 381
- Limits totals, updating 380
- limits, managing 42
- limits, reviewing 43
- Load Holidays process 324
- loading
 - base data 126
 - change requests 68
 - conversion data 131
 - data for data conversion 202
 - data model definitions 112
 - data to complete system setup 221
 - English messages 128
 - English string data 128
 - language data 127
 - message data 114
 - noncomparable objects 127
 - PeopleTools data 127
 - PeopleTools definition security
 - group 129
 - stored statements 229
 - stored statements data 128
 - system messages 114
- local message node, preserving 168
- log
 - reviewing for pagelet and collection issues 246
- log file, increasing space 6
- long data audit, running 138
- long to LOB conversion, auditing 146
- long to LOB script 1, running 144
- long to LOB script 2, running 144
- long to LOB script 3, running 144
- long to LOB script 4, running 144
- long to LOB script 5, running 145
- long to LOB script 6, running 145
- long to LOB script 7, running 145
- long to LOB script 8, running 145

M

- maintenance log table, running maintenance pack script 221
- maintenance pack scripts, running 218
- management, billing and order 4
- managing
 - Expense approvals 40
 - limits 42
- manual drafts, updating 342
- manual payments, completing 56
- manufacturing

- identifying data 62
- Manufacturing
 - completing setup 268
- mapping, Contract offerings 41
- market/exchange codes, updating 309
- mass change, identifying 86
- match rules and transactions
 - Payables 49
- matching process, running 337
- matching, post conversion setup 331
- message data
 - loading 114
 - loading English messages 128
- message data, cleaning up 105
- message queues, purging 78
- Microsoft conversion project,
 - creating 139
- Microsoft conversion report, running 140
- Microsoft conversion scripts,
 - generating 139
- Microsoft conversion scripts, running 139
- Microsoft database, validating 138
- Microsoft settings, reviewing 138
- migrating records 124
- model definitions, *See* data model definitions
- model step group, Pay Cycle 51
- modifying
 - accounting entry definitions 368
 - adjustment period defaults 371
 - compare options 168
 - compare report options 83
 - country codes 252
 - database structure 188
- Move to Production
 - editing import scripts 100
 - editing password 101
 - performing 390
 - testing 387
 - understanding 388
- MSGTLSUPG script, editing 103
- MultiChannel Framework (MCF)
 - data 130
- multilingual step properties, editing 103
- MVPRDIMP script, editing 101

N

- New Copy of Production database
 - importing data 100
- new match results, documenting 50

- new release
 - exporting objects 179
 - importing objects 179
- new release database
 - backing up again 180
- new release demo
 - restoring 209
- New Release Demo database
 - backing up 79
- node transactions
 - deleting 135
 - exporting 134
- non-comparable objects, reviewing 172
- notes and tips, for your upgrade 4
- notification template table
 - exporting 226
 - importing 227
- notification templates for Services
 - Procurement, reconciling 305

O

- object version numbers
 - setting 135
 - updating 232
- object version numbers, resetting 179
- On-Demand Processing, configuring 351
- On-Demand Processing, setting up 352
- online budget check wait time, setting up 376
- Open Liability, updating 342
- optimizing
 - Product Trees 271
- Oracle
 - loading data model definitions 113
 - updating statistics 111
- Oracle audit tables, creating 141
- Oracle conversion scripts, generating 142
- Oracle database, validating 140
- Oracle settings, reviewing 141
- Order Management
 - attachments, converting 286
 - configuring 276
 - mapping Contract offerings 41
 - running maintenance pack script 220
- Order Source codes, adding 276
- order, management 4
- orders
 - confirm, ship and deplete 59
 - from Contracts, updating 282
 - with product kits, repricing 276

P

- pagelet and collection log 246
- pagelet publishing, enabling 247
- Pagelet Wizard
 - exporting application data 206
 - exporting data 206
 - importing application data 206
 - importing data 206
- Pagelet Wizard Common Components data, deleting 89
- parallel testing 410
- password, Move to Production 101
- passwords, encrypting connector
 - passwords 131
- patch information, updating 108
- PATCH84X project 119
- PATCH84XML project 120
- Pay Cycles
 - bank replacement rules setup 342
 - closing for Payables 53
 - configuring definitions 51
 - model step group 51
- Pay/Bill Management
 - configuring 308
- Payables
 - match rules and transactions 49
 - performing set up 330
 - setting definitions, terms, templates 349
- payment authorization data, verifying 272
- payment terms, defining 274
- payments, completing manual 56
- pending assets, run into AM
 - integration 36
- pending funding transactions, finalizing 37
- PeopleSoft upgrade survey 390
- PeopleTools
 - data, loading 127
 - definition security group, loading 129
 - exporting system tables 109
 - functionality 248
 - importing system tables 109
 - objects, converting 129
 - objects, reviewing 114
 - re-exporting tables 420
 - script 123
 - tables, dropping 76
 - updating patch information 108

- updating system tables 104
 - upgrade, backing up after 149
 - upgrading Enterprise Portal 455
- PeopleTools conversion
 - completing 231
- PeopleTools tables
 - exporting 175
 - importing 176
 - swapping languages 176
- performance
 - improving for your platform 404
 - testing 410
 - tips for creating and altering SQL 404
 - tips for data conversion 404
 - tips for DB2 405
 - tips for modify database structures 404
 - tips for Oracle RDBMS 405
- performing
 - general options setup 13
 - Payables set up 330
- permission lists
 - updating Portal registry 456
- permissions lists
 - understanding registry updates 455
- planning
 - limit management, new release 43
- Planning
 - importing data 264
 - installing upgrade program 256
 - preparing for upgrade 255
 - processes, completing 61
 - running data extract program 258
 - upgrading 254
- platform changes, backing up before 137
- Portal
 - configuring 239
 - converting objects 130
 - running security synchronization 244
- Portal navigation objects, registering 241
- portal options data, updating 250
- Portal registry
 - updating permission lists 456
- post conversion setup, matching 331
- post Payables transactions 54
- posting
 - deduction transactions 34
 - Receivables transactions 26
- PPLTLS84CUR project 116
- PPLTLS84CURDEL project 119
- PPLTLS84CURML project 117
- PPLTLS84CURTABLES script
 - editing 123
 - generating 123
 - running 124
- PPLTLSML project 118
- pre-upgrade reports, billing 24
- pre-upgrade sourcing query
 - reviewing 63
 - running 63
- preparing
 - Asset Management 38
 - commitment control 18
 - Deduction Management 33
 - defaults for grants 31
 - Expenses 39
 - for Planning upgrade 255
 - for the upgrade 75
 - Integration Broker deletes 134
 - outstanding schedules 67
 - Promotions 19
 - Services Procurement 64
 - strategic sourcing 63
 - Treasury setup 309
- preserving
 - queries and trees 417
- preserving, local message node 168
- Price Rules
 - defining auto numbering 272
- Pricing ID name collisions, identifying 23
- Pricing IDs, identifying renamed 283
- Process Scheduler
 - configuring 210
- process scheduler processes, reviewing 17
- process status
 - link to project status 313
- processing
 - Accounts Payable Voucher 35
 - Bill Plans 44
 - costing transactions 60
 - credit card payments, receivables 27
 - pending Contract Amendments 48
 - tax information 274
 - third-party transactions 35
- product license code, updating 107
- Product Trees, optimizing 271
- production database
 - identifying empty tables 75
- production database, copying 5
- project calendar, setting 316
- project definitions

- exporting 151
- importing 152
- project manager role, setting default 319
- project status
 - link to process status 313
- projects
 - calculating resource duration 318
 - comparing queries and trees 419
 - exporting and copying 116
 - INITALTAUD 11
 - PATCH84X 119
 - PATCH84XML 120
 - PPLTLS84CUR 116
 - PPLTLS84CURDEL 119
 - PPLTLS84CURML 117
 - PPLTLSML 118
 - PRESERVED 418
 - preserving queries and trees 418
 - processing third-party 35
 - PT84TBLSPC 124
 - setting up 35
 - setting up analysis type and group 313
 - UPGCFCONFIG, copying 185
- projects budgeting, preparing defaults 32
- projects integration
 - setting up 36, 312
- Promotions
 - completing 268
 - default prefixes 270
 - preparing 19
 - reviewing pre-upgrade reports 20
 - running pre-upgrade reports 19
 - updating claims 22
- PS_INSTALLATION table, creating
 - copy 88
- PSLANGUAGES script
 - editing 98
 - running 126
- PSOBJCHNG table, cleaning 76
- PT84TBLSPC project 124
- PTUPGCONVERT 231
- PTUPGCONVERT program 132
- PTxxxTLS scripts
 - editing 98
 - running 126
- Purchasing
 - running maintenance pack script 220
- purchasing attachments, converting 284
- purchasing tasks, completing 68

Q

- queries, preserving 417
- query prompt headings, converting 131

R

- rate plans, reviewing 382
- rate template mapping, reviewing 319
- rate type defaults, reviewing 29
- re-creating
 - triggers 194
- reapplying customizations 240
- rebuilding, verify search indexes 267
- Receipt Aware Criteria, documenting
 - new 50
- Receivables
 - changes, completing final 351
 - customer conversation currency,
 - establishing 28
 - generating conversation letters 27
 - posting transactions 26
 - processing credit card payments 27
 - reviewing project data 28
 - running follow up query, customer
 - conversation 355
 - setting up 26
 - updating existing customer
 - conversations 356
- RecField, definitions 89
- reconciling
 - notification templates for Services
 - Procurement 305
- reconciling, notification templates 267
- record groups
 - exporting 204
 - importing 204
- record parameters
 - setting 200
- records
 - migrating 124
 - renaming 79
 - setting parameters after copy 181
- registering Portal navigation objects 241
- registry permission lists, understanding
 - updates 455
- registry, upgrading Content Provider 250
- regression testing 411
- Regulatory Ledger
 - reporting 369
 - updating 369

- REN servers, updating configuration 129
- renaming
 - fields 79
 - records 79
 - tables 153
- reporting conversion details 132
- reports
 - inventory balances 60
 - reviewing pre-upgrade customer 23
 - running pre-upgrade customer 23
- requestors
 - defining defaults 298
- rerunning Auto Position process 309
- reschedule payment data, specifying 344
- reservation backorder
 - defining auto-numbering 278
- resetting
 - action flags in UPGCUST 170
 - database options flag 110
 - flags for ChartField objects 171
 - object version numbers 179
- Resource creation data, updating 323
- Resource Management, setting 322
- restoring
 - Copy of Current Demo database 86
 - new release demo 209
- retaining target rename log files 81
- reviewing
 - Alter Audit, final 234
 - burden plans 47
 - change control 383
 - ChartField configuration 18
 - contract line limits 43
 - conversion reports 148
 - copy results 174
 - country data 17
 - create indexes log 194
 - current VAT defaults 69
 - customer pre-upgrade reports 23
 - ENTRY_USE_TBL data 29
 - event status 64
 - existing VAT information 69
 - GROUP_TYPE field data 30
 - initial audits 12
 - Microsoft settings 138
 - new release changes 171
 - new release compare reports 171
 - non-comparable objects 172
 - Oracle settings 141
 - PeopleTools functionality 248
 - PeopleTools objects 114
 - pre-upgrade inventory report 59
 - pre-upgrade sourcing query 63
 - pre-upgrade sPro queries 66
 - process scheduler processes 17
 - rate template mapping 319
 - rate type defaults 29
 - Receivables project data 28
 - Services Procurement post-upgrade queries 294
 - services time templates 306
 - sPro pre-upgrade reports 65
 - UPGCUST compare log 86
 - UPGCUSTIB copy results 179
 - UPGIBCOPY copy results 179
 - UPGNONCOMP copy results 179
 - VAT accounting 325
 - VAT functionality 325
- reviewing reports
 - billing pre-upgrade 25
- RNEPUPJ01IFX script
 - running 155
- RNEPUPJ01ORA script
 - running 156
- RNEPUPJ01SYB script
 - running 156
- Role system access, validating 362
- running
 - Alter Audit, final 233
 - Alter Audit, initial 12
 - alter tables script 193
 - alter with deletes script 217
 - audits 232
 - Auto Position for all deals 73
 - character length script 1 146
 - character length script 2 146
 - character length script 3 146
 - character length script 4 147
 - character length script 5 147
 - character length script 6 147
 - character length script 7 147
 - character length script 8 148
 - ChartField configuration 187
 - create indexes script 194
 - create tables script 193
 - create temp tables script 193
 - create triggers script 217
 - customer conversation follow up query 355
 - customer pre-upgrade reports 23

- data conversion, for application
 - changes 211
- data conversion, for PeopleTools
 - changes 132
- DB2TMPIDXCREATE script 109
- DBTSFIX output scripts 106
- DBTSFIX script 96
- DDDAUDIT script, final 233
- DDDAUDIT script, initial 10
- DDLDB2 script 112
- DDLDBX script 113
- DDLIFX script 113
- DDLMSS script 113
- DDLORA script 113
- DDLSYB script 114
- DLCGGLY20E script 167
- DLCGGLY20I script 167
- Federal Payment Schedule query 55
- GRANT script 107
- initial audits 10
- inventory balances report 60
- inventory pre-upgrade report 59
- inventory reports, orders and
 - transactions 58
- Journal Generator 55
- long data audit 138
- long to LOB script 1 144
- long to LOB script 2 144
- long to LOB script 3 144
- long to LOB script 4 144
- long to LOB script 5 145
- long to LOB script 6 145
- long to LOB script 7 145
- long to LOB script 8 145
- matching process 337
- Microsoft conversion report 140
- Microsoft conversion scripts 139
- new release UPGCUST 170
- new release UPGCUSTIB 170
- new release upgrade copy 175
- Planning data extract program 258
- Portal security synchronization 244
- PPLTLS84CURTABLES script 124
- pre-upgrade sourcing query 63
- pre-upgrade sPro queries 66
- pre-upgrade sPro reports 64
- PSLANGUAGES script 126
- PTUPGCONVERT program 132
- PTxxxTLS scripts 126
- RNEPSPJ01 80

- RNEPUPGJ01SYB script 156
- RNEPUPJ01IFX script 155
- RNEPUPJ01ORA script 156
- RNEPUPJ14 80
- row count report 75
- Services Procurement post-upgrade
 - queries 294
- SETINDEX script 181, 235
- SETSPACE script 181
- SETTABLE script 181, 235
- STORECP script 229
- STOREFP script 229
- STOREGL script 230
- STOREIN script 230
- STORELC script 230
- STOREMG script 230
- STOREPO script 230
- summarized Bill Plans query 44
- summary refresh 317
- SYSAUDIT script, final 233
- SYSAUDIT script, initial 11
- tablespace alter script 125
- TLSUPGNONCOMP script 127
- TSRECPOP script 231
- UPG CF CONFIG script 186
- UPG CF RENAME script 187
- UPG SPL SYNCH script 216
- UPGCOUNT script 75
- UPGCUST 84
- UPGCUST filter script 85
- RUNSTATS.DAT, creating 110

S

- saving
 - application messaging objects 134
- scripts
 - DB2 z/OS create table scripts 99
 - DB2 z/OS MTP import scripts 100
 - DB2TMPIDXCREATE 109
 - DBTSFIX, editing 97
 - DBTSFIX, running 96
 - DDDAUDIT 10
 - DDLDB2, editing 101
 - DDLDB2, running 112
 - DDLDBX, editing 102
 - DDLDBX, running 113
 - DDLIFX, editing 102
 - DDLIFX, running 113
 - DDLMSS, running 113
 - DDLORA, editing 102

- DDLORA, running 113
- DDLSYB, running 114
- DHC8X01DMS 203–204
- editing DB2 upgrade planning 9
- GRANT 107
- GRANT, editing 98
- Integration Broker 103
- maintenance pack, running 218
- MSGTLSUPG 103
- MVPRDIMP 101
- PeopleTools 123
- PPLTLS84CURTABLES 123
- PSLANGUAGES 126
- PSLANGUAGES, editing 98
- PTxxxTLS scripts 126
- PTxxxTLS scripts, editing 98
- running ALLTABS_ALTTBL 193
- running ALLTABS_CRTTBL 193
- SETINDEX 181
- SETSPACE 181
- SETTABLE 181
- SYSAUDIT 11
- TLSUPGNONCOMP 127
- TLSUPGNONCOMP, editing 98
- UPGCOUNT 75
- securities data
 - deleting duplicate 74
- securities, adding issue date 311
- security
 - creating objects for eSettlements 242
 - granting home page personalization access 245
 - loading PeopleTools definition security group 129
 - running Portal security synchronization 244
 - setting up 241
 - setting up, upgrade planning 8
 - synchronizing content reference permissions 244
 - understanding setup 242
 - updating roles and user profiles 242
- selecting vendor set controls 345
- servers
 - application servers 210, 238
 - database servers 149
 - file servers 98
 - REN servers 129
- service coordinators
 - defining defaults 298
- service operation
 - completing upgrade 232
 - deleting duplicate handlers and routings 232
- service types
 - defining for project roles 297
- Services Procurement
 - activating HCM integration 296
 - completing setup 293
 - defining default business unit 297
 - defining options 15
 - preparing 64
 - reviewing post-upgrade queries 294
 - reviewing pre-upgrade queries 66
 - reviewing pre-upgrade reports 65
 - running post-upgrade queries 294
 - running pre-upgrade queries 66
 - running pre-upgrade reports 64
- services time templates
 - reviewing 306
- SETINDEX script 181, 235
- SETSPACE script 181
- SETTABLE script 181, 235
- setting 135
 - cash advance sources 320
 - COUNTRY_TBL 251
 - default project manager role 319
 - index parameters 181
 - object version numbers 135
 - Payables definitions 349
 - Payables templates 349
 - Payables terms 349
 - project calendar 316
 - record parameters after copy 181
 - Resource Management 322
 - Sync IDs 321
 - tablespace names 181
 - unit of measure, project hours/days 316
- setting up
 - adjustment period defaults 370
 - adjustment periods 372
 - adjustment year 369
 - agency location codes 340
 - auto-numbering for progress logs 304
 - auto-numbering for timesheets 304
 - bid factors 303
 - Billing summarization 381
 - Commitment Control 375
 - Deduction Management 357
 - Document Association rules 334

- document sequencing 310
- Expenses 320
- facilities 310
- On-Demand Processing 352
- online budget check wait time 376
- Pay Cycle bank replacement rules 342
- project analysis type and group 313
- projects 35
- projects integration 36, 312
- Receivables 26
- resolution entry types 34
- security 241
- security for upgrade planning 8
- Treasury 73, 309
- VAT processing 324
- withholding 346
- settings
 - Microsoft, reviewing 138
 - Oracle, reviewing 141
- settlements, approving 73
- setup data
 - exporting 228
 - importing 228
- shrinking images 77
- single signon, setting up 239
- software installation
 - verifying 3
- specifying reschedule payment data 344
- split payment terms, cancelling 57
- sPro, *See* Services Procurement
- SQL Server
 - loading data model definitions 113
- stamping the database 383
- starting
 - application servers 238
- statistics
 - DB2 UNIX/NT, updating 111
 - DB2 z/OS, updating 110
 - Informix, updating 111
 - Oracle, updating 111
 - updating 9
- STORECP script, running 229
- stored statements data, loading 128
- stored statements, loading 229
- STOREFP script, running 229
- STOREGL script, running 230
- STOREIN script, running 230
- STORELC script
 - running 230
- STOREMG script, running 230

- strategic sourcing
 - preparing 63
- Strategic Sourcing
 - running maintenance pack script 221
- string data, loading 128
- summary refresh, running 317
- Supplier Notification, setting up 366
- Supply
 - defining auto-numbering, alternate sources 279
- Supply Chain Planning, completing 61
- Supply Planning processes,
 - completing 62
- support, contacting 406
- Sybase
 - loading data model definitions 114
- Sync IDs, setting 321
- synchronizing content reference
 - permissions 244
- SYSAUDIT script
 - running final 233
 - running initial 11
- system
 - messages, loading 114
 - tables, exporting 109
 - tables, importing 109
- system catalog views, updating 106
- system data swap script, editing 91
- system setup data
 - exporting 205
 - importing 205
- system testing 409

T

- tables
 - copying 166
 - dropping 152
 - dropping for Informix 152
 - moving to new tablespaces 125
 - PeopleTools system tables,
 - updating 104
 - PeopleTools tables, re-exporting 420
 - PeopleTools, dropping 76
 - PSOBJCHNG 76
 - renaming 153
 - running row count report 75
 - system tables, exporting 109
 - system tables, importing 109
- tablespaces
 - alter script 125

- alter script, building 125
- alter script, editing 125
- creating custom 183
- creating new 182
- creating Oracle-delivered 182
- migrating records to 124
- populating data 120
- setting names 181, 200
- setting names for temporary tables 200
- updating names 122
- target rename log files, retaining 81
- target values, updating 178
- tax information, processing 274
- templates
 - notification 305
 - services time 306
- temporary tables, setting tablespace names 200
- test plan, developing 411
- test scripts, developing 412
- testing
 - after the upgrade 390
 - backing up before 384
 - Copy of Production 385
 - determining conditions 411
 - evaluating requirements 408
 - integration 409
 - Move to Production 387
 - parallel environments 410
 - performance 410
 - preserved queries and trees 420
 - regression 411
 - system 409
 - tips and techniques 413
 - unit 409
 - user acceptance 410
- testing strategy
 - defining 408
 - determining conditions 411
 - when to test 407
- timesheets
 - setting up auto-numbering 304
- TLSUPGNONCOMP script
 - editing 98
 - running 127
- trading partner code report
 - running 289
 - updating 289
- transactions, post Payables 54
- transactions, processing third-party 35

- Treasury, setting up 73
- Tree/Query Copy of Production database 418
- trees, preserving 417
- triggers, re-creating 194
- TSRECPOP script, running 231
- turning off change control 112

U

- unit of measure, set for project hours/days 316
- unit testing 409
- updates
 - applying before data conversion 209
- updating
 - approval transactions 265
 - Asset Management ChartField SQC 188
 - checkbook definitions 268
 - Configuration Manager profile 95
 - country codes 321
 - data for Resource creation 323
 - database options 149
 - database overrides 180
 - electronic layouts 312
 - eSettlements 362
 - existing customer conversations 356
 - General Ledger 367
 - inactive ChartFields 185
 - Integration Broker defaults 133
 - language data 231
 - Limits report run control 381
 - Limits totals 380
 - manual drafts 342
 - market/exchange codes 309
 - object version numbers 232
 - Open Liability 342
 - orders from Contracts 282
 - PeopleTools patch information 108
 - PeopleTools system tables 104
 - portal options data 250
 - product license code 107
 - promotional claims 22
 - regulatory ledger reporting 369
 - REN server configuration 129
 - statistics for DB2 UNIX during application changes 201
 - statistics for DB2 UNIX/NT 111
 - statistics for DB2 z/OS 110

- statistics for DB2 z/OS during application changes 201
- statistics for Informix 111
- statistics for Informix during application changes 201
- statistics for Oracle 111
- statistics for Oracle during application changes 202
- statistics, initial 9
- system catalog views 106
- tablespace names 122
- target values 178
- VAT defaults 328
- VAT entity 325
- VAT entity report options 330
- VAT options 68
- VAT transaction table 69
- updating statistics
 - DB2 UNIX/NT 111
 - DB2 z/OS 110
 - Informix 111
 - Oracle 111
- UPG CF CONFIG, running 186
- UPG CF RENAME
 - building script 186
 - copying project definition 186
- UPG CF RENAME script, running 187
- UPG SPL SYNCH script
 - building 216
 - running 216
- UPGCFCONFIG project 185
- UPGCFCONFIG, building 186
- UPGCOUNT script, running 75
- UPGCUST
 - copying 174
 - resetting action flags 170
 - reviewing compare log 86
 - running a compare 84
 - running filter script 85
 - running new release 170
- UPGCUSTIB
 - copying 176
 - reviewing copy results 179
 - running filter script 171
 - running new release 170
- UPGCUSTIB filter script 171
- UPGIBCOPY
 - copying 178
 - creating 177
 - reviewing copy results 179

- UPGNONCOMP
 - copying 178
 - reviewing copy results 179
- UPGOPT project
 - applying 6
 - building 7
- upgrade
 - compare reports, understanding 476
 - configuring environment 238
 - databases, defined 3
 - notes and tips 4
 - PeopleTools, backing up after 149
 - planning for performance 403
 - preparing for 75
 - setting up upgrade planning security 8
 - user, verifying 94
- upgrade copy, running 175
- upgrade defaults
 - exporting 207
 - importing 207
- Upgrade Drivers page
 - accessing 469
 - adding new section 470
 - inactivating section 471
- upgrade planning files, applying 6
- upgrade setup data
 - exporting 90
- upgrade setup data, importing 8
- upgrade tables script
 - recreating 190
- upgrade views
 - creating 199
- upgrading
 - appointments 323
 - Content Provider registry 250
 - Enterprise Portal PeopleTools 455
 - PeopleSoft Planning 254
- user acceptance testing 410
- user interface
 - changing for desktop computers 399
 - changing for mobile devices 401
- user lists
 - defining for approvals 299
- using
 - Application Engine Driver program 469

V

- validating
 - Microsoft database 138

- Oracle database 140
- VAT
 - considerations, analyzing 353
 - defaults, configuring 275
 - entity, updating 325
 - functionality, reviewing 325
 - options, updating 68
 - updating defaults 328
 - updating report options 330
- VAT accounting
 - reviewing 325
- VAT processing
 - setting up 324
- VAT transaction table
 - updating 69
- vendor fields, configuring 341
- vendor set controls, selecting 345
- verifying
 - database integrity 76
 - grant management processes 31
 - payment authorization data 272
 - software installation 3
 - upgrade user 94
 - voucher build 52
 - voucher edit 52
- verity
 - rebuilding search indexes 267
- version numbers
 - setting 135
 - updating 232
- views
 - creating all 218
 - creating PPLTOOLS 132
 - dropping 152
- voucher
 - verifying build and edit 52

W

- withholding, setting up 346
- work order
 - running maintenance pack script 220
- work orders
 - defining approval process 300

